



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

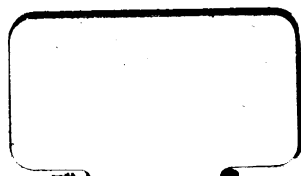
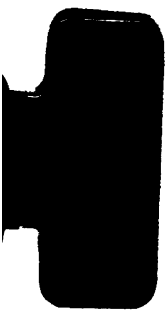
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08242948 5



DEC
Faber

Chronological History

History of the

A. D. 1600

THE FIRST PART

OF THE

REIGN OF

THE SECOND PART

OF THE

REIGN OF

THE THIRD PART

OF THE

Chronological Handbook

— OF THE —

History of China

A MANUSCRIPT LEFT BY

THE LATE

REV. ERNST FABER, DR. THEOL.

EDITED BY

PASTOR P. KRANZ.

"BAD GOVERNMENT IS WORSE THAN A TIGER."

Confucius.

"WHAT CONFUCIANISM REALLY NEEDS, IS DIVINE LIFE."

Faber.

(WITH FOUR APPENDIXES.)

Shanghai:

PUBLISHED BY THE GENERAL EVANGELICAL PROTESTANT MISSIONARY
SOCIETY OF GERMANY.

PRINTED AT THE AMERICAN PRESBYTERIAN MISSION PRESS.

1902.

TO NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
130315A
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1924 L

130315A

PREFACE BY THE EDITOR.

FERNST FABER, DR. THEOL., born 1839 at Koburg in Germany, came as a missionary to China in 1865. After fifteen years of preaching and teaching in the Canton province, he devoted the last twenty years of his life entirely to literary work for the benefit of China. His writings on the doctrines of Confucius, Mencius, Micius, and Licius, on Prehistoric China, Famous men and women of China, Paul the Apostle as a Guide to our mission work, Problems of practical Christianity in China, and various other subjects, and especially his great Chinese works on Civilisation, the Gospel of Mark, of Luke and the Old Testament, have made his name famous all over the world and entitle him to a place amongst the most successful Christian Apologists of all ages. His last Chinese work was a Critical Examination of the Chinese Classics (經學不厭精) in six volumes, consisting of the first and second part, on the Examination of the *Text* and of the *Teachings* of the Classics. He intended to add as third part a critical review of the whole of Chinese *Literature*, as fourth part a philosophical treatise on Chinese *History* compared with the historical development of Christian countries, and as fifth part an exposition of the *Present Needs* of China.* His sudden sickness and premature death in Tsingtau (September, 1899) prevented him from completing his work, a great loss to China and the cause of Christian missions.

As a preparation to his philosophical treatise on Chinese History, in order to master the whole subject thoroughly, Dr. Faber worked for many months on a collection of dates and facts. He employed the Chinese teacher Wang Hêng T'ung 王亨統 to make extracts in Chinese language from the historical works 綱鑑易知錄 Kang-chien I-chih-luh, 資治通鑑 Tzê-chih T'ung-chien, 王鳳洲通鑑 Wang-fêng-chou T'ung-chien, 列代帝皇年表 Lieh-tai Ti-huang Nien-piao, with occasional reference to the 二十四史 Erh-shih-sê Shih, the Twenty-four Dynastic Histories. These extracts served Faber as the basis for this present work in English, which I have called a Chronological Handbook of the History of China. Faber's manuscript, although not quite finished, seemed so valuable to me, that I considered it my duty to publish it.

*Several Chinese essays, intended for this work by Dr. Faber, will be published during the course of this year as a supplementary volume.—P. KE.

May the reader bear in mind, that *this is not all what Dr. Faber intended to give*, but is only a preparatory collection of materials, which, however, is in itself of great value. In the monthly magazine of his mission (*Zeitschrift für Missionskunde und Religionswissenschaft* 1899, p. 93) Dr. Faber expressed the aim of his historical researches in the following manner: "The Chinese Literature I intend to treat separately, but as part of Chinese history. In literature the peculiarity of the human mind shows itself in its entirety and in its development together with that of the language. The same mind appears in the history of civilisation and in the political history in relation to the natural conditions of human life in its social organisations and in the relation of different organisations to each other. In any case I would like to treat History not only as something which has happened, but as an *active manifestation of the Chinese mind*. But this is not enough. As a missionary, I have the aim to bring the Chinese national mind in touch with and, if possible, under the influence of the Divine Spirit. But the Divine Spirit I do not represent as an abstract idea or a dogma, but wish to show Him in His efficacy in the facts recorded in the Bible, in the history of the Church and in His influence on the civilisation of the West. These are, in a few words, the principal ideas of the task before me. One must not think such work too profound for the Chinese. Also in mission work the best is only good enough."

In his essay on "Theorie und Praxis eines protestantischen Missionars in China" (the same magazine, p. 266) Dr. Faber writes: "I am working on a Chinese History, which shall show to the Chinese how they ought to understand their history of several thousand years and *what they ought to learn from it*." How important this whole subject is according to Dr. Faber's opinion, can be seen from his masterful paper on the use of the Chinese Classics in Mission schools (Records of Second Educational Association Meeting, 1896, p. 75), where he says: "The Chinese Classics have their proper place in our educational work in connection with Chinese Literature. Literature, however, can only be taught intelligently as an important part of the national history. The time has gone by, when it was possible to regard history as consisting in the story of kings and their wars, and literature in dry particulars about books and authors. We see now in history the development of human life in all its manifestations, evil as well as good. We trace events to their causes and follow out the consequences of particular acts, whether virtuous or vicious. The literature of a nation is one manifestation of its life, and it affords a deeper insight into the national *heart*, into its feelings and aspirations,

than do actions and external circumstances. We should teach Chinese history from this high standpoint. In the hands of a master, history should be a powerful help in showing the Chinese how many and great are the evils of their national life, as also in the endeavour to convince them, *that sin is at the root of every evil*. A text-book is needed that can be readily memorized and a hand-book containing the most important lessons. The Chinese must be taught not only so many facts of the past time, but also to understand themselves as a people, both in the past and the present. **This** then is the task, which belongs to those who undertake to teach the Chinese. The Chinese *classics, literature and history* have to be thoroughly *digested* and put into a form *suitable* both for *teachers and students*. No one foreigner can accomplish this gigantic work. Still it *has* to be done. **There** is the stronghold of Chinese heathenism, which *must* be taken, if the battle is to be won."

Dr. Faber often expressed to me his conviction, that Christianity in China could not find a better advocate than a close examination of *the fruits of Confucianism in Chinese History*. He was not permitted to fully carry out his idea, but from various statements in other publications of Faber we are in a position to infer, how the History of China appeared to him and which lessons he intended to deduce from it. So in his valuable little book "China in the Light of History" (1897, Mission Press, Shanghai) Dr. Faber, after a short sketch of the horrors connected with the change of so many rulers and dynasties in China, says (p. 11): "Is it not enough to make one's hair stand on end that such human beings, the majority of whom were of very small importance, some of whom were criminals, and all of whom led, more or less, immoral lives, should be called 'sons of heaven,' 'representatives of God on earth' and also 'the Buddhas of the present age?' That they should have presumed to claim not only supreme power over all the rulers of the world, but also over the invisible world, and the power to bestow upon the dead offices and honours or to inflict punishment on corpses! **The History of the Chinese Emperors is the most striking refutation of Confucianism.**"—"By their fruits ye shall know them," this criterion, recommended by Jesus, is indeed very appropriate here. "*Die Weltgeschichte ist das Weltgericht*" (the history of the world is like the verdict of the judgment-day), a German proverb says. The facts of Chinese History are *the best "Chinese Characteristics;"* by their history the Chinese have characterised themselves in a manner not to be contradicted by anyone.

Now in the *first* place, we do not mean to say by this, that the History of China shows nothing but darkness; we gladly acknowledge that there are also some bright lights flashing over the dark scenes of China's past. China has also produced some noteworthy examples of self-denial and heroism. But these are only like a few single stars of hope in the night; on the whole the gloomy impressions of Chinese history overbalance the bright ones. "Heathenism is hopeless night, in spite of the rays of light that flash through here and there" (Faber, *China in the Light of History*, p. 45). And in the *second* place, we do not make Confucianism responsible for all the crimes and corruption, of which the History of China is so full, but only "**so far as the principles which led to this corruption are sanctioned in the Classics**" (Faber, in his *Essay on Confucianism*, *China Mission-Handbook*, p. 2, reprinted as appendix to "*China in the Light of History*."). Especially two sources of evil are manifest in Chinese History, the taking of concubines and the cruelties of unchecked despotism leading to rebellions.

(1). The taking of concubines "has ever been a curse in Chinese History. Many intrigues, crimes and wars have been caused by it. Confucianism has not only no censure for it, not even for its detestable accumulation in the Imperial palace, that greatest slum of the world,* but sanctions it in the Classics. *Confucianism* is therefore *responsible* for this great social and political evil. The misery of eunuchs, secondary wives, slave-girls, feet-binding, degradation of women in general, are accompaniments which magnify this vice. Instead of extolling the Confucian moral teaching on the five human relations, all Confucianists, together with their foreign admirers, ought to *hide their faces in shame*, that the most important of the human relations is treated so viciously" (Faber, *Essay on Confucianism*, II, 8).

The climax of unfilial conduct, according to Mencius, is to have no son (because of ancestral worship), therefore it becomes even a duty, according to Confucianism, to take a concubine, if the first wife has no son (Legge, Mencius, p. 189).†

(2). About despotism and rebellions Faber writes (*Essay on Confucianism*, II, 9): "Confucius himself appears to have regarded with favour rebellious movements in the hope of bringing a sage to the throne. Mencius is certainly very outspoken in this respect. He justifies the

*The Chinese Emperor is entitled to have besides the Empress nine wives of the second rank, twenty-seven of the third, eighty-one of the fourth and as many, as he likes, of a lower rank. The total number was seldom less than 2,000. (Faber, *China in the Light of History*, p. 12).

†About the eunuchs s. Stent, *Journal Royal As. Soc.*, Vol. XI.

dethroning and even the murder of a bad ruler. No wonder then that rebellions have occurred on a large scale over *fifty times* in about 2,000 years, and local rebellions are almost *yearly* events. It is impossible to calculate, how many *hundred millions* of human lives have been sacrificed during these rebellions. *Confucianism is to blame for it.* Neither Confucius himself, nor one of his followers, ever thought of establishing a constitutional barrier against tyranny and providing a magna charta for the security of life and property of the ministers and the people of China. The hands of the executioner *ended the noble lives of many of China's best men.* It cannot be otherwise, as long as the capricious will of a self-conceited ruler is supreme law. The remedy has been found in Western (Christian) countries in the *separation* of the *executive* from the *legislative* power. *Law is no more the will of one man*, but of the *majority of the people*; its formulation is done by an assembly of chosen men, etc. The people must also have a *legal* way to make their grievances known and find relief in a peaceful manner. Confucianism, however, regards the people as little children, that must be fed, protected and taught their duties. They have only the right to obey under these circumstances and to rebel, if the contrary should become intolerable."

Despotism leads to rebellions. A tiger kills only few men, bad government leads to the destruction of many, therefore it is worse than a tiger, as Confucius said. The History of China is red with blood. The blood of the many millions, who have been butchered in this land, cries to Heaven. Professor Legge in his Prolegomena to the Sheking (p. 141) writes: "Probably there is no country in the world which has drunk in so much blood from its battles, sieges and massacres as this (China)."

Jesus said (Matth. xx. 25): "Ye know that the rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them (*κατακυριεύουσιν*) and their great ones exercise authority over them (*κατεξουσιάζουσιν αὐτῶν*, 'vergewaltigen,' i.e., rule them by force)." Nowhere is the truth of this word more apparent than in the history of China. The Christian spirit on the other hand prompts the desire to be a *helpful servant of all* (*πάντων διάκονος*, Mark ix. 35). It does not abolish monarchies; on the contrary it inculcates loyalty and subordination (Rom. xiii. 1-7; Tit. iii. 1; I Petr. ii. 13-18; Matth. xxii. 21; Eph. vi. 1. 5-8); but it makes also the rulers recognize themselves as servants of God and therefore to be willing to serve their fellow-men (Eph. vi. 9; Rom. xiii. 4; Rev. xix. 16).

Other *sources of evil* in Confucianism, besides the two mentioned above, are:

(3). The teaching of **Polytheism** in the Classics, the result of which is idolatry and all the superstitions connected with it. Besides the degrading influence of these superstitions on the mind, there is also a great loss of time and human energy involved in it, and a waste of at least 400 million dollars yearly. If even enlightened officials and scholars of China for the sake of old custom and national pride join in these idolatrous practices, although they know them to be based on vain superstitions, this is sacrilegious hypocrisy, destroying all sense of truthfulness and incurring the wrath of God. *God does not allow Himself to be mocked.* Prosperity depends on the Divine blessing, idolatry is therefore the ruin of a nation. (cp. Exodus xx. 5).

(4). **Ancestral worship**, which, mainly based on superstitious fear and selfish considerations, attributes to sinful men qualities belonging only to God, namely, the power to bestow blessings and calamities and the ability to hear and answer prayers. As the ancestors are worshipped without reference to their good or bad characters in life, this worship (of wicked ancestors even) weakens the feeling of *absolute responsibility before God* and the expectation of an inevitable future retribution (cp. Legge, *The Religions of China*, p. 115). Christianity teaches men to honour parents, whilst they are alive, to *gratefully remember them and reverently care for their graves* when they are dead, but to worship only the one true God, not sinful men.* (The waste of money, land, energy and time connected with ancestral worship involves millions of Chinese into life-long debts; summed up in one generation this waste causes an enormous loss to the nation, at least 10,000 million dollars!!).

(5). The **divination** by stalks and the tortoise-shell and the choosing of lucky days, sanctioned in the Classics, which paved the way for various superstitions, magic and astrology.—It is time now that the publication of the Imperial Almanac, which abounds in these, should be discontinued. (Faber, *Essay on Confucianism*, II. 6, 7).

(6). The teaching of the duty of **blood revenge** in the Classics, disregarding impartial legal authority. "The bad effects of it are evident even in this present day. Revenge is sweet to the Chinese. . . . Where the ruling authority is feeble, as it is at present, individuals and clans take the law into their own hands and whole districts are kept in a state of constant feud and warfare" (Legge, *Proleg. Lun-yü*, p. 111).

(7). The teaching of **absolute subordination** of sons to their fathers and of younger to their elder brothers during the *whole of life*

*Cp. Records, General Missionary Conference, Shanghai, 1890, p. 631, 654 (Faber); 659, 691 (Pastor Yen); 699 (resolution).

has proved to be a serious obstacle to progress in China. Nepotism is also a fruit of it (Faber, *Essay on Confucianism*, II, 13, cp. *Journal Royal As. S.*, vol. xx, p. 115-144). Mencius in trying to defend emperor Shun for making his wicked half-brother Siang a prince, said: "The benevolent man wishes his brother to become rich" (Legge, *Mencius*, p. 225).

(8). The making of presents to superior *officials*, as sanctioned in the Classics, has led to general official corruption. Extraterritoriality of foreigners cannot be given up in China, until her laws are reformed and impartial justice is established in her courts.

(9). The want of truthfulness in Confucius. Although recognizing the importance of truthfulness in his theoretical teachings, he in his own practice fell short of the ideal. Prof. Legge has proved in his commentary on the Ch'un Tsiu (Prol., p. 40-52), that Confucius in many cases "ignored, concealed and misrepresented" the truth (cp. Faber's note under the year 722 B. C., also his Chicago lecture, "Chinese Recorder," 1902, April, p. 160). On one occasion Confucius himself broke an oath (Faber, *Essay II*, 15; Legge, *Prol. Analects*, p. 100).* The example of Confucius has had in this respect a very injurious influence on the nation. Only reverence of God, the omniscient and omnipresent, makes men absolutely truthful and honest.

(10). The mistaken notion of Confucianism, that the perfecting of knowledge and the influence of some good examples is sufficient to produce a good character, has deceived the Chinese about the weakness of human nature and has nourished the pride and self-righteousness of their scholars. (Legge, *Proleg. Great Learning*, p. 32, 33). Moral teaching alone without the regenerating power of the Divine Spirit gives *no strength to purify the heart*.—No self-made religion or philosophy can secure forgiveness of sin. Without forgiveness of sin, no real communion with God. Without communion with God, no moral strength and purity of heart. Christ alone can save from sin.

(11). The absence of a true recognition of man's responsibility before God and of a deep desire for real communion with God in all Confucian teachings has moulded the national character to be materialistic,

* The people of Pu let Confucius go upon his taking an oath, that he would not go to Wei. Yet as soon as he was free, he went straight to Wei. A disciple asked: "Can one break an oath?" Confucius said: "It was a forced oath, *the spirits do not hear such*."—On another occasion, in order to decline an unwelcome visitor, Confucius said that he was sick, but immediately after he played the lute and sang, indicating that he simply did not wish to see him. (Legge, *Analects*, p. 327). This also showed a want of respect for the duty of absolute truthfulness.—Jesus might easily have saved His life by denying the truth, but He preferred death to a lie.

selfish and weak, seeking the honour of men more than the honour of God. "There is nothing approaching to the Lord's prayer in Confucianism" (Faber, Essay, etc., III, 16). "Take those two short sentences, 'God is Light and God is Love.' You will search in vain all the Confucian literature for anything approaching to them" (Legge, *The Religions of China*, p. 249). It was the greatest mistake of Confucius and his principal disciples, that they neglected the idea of Shangti in the Classics and did not make it the basis and motive power of all their moral exhortations.

(12). The stubborn **tenacity**, with which at the present time the scholars of China extol the merits of Confucianism and shut their eyes wilfully against its *errors and defects* and against the superior qualities of Christianity, is the **greatest calamity for China** and will, if not changed soon, lead to her utter destruction (cp. Legge, Prol. Lün-yü, p. 108; Prol. Shu-king, p. 199, 200). *No individual and no nation can reject Christ without serious loss. Those who defy God, must perish.* Think of Jerusalem's fate and Turkey's decay!—On the other hand, the nations which have Christianity in its purest form, are at the head of civilisation. True godliness has the promise of this life and of the life to come (I Tim. iv, 8). "Seek ye *first* the kingdom of God and His righteousness, and all these (material) things shall be added unto you;" this promise of Christ applies not only to the individual, but contains the **Divine law of national prosperity** also. History proves it. The enemies of Christ in China are therefore the greatest obstacle to China's development, prosperity and greatness.*

The **low position** which Confucianism assigns to the **women**, is alone sufficient to prove the inferiority of its teaching in comparison with Christianity, because the position assigned and the education given to the women (the future mothers of the country!) is a standard-measure of the degree of civilisation in any country. *True Christianity is the greatest power for progress and for the uplifting of the human race.* Why then do so many thoughtful men in China, viceroys and great scholars, in commending new methods to the government, persist in upholding Confucianism and despising Christianity? Confucius was a truly great teacher in *his* time according to the light which he received (Joh. i. 9),

*Oh that the leaders of thought in China would comprehend this! Chang Chih-tung in his famous book on reform "Learn!" proposes to uphold Confucianism by increasing China's military strength (s. Rev. S. J. Woodbridge's translation, p. 14-16). Other great viceroys seem to follow after the same phantom. They do not understand, that not the outward strength of a nation conserves its religion, but true religion conserves the moral and thereby also outward strength of a nation. They confound root and fruit. The truth is: 保國必先參教, to preserve the State you must first correct the doctrine.

and we feel sometimes inclined to think, that in a limited sense he had really a Divine mission for his nation and in some degree he carried out certain intentions of the Divine Providence; he gave to the people, according to the law of conscience written in his heart (Rom. ii. 15), some noble moral ideas, which during the centuries gone by have certainly not been without a beneficent influence on the people and which can still be used as generally recognized standards to convince them of sin (for instance the golden rule and the five constant virtues), and thus we might compare him with Socrates or even with Moses and call him a forerunner of Christ; yet, after all, Confucius was not the Saviour of mankind. This God-appointed Saviour for the whole human race is Jesus Christ alone, *the perfect revelation of God*, and the sooner the Chinese turn to Him, the better will it be for them and their nation. Christ shows us not only in His own person and life what is good, in a more perfect manner than all other sages, but He helps us more and more to become good and to do the good by uniting our souls with God and filling us with God's Spirit. By obedience to Him we experience the truth of His teaching. He is the founder of the highest type of morality and *therefore* of the highest type of civilisation. Christianity is the root, Civilisation is the fruit. You cannot transplant a tree without its roots, you cannot cut off a river from its source.*

To preclude possible contradictions, we freely admit that the history of Europe and America is also full of wars and crimes, and that many heartless cruelties have been committed there even in the name and for the sake of Christianity. But yet there is this vast difference between the two cases: such crimes and cruelties in Western lands were done in direct opposition and disobedience to the *original and true principles of Jesus Christ*, whilst those defects of Chinese history and civilisation, which we have pointed out above, have their *root* in Confucianism itself and are direct *consequences* of its teaching. **Is this so difficult to understand?** Jesus Christ cannot be blamed, if some of His professed followers are hypocrites and evil-doers. *His character is spotless and His religion is sublime*, although men have often misunderstood and

*The relation of Christianity to Confucianism I have treated elaborately in my Chinese Essay "*Christianity fulfils Confucianism*" 救世教成全儒教 (*it preserves what is good, changes what is bad and supplements what is deficient in Confucianism*); sold at the Presbyterian Mission Press, Shanghai, 1½ cent per copy (144th thousand); it has been translated into English, German and Japanese. Cp. also my English pamphlet "*Some of Prof. Legge's Criticisms on Confucianism*" (collected from his Prolegomena), Mission Press, Shanghai (20 cents). Similar ideas to those above, I have expressed in Chinese in the introduction to my Chinese Union Catechism 聖經要道 (Important doctrines of the Bible) and in the preface to 耶穌言行要錄 (Important features of the Life of Christ).

misrepresented it. The spirit of Christ has not yet pervaded and conquered all and everything in Western lands, but *as far as it has done so*, great blessings have been the result; and even those who do not believe in Him, because they do not wish to obey Him, are *unconsciously benefitted* by the good influence of his teaching on the spirit of the age. This is a guarantee of greater blessings still to be expected for our whole race, if all the nations will accept Him as their guide and Saviour, and through Him enter into real *communion with God*. Although much resistance has still to be overcome, before this goal can be reached, yet Christ will triumph in the end. God the Almighty, our Father in Heaven, will fulfil all His promises, which He has given us through Jesus Christ, and **even death shall be abolished**. Such hope gives strength to self-denial and sacrifice.*

In this Chronological Handbook the lessons of the History of China have not been explicitly described; simply plain facts are recorded in concise style. But thoughtful students will read these lessons often between the lines and draw those inferences for themselves. The only work which Confucius wrote himself, are the Annals of his native State Lu (the Ch'un Tsi'u, covering the time 722-481 B. C.). In it he exposed before the public "the villainy and disgrace of the ruling classes of that period; but he did not speak about it; he made **the facts of history speak**, and they spoke in no undecided tone." Mencius describes its effect on the age by the words: "*Rebellious ministers and villainous sons were struck with terror*" (Faber, Historical Characteristics of Taoism, "China Review," XIII, p. 236; Lëgge, Mencius, p. 159). This shows that the Chinese know very well, how to look into History as into a *mirror*. If the Ch'un Tsi'u, covering a short period of 240 years, had such a moral effect, may we not hope that also this present volume, embracing the long history of about 4,000 years, will give to the many Chinese students, who understand English, much material for thoughtful study? But this survey over the long history of so great a nation offers to us Europeans also much occasion for deep reflection; it opens before us a vast field of human activity, hitherto intimately known to very few of us; it shows us the weakness of our common human nature, because the Chinese also are our brethren; bone of our bones and flesh of our flesh; it makes us wonder what has become of all those

* When we praise Christianity in comparison with Confucianism, we do not praise ourselves, but only praise Jesus. We ourselves are only miserable sinners, but Christ, our Saviour, is worthy of general acceptance. He is worthy and able to save the Chinese too. The gospel has the power to change and mould the character of the Chinese, so that the "yellow peril" may still become a blessing to the world. The Chinese martyrs of 1900 are a proof of this.

thousands of millions of souls, who passed in China through this short sphere of life;* it makes us bow in silence before the unsearchable wisdom of God's Providence, and it gives to us a striking illustration of the words of Paul the Apostle; "God has in the generations gone by suffered all the nations to walk in their own ways (Acts xiv. 16) and has determined their appointed seasons and the bounds of their habitations, that they should seek God, if haply they might feel after Him and find him (Acts xvii. 27), and God has shut up all unto disobedience, that He might have mercy upon *all* (Roman xi. 32)." The History of China shows abundantly that all human wisdom and strength without the light and help of a clear and special Divine revelation ends at last in weakness and decay; it shows that China needs the Saviour just as much as other nations do. Christ will draw all men unto Himself (John xii. 32), also "those from the land of Sinim" (Is. xlix. 12). So the History of all nations will contribute to the glory of God.

We have criticised Confucianism as containing certain germs of evil, which have been growing and become manifest in the History of China down to the present time. We acknowledge the service rendered by the Chinese sages to the cause of civilisation in this part of the world, *as far as their merits go*. They have raised China above Africa and India and above all inferior tribes, with which she came in contact in former centuries. But the teaching of her sacred books is not sufficient any more to meet the requirements of *our present age*. We wish China to enter now the company of the most civilised nations as a qualified and recognised member, and in order to help her to attain to this highest civilisation, we have to point out some of the most striking defects in her Confucian teaching. What is *really good* in Confucianism, she may *retain*, but what is *defective* and even *positively bad* in it, she *must necessarily correct*. But if we thus criticise, we do it only for the purpose of showing a better way for China's religious, social and political salvation. Therefore we will conclude this preface by indicating as in a summary the **Present Needs** of China in sixteen short *reform-suggestions*:

(1). Establish perfect *religious liberty* in all schools and all official positions and grant a really impartial treatment to all before the law, but (although without the least compulsion) exhort all men to throw away the idols and to worship and serve the *one, only true God*, our Father in

*They have passed through life as by a quick train and we are doing the same. Many are the dead and the living are comparatively few. Every day about 90,000 souls are crossing the ocean of death and arriving yonder. So it goes on from day to day, from year to year. May we realize this fact and not attach an undue value to that which is vanishing!—The eternal God is our refuge through Jesus, and Christ is Lord of both the dead and the living (Rom. xiv. 9).

Heaven, as He has revealed Himself through Jesus Christ. What China needs most, are men of moral and unselfish character. True communion with God is the *only sufficient source* for moral strength, purity of heart and self-denying love and service; it is the foundation of all virtues in the family and in the national life.

(2). Establish *monogamy*.—(Abolish the Imperial harem and the eunuchs, and forbid all government officials, the patterns of the people, henceforth to take any more concubines). Unless this condition is fulfilled, China cannot be admitted as an equal into the company of Christian nations.

(3). Reform the *laws* of China according to the best laws of the best governed countries of the world (Germany, England, United States, France and Japan).^{*} Especially the methods of investigating crime, of holding innocent relatives responsible for the guilt of an individual, the cruelty of punishments and the filthy condition of prisons must be reformed. Many new laws have to be introduced. How can extraterritoriality be abolished before all this is done?

(4). Establish a special *Board of Education* with five eminent foreign educationists as advisors (one from each of the countries just named) and let this Board establish new schools on modern pedagogical principles all over the empire, not beginning at the top with universities, but below at the root and foundation with about 500,000 *elementary schools* in all the villages and towns†; then establishing middle-schools in all

^{*} The question of a Parliament is a difficult one, but cannot on this account be avoided. Japan has taken the constitutional monarchy of Germany as her model and prospers. China should do the same. But the mode of election should be adapted to the peculiar conditions of society in China. The coolie class is not ripe for general election. The present system of *Ti-pao's* might be utilized, not allowing them, however, any more to buy their office, but making householders elect them and pay them a small salary. These village representatives should elect district representatives, the district representatives elect representatives of the prefectures, and these elect representatives of the province. Or the four recognised classes of society (scholars, merchants, artisans and farmers) might in each district choose each one representative for their class. The district representatives of all the districts in one prefecture might choose four class representatives for their prefecture. The class-representatives of all prefectures in one province should then elect three-times four (i. e., twelve) class representatives for the province for a period of five years. These chosen representatives should be sent from all the provinces to Peking to form the National Parliament, whose main duty it should be to deliberate on new laws and submit them to the approval of the Emperor.

† Study the German system of elementary schools. Compel all parents to send their boys and girls to school from the seventh to the fourteenth year. Introduce one standard mandarin language in all schools of the empire by means of an *officially fixed* system of Romanization and thus unify the nation and open the way for the development of the language. (cp. Luther's unification of German dialects through his translation of the Bible). Teach in *elementary* schools (besides some knowledge of geography, history, arithmetic and sciences) only the 2,000 most frequent characters (by a combination of Dr. D. Z. Sheffield's selected list of characters and Rev. W. E. Soothill's phonetics, taking the latter's thirteen sections and 180 character groups as the basis), not from the Classics but from specially prepared useful Readers. In middle and higher schools teach (besides the other subjects) *graded text-books* on the Classics with selected passages and a *systematic Digest* of their teachings. Make the preparation of some *specialists* for the life-long study

small and large towns, then colleges in all prefectural cities and at last universities in all provincial capitals. The wealth and strength of a nation depend on its system of education. Knowledge gives power over nature and men. But knowledge without good character is ruinous.

(5). Establish at once *normal schools* to train **teachers** for all these schools in all provincial capitals and in several prefectural cities of each province. Take the German '*Lehrerseminare*' as pattern; their methods being the best of their kind in the world. [The difficult art of asking only pedagogically correct questions in teaching, the careful selection and systematic planning of the objects to be taught in each week and even in each single lesson, the utmost economising of time by these principles, the methods of producing strict discipline and eager attention without punishments, making school life a joy both for teachers and pupils—all this is practised to the highest degree of perfection in those German normal schools ('*Lehrerseminare*.')]]

(6). Change the whole system of *examinations* thoroughly. Demand from all future *candidates* for the *Kü-jen* degree knowledge of at least *one foreign language*. (As Latin and Greek were the vehicle of civilisation in Europe until quite recent times, so the leaders of thought in China must learn a foreign language in order to acquire and assimilate the New Civilisation thoroughly until the Chinese language will have been greatly modified by this civilisation. German scientific men learn from four to six foreign languages; surely Chinese scholars ought to be

and explanation of the Classics only a *special branch* and life-work in the University curriculum (on the basis and according to the principles of comparative religious philosophy). In middle schools, besides the teaching of 2,000 additional characters (next in frequency), the thorough acquisition of one foreign language ought to be the main aim (age of pupils from ten to sixteen years). Special schools for special objects (e. g., engineering) ought to be established. In colleges (age of pupils sixteen to twenty years) and universities (age of students twenty to twenty-five years) sciences must, at least during several decenniums, be taught by means of a foreign language. (Cp. Faber's essay on the Use of the Classics in schools, Second Educ. Assoc. meeting, 1898, p. 68-78; cp. also the Records of the meeting in 1893, p. 12-15, p. 17, 55). About the absurd Chinese method of writing, Faber's conviction deserves to be put on record ("*Prehistoric China*," Journal Royal As. Soc., 1890, p. 160): "It is a *painful sight* to an intelligent observer to notice the present confusion of Chinese written characters and the *toil* it causes to millions of people, with *immense waste of time and energy to the nation*. We are convinced that the present slow progress of China, even the impossibility of any more rapid movement, is to be found in its system of education based on the *confused masses* of written characters. We are further convinced by the application of established principles of political economy, that this Chinese mode of writing implies a loss to China of *hundreds*, if not **thousands of millions of dollars** a year. We are moreover satisfied that *Chinese writing and cultivation of Western science cannot possibly go hand-in-hand*" (**Science**, meaning here not only the knowledge of a few scientific facts learned from a few translated Primers but independent original research). Cp. also Faber's words in "China in the Light of History": "This form of writing forms the *greatest barrier* to intellectual progress" (p. 30). "It will be more and more evident that the Chinese writing is the *strongest hindrance* to the *thorough* scientific education of Chinese youth. This writing is very good, when there is little or nothing more to learn. But if everything is dependent on a *thorough* and real education, then writing must become subordinate to those main interests, and the simplest form of writing is the best" (p. 45.).

able to learn one! If they are able, and if it is good for the nation that they should do so, why should not the government demand it?)

(7). Establish *special examinations* for all special branches of science.

(8). Establish *Central Translation Bureaus* in all provincial capitals and get the best books of the world on all branches of science (especially on law and medicine) translated. Encourage literary activity by *copyright* and honours.

(9). During the period of *transition*, require all able officials, now in office, to study certain courses of such translations, to hear lectures, and at regular intervals to converse about the subjects treated therein with higher officials.

(10). **Publish** regularly in an official paper for each province *all government income and expenditure*, so that no fraud can occur. Then there will be plenty of money in the government treasury to inaugurate reforms, and the people will pay the taxes intelligently and willingly. Taxes must be levied for public welfare only, not to enrich the collectors; this is the **A B C of financial reforms**. The *sincerity* of the government's desire for reform should assert itself by publishing a proper budget annually. What is the use of ever talking about reforms and never commencing seriously?

(11). Raise the *salary* of all necessary officials, so that they need not rely on "presents." What is possible in this respect in Germany, in England and Japan, should be possible in China too.

(12). *Punish* severely all offering and receiving of *bribes*.

(13). Reduce the *army* in numbers, but make it more efficient to keep order in China by training about 1,000 young officers according to the best (the German) system. Too large an army, aside from the unnecessary expense entailed by it, would only tempt China to try another war with Foreign Powers and thus would wreck the country altogether. Then the partition of China would be unavoidable. China should devote her main energy not to armaments and outward strength, but to inner reforms. Alas, do her viceroys and scholars understand this?

(14). Give *pure water, good street light and cleanliness* to all the cities. (Accumulation of filth is a **crime** against society. Let city magistrates and expectant officials pass examinations on municipal government as applied in several capital and industrial cities of Europe and America).

(15). Connect all important cities by *rail*, utilize all the *mineral wealth* of China, prevent *famine* and *inundations*, improve old and

encourage new *industries* and facilitate *trade* (by new trade-laws, one system of coinage, adoption of a gold-standard, abolition of all export and likin hindrances, etc.).

(16). *Send* methodically and persistently every year several hundreds, if possible a thousand, promising *scholars abroad* to study the intellectual, moral and material progress of all the leading nations of the world, but watch their moral conduct whilst abroad (by sending a senior guardian with them, lodging them in Christian families, holding quarterly examinations, etc.). This is, next to the first, the most important of all reform measures. But send these students not only to the derivated waters of Japan, but to the pure and original sources of knowledge in Germany, England, America and France.

If these sixteen reform suggestions are carried out, a *New China* will rise in a few years. But if China's statesmen hesitate or refuse to sow the good seed, how can they expect a good harvest?

All foreigners should welcome such a thorough reform in China with joy, in the first instance and foremost from altruistic, i. e., *Christian* motives, because such a reform *will benefit one-fourth of our human race now groaning in poverty*, and secondly because it will also benefit all nations. China's import trade, for which all nations evidently are longing, can be steadily increased only by increasing China's ability to export. For this China needs those new *moral and intellectual* forces of a thorough reform. The spread of knowledge again will create new wants in China and increase her desire to import. May all who doubt the correctness of this theory please study the trade statistics of Japan. Although the articles of trade of course are constantly changing (by which some individual merchants through want of adaptation may lose), yet the general bulk of trade in Japan is constantly growing. China's trade, considering her larger population and her natural riches, ought to grow quicker and to a more than ten-fold larger extent.

There remains to be said only a brief word about the editor's share in the publication of this Chronological History. The manuscript, which Dr. Faber left, was not written very clearly, therefore I have first copied the whole with a typewriter, compared it with other works on Chinese History and made such corrections as seemed to me evident mistakes; generally, however, I have thought it right not to alter much, but to adhere faithfully to the original of Dr. Faber, even in such passages where his style is rather concise and difficult. Some additions in the text and notes at the bottom of the pages, which I have made, are printed, the former in square brackets, the latter in a smaller type.

China must be born again. May this book, this mirror of history, deepen the conviction in many, that China's most urgent need in all departments of life is that new spirit and character, which Jesus Christ alone can give. He is truly China's only hope!

PAUL KRANZ.

SHANGHAI, 13th March, 1902.



ABBREVIATIONS.

G.	...	...	...	...	refers to	Giles' Chinese Biographical Dictionary.
M.	...	...	...	...	" "	Mayers, The Chinese Readers' Manual (1874).
Mcg.	...	...	...	...	" "	Macgowan, A History of China.
Fr.	...	...	...	...	" "	Von Fries, Abriss der Geschichte China's.
Legge, Shuking, etc.	...	...	...	...	" "	the Edition of the Chinese Classics by Professor J. Legge (with Chinese text).
s. with a following number	...	...	...	...	" "	another year in this book.



CHRONOLOGICAL HANDBOOK OF THE HISTORY OF CHINA.

The Age of the Five Rulers 五帝, B.C. 2852-2205.

- 2852 B.C. **太昊伏羲 Tai Hao Fuh Hi** (G. 585). Born in Shensi, he resided in Honan near the present K'aifêngfu. His family name was Fung 風. He taught the people hunting, fishing, and rearing of animals, therefore his appellation 庖犧 Pao-hsi, butcher. Inventor of the eight trigrams and written memos 書契. He arranged the calendar (year and four seasons), ordained marriage, organised clans, introduced family names, and invented stringed musical instruments. He reigned 115 years.
- 2737 **炎帝神農 Yen Ti Shen Nung**. His family name was Kiang 姜, from a river at whose banks he was brought up. His residence he removed from Honan to K'ü-fou 曲阜 in Shantung. He planted the five kinds of grain and invented the plough; he tasted all kinds of plants for medicinal use. He opened markets for the interchange of goods. His reign extended over 140 years (giving 100 years too much, as eight rulers are said to have been between him and Huang-ti; all is uncertain).
- 2697 ***黃帝有熊氏 Huang Ti** (G. 871). He was born on the Hien-yüan 軒轅 hill and grew up on the waters of Ki 姬. His personal name was Yu-hsiung, his family name Kung Sun 公孫. By the use of shield and spear 干戈 and trained soldiers he defeated his rival Yü-wang 榆罔 in three battles. Then Ch'ih-yu 蚩尤 rose, using swords 刀, halberds 戟 and great cross-bows (Armbrüste) 大弩. Huang gathered all the forces of the princes for the battle, in which he used the compass in the darkness of a dense fog. He seized and executed Ch'ih-yu.

* C. Aréndt, Professor of Chinese in Berlin, has published a very valuable contribution to Chinese historical researches, namely "Synchronistische Regendentabellen zur Geschichte der chinesischen Dynastien," in the Annual Report of the Oriental Seminary at Berlin for the year 1899 (Part I, p. 152-250) and 1900 (I, p. 1-164) to be completed 1901. According to him 2697 was the eighth year of Huangti's reign.—P. Kx.

He appointed six ministers and two historians who invented writing (also placed in Fu-hi's time). He ordered Ta Nao 大撓 to form the cyclical characters 甲子 and Yung Ch'eng 容成 astronomical instruments, another officer to prepare the musical notes, another the twelve bells, another to compose tunes. He made hats with tassels, and corresponding upper and lower garments. He noticed the plumage of pheasants, the beauty of flowers and trees, and by dyeing in the five colours, he made the distinction of social rank. He appointed one officer for pottery, another for work in wood, one made bows, another arrows to keep the empire in awe. He appointed two men to hollow out trees for boats and to make oars; another imitated the rotation of the constellation "the Great Bear" (resembling a car, in German called 'Wagen') and made the great imperial carriage; he yoked cattle and harnessed horses, so that heavy loads could be carried far. He built a reception hall 合宮, sacrificed to God, and had intercourse with all intelligent beings, spreading political instruction. He cast metal as exchange. He fixed the five standard values 五幣, pearls and precious stones being the superior, gold the middle, and coins the lower. He caused K'i Pê 岐伯 (G. 311) to write the medical work 內經, and with Lei Kung 雷公 and another physician to prepare a work "On the pulse" 脈, and ordered another official to attend to the drugs.

He ordered Lei Tsu 嫫祖, his principal wife, daughter of Si Ling 西陵, to teach the people the rearing of silk-worms and making of garments. He sketched the country and divided it into provinces, and divided the fields in parcels of nine portions. He reigned 100 years to the age of 111, and is buried on the Kiao 橋 hill in Shensi. His son succeeded as

2597 *少昊金天氏 Shao Hao Kin-t'ien Shih. He reigned eighty-four years, but only music is mentioned as produced during this time, and that he removed his residence from Shensi to K'ü-fou 曲阜 in Shantung, where he died and was buried. None of his four sons, but his nephew, a grandson of Huang Ti, succeeded.

2513 顓頊高陽氏 Chuan Hū Kao-yang Shih, aged twenty years, reigned seventy-eight years to his ninety-seventh of age. Some correction of the calendar, investigation of minerals and

* Arendt puts Shao Hao 2594-2511; Chuan Hū 2510-2433; Ti K'ü 2432-2363; Ti Chih 2362-2358; Yao 2357-2258; Shun 2258-2206.

music is mentioned under his reign. He appointed presidents of the five elements.

2435 帝嚳高辛氏 Ti K'u Kao-hsin Shih, grandson of Shao Hao. He assisted the former emperor from his fifteenth to his thirtieth year (Chuan Hsi had done so from his 10th to 20th). He ordered music to be composed and songs to be made. His first wife bore K'i (M. 307, 740), minister of agriculture under Shun, ancestor of the Chou; of three concubines he had three other sons, Sieh (M. 581), Yao and Chih. He reigned seventy years, to his ninety-ninth year, is buried in Chihli. His son Chih succeeded.

2365 帝摯 Ti Chih reigned nine years. Because he was dissolute and cared nothing for the government, the nobles dethroned him and chose his brother, who was sixteen years old.

2356 帝堯陶唐氏 Emperor Yao T'ao-tang Shih (G. 2426). He ordered Hsi 羲 and Ho 和 to fix the calendar by intercalary months, thus getting the four seasons regular.

2353 The chief of the southern barbarians rendered submission and presented a tortoise of three feet square, on its back were tadpole characters, recording the events from the time of the creation. A plant grew in his court that issued a leaf every day with the moon increasing, and shed a leaf every day with the moon waning, called the calendar plant.

2298 He heard of the filial piety of the twenty years old Shun 舜.

2297 The great flood caused calamity. Kuan 鯀 is made minister of works, about 150 years of age.

2289 Kuan's efforts against the flood failed.

2288 Yao's son Tan Chu 丹朱 proves worthless. Shun is recommended by the highest dignitary and put on trial, receiving Yao's two daughters O Huang 娥皇 and Nü Ying 女英 into marriage.

2287 Shun banished the four evil chiefs Kuan-tou 驩兜, Kung-kung 共工 (s. M. 284), Kuan 鯀 and San-miao 三苗.

2286 Appointment of Yü 禹 to regulate the water courses, Yih 益 the fire, Hi 棄 agriculture, Ki 契 education.

2285 The emperor appoints Shun as co-emperor in the ancestral temple.

2282 The five punishments are adopted—branding, cutting off the nose, cutting off the feet, castration, and death (the first three kinds were abolished by emperor Wen (178-156 B. C.) and castration as a punishment was abolished by Kao Tsu (589-600 A. D.), but many thousands are still mutilated to serve in the palaces of the emperor and the princes). Grand music was composed.

- 2280 Shun's hunting expedition. A tortoise with letters on its back appears from the Loh river (in Honan).
- 2278 Yü completes the regulation of the water, determines the nine provinces and their revenue (Legge, III, pp. 92 sq.)
- 2258 Yao dies 118 years old at the city of Yang 陽 in Honan. He had lived in greatest simplicity without any luxury or refinement, not even the walls of his residence were whitewashed.
- 2256 帝舜有虞氏 Emperor Shun Yu-yü Shih (G. 1741). He observed three years' mourning for Yao and gave the people an opportunity to choose between Yao's son (s. 2288) and himself. All came to him. Shun was fond of receiving information, had a board hung up before his palace-gate for everybody to write (memorialize him) thereon, and a drum for appeals. He instituted triennial examinations for promotion or dismissal. He mitigated punishments, allowing banishment for severe sentences in some cases, the bamboo in the court and the cane in the school room.
- 2224 He made Yü vice-regent and ordered him to arrange the great Plan 洪範 (see Shuking, Legge, III, 320 sq.).
- 2221 Yü is sent on an expedition against Yu Miao 有苗. He failed in this war, but succeeded by peaceful policy.
- 2208 Shun died 110 years old on a hunting excursion to the south (in Hu-kwang province).

The Hia Dynasty 夏, B. C. 2205-1766.

- 2205 大禹 Yü the Great (G. 1846) takes the throne, after he had withdrawn for three years to give Shun's son a chance. His family name was Sz 姒, a descendant of the yellow emperor. He assembled the nobles at T'u Shan (in Kiangnan), the native place of his wife. Before his palace he had hung up five different instruments—鐘, 鼓, 磬, 鐸, 鞀; during one meal he was ten times interrupted; whilst washing himself he had three times to bundle up his hair in order to relieve the people. I-ti 儀狄, the inventor of sweet spirits, was banished, because Yü considered the drink a danger to coming generations. Yü wept over criminals he met. He had money cast to redeem children sold by their parents for want of food. Nine metal (golden?) tripods he had cast, on each engraved one of the nine provinces; they were placed in his ancestral hall as emblems of the empire.

- 2198 Yü died 100 years old at Huei Ki 會稽 in Chekiang, where he is buried.
- 2197 帝 啟 K'i, son of Yü, was preferred to the minister Yih 益, proposed by Yü. Reigned nine years. According to the Bamboo Annals K'i banished his youngest son beyond the western Ho, where he combined with the people in rebellion, but made his submission when an army was sent against him.
- 2195 Great battle at Kan 甘 (in Shensi) against Yu Hu 有扈, who had refused submission. (See Shu, Legge, III, 152 sq.)
- 2188 太 康 T'ai K'ang, son of K'i, reigned twenty-nine years. He cared nothing about the government. Continuing hunting for 100 days, one of the nobles, I 羿 (G. 668), prevented his return to the capital. He then withdrew to Honan, whither his five brothers (Legge, III, 156 sq.) brought his mother, and there he died. I 羿 who had usurped the power, placed then a brother of T'ai K'ang on the throne.
- 2159 仲 康 Chung K'ang reigned thirteen years. He ordered the earl of Yin 胤 (Legge, III, 162) to march against the astronomers Hi 羲 and Ho 和, who by indulging in drink neglected their office, so that there was confusion about the dates of the eclipses.
- 2146 帝 相 Siang, the son of the former. I (s. 2188) usurped the power and drove the emperor away, who settled at Shang K'iu 商丘. I reigned eight years and was murdered by order of his minister Han Cho 寒泥, his corpse boiled and placed before his son to eat, who preferred death. Han married I's widow and had two sons by her.
- 2119 Han caused his two sons to murder Siang. The empress Min 緡 escaped, and a minister Mi 靡.
- 2118 The empress Min gives birth to Shao K'ang 少 康 at Yu-jeng 有仍. There was an interregnum of forty years.
- 2097 Han sent to Yü-jeng for Shao K'ang, who therefore fled to Yü 虞, where the ruler gave him his two daughters into marriage and a town of 500 people to govern. Those faithful to Hia collected around him.
- 2079 The fugitive minister Mi led troops against Han Cho, defeated and executed him. Shao K'ang, forty years old, ascends the throne. He had Han's two sons executed. The former order was soon restored. Overflow of the Ho (Yellow river) in his eleventh year, which was regulated by the prince of Shang.

- 2067 Wu Yü, one of Shao K'ang's sons, founded Yüeh (in Chekiang N. E., Legge, III, 170).
- 2057 帝 杼 Ch'u, son of the former, reigned seventeen years.
- 2040 槐 Huai, son of Ch'u, reigned twenty-six years.
- 2014 芒 Mang, son of Huai, reigned eighteen years.
- 1996 泄 Sie, son of Mang, reigned sixteen years. Six barbarian nations 夷 made their submission. The five titles of nobility—公, 侯, 伯, 子, 男—were first used.
- 1980 帝 不降 Pu Kiang, son of Sie, reigned fifty-nine years, and resigned to
- 1921 帝 肩 Kiung, brother of the former; reigned twenty-one years.
- 1900 帝 廬 Kin, son of the former, reigned twenty-one years.
- 1879 帝 孔甲 K'ung Kia, son of Pu-kiang, reigned thirty-one years. Iron was used to cast swords, 1877.
- 1853 Li 履 (Ch'eng T'ang 成湯) is born, a son of the Lord of Shang 商主. Li became the founder of the Shang dynasty.
- 1848 帝 皐 Kao, son of the former, reigned eleven years.
- 1837 帝 發 Fa, son of the former, reigned nineteen years. The barbarous tribes became royal guests, i.e., they tendered their submission.
- 1818 桀 癸 Kie Kuei, son of the former (G. 354).
- 1797 Kung-liu 公 劉 moved his state to Pin 邠, Shensi.
- 1786 Expedition against the Chief of Shih 施, who presented his daughter Mei Hi 妹喜, who became Kie's favorite. He built her a chamber of precious stones, ivory porticoes, marble terrace, jade bed, had luxurious music, a mountain of meat, a forest of dried meat, a lake of wine whereon boats moved and 3,000 persons drank like cattle at the beating of a drum.
- 1784 Li (s. 1853) succeeds his father in Shang as T'ang 湯; his residence was Po 亳 in Honan.
- 1783 T'ang's expedition against Ko 葛.
- 1782 T'ang engaged I-yin 伊尹 (G. 913), sending him to Kie, to remind him of the way of Yao and Shun. He went five times, and in 1779 returned to Po without success.
- 1777 T'ang was imprisoned by Kie and set free again after some time.
- 1768 Kie became more extravagant; he made an artificial lake and a night palace, where male and female lived promiscuously; he did not attend court for thirty days. The minister Chung-ku 終古 remonstrated, and fled to Shang when his counsel was despised.

- 1767 The minister Kuan-lung-fung 關龍逢 persisted in his remonstrances, so that Kie got angry and killed him.—Slip of the T'ai mountain, earthquake, the rivers I and Loh (in Honan) dried up.

This was the last year of the Hia; seventeen rulers in 439 years.

The Shang 商 (also called Yin 殷) Dynasty,

B. C. 1766-1122.

- 1766 Ch'eng T'ang 成湯, said to have descended from the Yellow Emperor through Sie, minister of education to Yao.

Battle with Kie at Ming-t'iao 鳴條 in Shansi. Kie's troops were defeated and he confined at Nan-ch'ao 南巢 in Kiangnan (see Legge, III, 173 and 177).

T'ang ascended the imperial throne at Po.*—Drought continued till 1760. (Legge, III, 184).

- 1764 Kie died.

- 1763 Opening of mines and casting money to relieve the people.

- 1760 Prayer of the emperor, accusing himself of six faults: (1) irregularity in the administration, (2) the people not minding business, (3) lofty palaces, (4) women's talk, (5) presents, (6) flattery. Much rain fell. New music was composed. He also punished the god of the land Chu, the grandson of Shen Nung, by placing K'i, the son of Ti Kuh, into his office (see Mcg., p. 29).

- 1753 太甲 T'ai Kia, grandson of T'ang. As he upset the institutions 典刑 of T'ang, the old minister I-yin removed him for three years' mourning and quiet meditation to a palace near the grave.

- 1751 T'ai Kia is brought back to Po, a reformed man and wise ruler. (See Legge, III, 191 sq. and 199 sq., also 213 sq.).

- 1720 沃丁 Wu Ting, son of the former. I-yin (1782) died. About him see Mcg., p. 32.

- 1691 太庚 T'ai Keng, younger brother of Wu.

- 1666 小甲 Siao Kia, son of the former.

- 1649 雍己 Yung Ki, brother of Kia. Decay of the government, some nobles became disloyal.

- 1637 太戊 T'ai Wu, another brother of Kia. The minister I-chih 伊陟, son of I-yin, succeeds in a reform; the old, sick, and those in trouble were cared for. In the third year the nobles of seventy-six

* The Southern Po = Kuei-te-fu in Honan.

- states appeared at court. Two other good ministers assisted in the government. Carriages of great excellence were made.
- 1562 仲丁 **Chung Ting**, son of the former.
- 1557 Removal of the capital to Ao 囂 in the prefecture of K'ai-feng-fu. The Lan 藍 barbarians (south) plundered the country.
- 1549 外壬 **Wai Jen**, brother of the former. There were inner troubles.
- 1534 河亶甲 **Ho Tan Kia**, also brother of Ting. As the Ho caused trouble, the capital had to be moved to Siang 相* in Honan. Decay of the state.
- 1525 祖乙 **Tsu Yi**, son of Kia. Siang being endangered by an inundation the capital was removed to Keng 耿 in Shansi, and from there to Hing 邢 in Chihli. Under the able minister Wu-hsien 巫賢 (son of Wu-hsien 咸, 1637) the state improved again.
- 1506 祖辛 **Tsu Sin**, son of Yi.
- 1490 沃甲 **Wu Kia**, brother of Sin. Confusion in the empire.
- 1465 祖丁 **Tsu Ting**, son of Sin. Confusion continued.
- 1433 南庚 **Nan Keng**, son of Wu Kia.
- 1408 陽甲 **Yang Kia**, son of Tsu. Ting. The nobles kept away from court.
- 1401 盤庚 **P'an Keng**, brother of Yang Kia. Transfer of the capital to Po† (see 1766 and 1784). He wrote long exhortations about it to the people (see Shu, Legge, III, 220). The government and its influence improved. He changed the title of the dynasty into Yin 殷.
- 1373 小辛 **Siao Sin**, brother of P'an Keng. Decay again.
- 1352 小乙 **Siao Yi**, brother of Siao Sin.
- 1327 直父 **T'an fu**, a descendant of K'i 岐 (2435) transferred his residence from Pin‡ (1797) to K'i (i. e., from the East to the West of Shensi) and changed the name of his state to Chou 周.
- 1324 武丁 **Wu Ting**, son of Yi. During the time of mourning he refrained from speaking; his minister Kan-p'an 甘盤 attended to the government, but retired on the ground of age, when the mourning was over. The emperor dreamt of another minister, pointed out by God, who was found in Fu Yüe 傅說 (G. 604), a recluse of Shansi (see Shu, Legge, III, 248, also 264); six tribes of the southern barbarians tendered submission.
- 1293 War with Kuei-fang 鬼方, a tribe of the Huns, for three years, till they became tributary. Then there was peace and prosperity.

* Near Chang-te-fu.

† Western Po (Arendt, loco citato, p. 221).

‡ Pin near Si-ngan-fu, K'i near Feng-hsiang-fu in Shensi.

- 1265 **祖 庚** **Tsu Keng**, son of Wu Ting.
- 1258 **祖 甲** **Tsu Kia**, brother of Keng.
- 1231 **Ch'ang 昌** (afterwards king Wen=Wen-wang) was born (G. 2308), son of Ki-li 季歷, the son of T'an-fu (1327). Ki-li was the third son; his elder brothers were T'ai-pê 太伯 and Chung-yung 仲雍. They withdrew across the Yangtse when their father got ill, as they knew he wished to leave the state to Ch'ang (G. 2348).
- 1225 **廩 辛** **Lin Sin**, son of Kia.
- 1219 **庚 丁** **Keng Ting**, brother of the former.
- 1198 **武 乙** **Wu Yih**, son of Keng Ting. Transfer of the capital to the North of the Ho. He had an image made and called it "Spirit of Heaven" 天神. A man had to personify it playing chess; when losing, he was executed, his blood filled in a bag and hung up; the emperor shot arrows at it and said he was shooting Heaven. He was killed by a thunderbolt during a hunting expedition.
- 1194 **太 丁** **Tai Ting**, son of Wu Yih. Ki-li of Chou had success in war against the Jung 戎 (near Peking).
- 1191 **帝 乙** **Ti Yih**. He appointed Ki-li guardian 牧師, who gained victories over two other tribes of the Jung. The emperor gave him presents of jade-sceptres and fragrance, and raised his nobility to earl 侯伯. Ki-li died 1185 and his son Ch'ang (s. 1231) succeeded in Chou. He was kind and generous to the people and courteous to the scholars; five scholars of renown among others joined him.
- 1177 Earthquake in K'i (Chou).
- 1169 **Fa 發** (King Wu=Wu-wang, s. G. 2353) born, as second son among ten, to the Earl of the West (Ch'ang of Chou=Wen-wang) by his wife T'ai-sz 太似. The first son having died, Fa was appointed heir. The next son in age was Tan 旦, who became a learned man under the teaching of Kwoh-shuh 虢叔. The Earl Ch'ang (Wen-wang) was again called against two barbarian tribes.
- 1154 **紂 辛** **Chou Sin** (G. 414), third son of Ti Yi and the queen. The two older sons—K'i 啟, also called 微子, and Chung-yen 仲衍, by the same mother—were born when she occupied still a secondary position in the harem (Legge, III, 269); it seems that this his birthright made Sin feel secure in his heavenly destination. He was of superior talents, but fond of luxury. Ivory chopsticks were first used by him, then cups of precious stone, bear-paws and

- leopard-stomach as delicacies. His uncle Ki Tsz 箕子 remonstrated without effect.
- 1147 The noble Yu Su 有蘇 avoided an attack from the emperor by sending him his daughter Ta-ki 妲己 (G. 1844), who gained complete control over him. He had new music composed, built the Deer-terrace (in Honan) three li in circumference and 1,000 feet (?) high, with marble chambers and doors of jade; it was finished in seven years. There he stored all kinds of precious things, including dogs and horses. He also enlarged the Yüan-terrace 苑 (in Chihli), where at a lake of wine, meat was hung in a forest and naked males and females chased one another; nine markets were opened within the palace and drinking went on all night through. Nobles who opposed such conduct, were executed on instigation of Ta-ki; punishments were invented, as holding a red hot iron, walking over a smooth greased brass column so as to fall into a coal-fire underneath. People became indignant.
- 1144 The daughter of the earl of Kiu 九 was executed, because she disliked immorality; her father was pickled 醢. The earl of O 鄂 was made into minced meat for earnestly remonstrating; pregnant women were cut open to see their womb, legs were cut off to see the marrow. The earl of the West was imprisoned at Yiu-li 羑里 for his expression of grief over such misdeeds. He occupied himself with the Book of Changes during his imprisonment. He remained seven years in prison, till his friends and ministers made up valuable presents and sent a beautiful girl for the tyrant who was much pleased thereby and set the earl free. The emperor also accepted a large piece of territory for the abolition of his cruel punishments. The emperor presented the earl with a bow, arrows and battle-axes as high executioner. Two nobles had a quarrel over some fields and went to Chou for arbitration. The humility of the people there touched their hearts, so that both gave up their claims. When this became known, over forty states became the vassals of Chou.
- 1140 The earl of Chou took Lü Shang 呂尚 (G. 343, 1862) as tutor 師 and called him T'ai-kung-wang 太公望, also tutor Shang-fu 尚父. The earl had an expedition against Ts'ung 崇 (near Si-ngan); he then made Fêng 豐 his capital and built the Ling terrace.
- 1135 The earl of Chou (Wen-wang) died in his ninety-seventh year after a reign of fifty years. His son Fa succeeded (see 1169). G. 1658.
- 1128 A son (Tsung 誦, afterwards king Ch'eng) is born to the earl Fa

who had taken I-kiang 邑姜, daughter of Lü Shang, as his wife, famous for her self-control.

1124 Eight hundred nobles, withdrawing their allegiance from the Shang dynasty, assemble at Meng-tsin 孟津 and express their wish to march against Chou-sin, but Fa thought the time had not yet arrived.

1123 The earl Fa marched against Li 黎 in Shansi (S. E.) and punished it for wrongs done. A fugitive reported it to the emperor, who did not mind it, as he believed in his destiny from heaven (s. the Shu, Legge, III, 268). Wei Tsz 微子 went away, because his exhortation was lost, Ki Tsz 箕子 was imprisoned for his advice, then he feigned madness. Pi-kan 比干 was so persevering in remonstrance that Chou got in a great rage and had his heart cut out to see whether it had the seven openings of a sage (G. 1645).

This closes the record of the Shang dynasty. Its twenty-eight emperors had reigned for 644 years.

The Chou 周 Dynasty (B. C. 1122-249.)

1122 The king of Chou had another assembly at Meng-tsin, where an oath was taken to overthrow Shang (s. the Shu, Legge, III, 281, 300, 306). The armies met at Mu Ye 牧野 (left side of the Ho in Honan province). Chou-sin had 700,000 soldiers, but they turned their weapons against themselves. Chou sin fled and burned himself with his treasures in the Deer-terrace. King Wu had Ta-ki (s. 1147) beheaded, raised a monument on Pi-kan's grave, put an inscription on the residence 閭 of Shang Yung 商容 (Shu V, 3, 9 differs), distributed the grain stored up in the granary and what remained of the treasures of the Deer-terrace, and sent the women of the palace home. He appointed Shao's son, Wu-keng 武庚, earl of Yin 殷侯 and his own three brothers superintendents. Ki-tsz (viscount of Wei) was set free from prison and explained the rules of government 洪範 (s. the Shu, Legge, III, 320) and then withdrew to Corea. The two nobles Po I 伯夷 and Shuh Tsi 叔齊 did not approve of Chou's rebellion; they withdrew to a mountain and died from hunger (G. 1657).

Wu took the twelfth month of Shang as the first month of the year; he changed the royal colours from white to brown, he introduced the law of taxation 徹 (each family having 100 mow, one-

tenth of the produce to be paid to the government). He removed the capital to H'ao* 鎬 in Shensi. He established a school and the entertainment of the old. The "Great-War-Music" was composed.

- 1121 Hounds were given by a state of western barbarians, when a minister Shih, duke of Shao 召公奭 (G. 1680), spoke against it (s. the Shu, Legge, III, 345). Wu's illness (Legge, III, 351).
- 1120 Sacrifice to the 100 gods. Audience of the nobles.
- 1115 成王 King Ch'eng, son of Wu-wang, who had reigned only seven years and died in his ninety-third (as it is said, but $1169-1116=53$ and not 93).

Ch'eng was only thirteen years old when he came to the throne, and reigned thirty-seven years. The duke of Chou 周公 (G. 418) acted as chancellor. He gave lessons to the king, together with his son Po K'in 伯禽; when the king did wrong, Po K'in received a whipping. The latter was made the first feudal prince of Lu. His father then admonished him not to treat the people haughtily, but to follow his father's example, who bundled his hair thrice up when interrupted in washing and spit out thrice the food from his mouth to attend on scholars. When his three brothers were suspicious of duke Chou, he withdrew from the government to the East and wrote short sentences to the 384 lines of the sixty-four hexagrams of the Book of Changes.

- 1113 The duke wrote a piece of poetry for the king (s. Sheking). There was a great thunderstorm in autumn; the king went to accompany the duke back, when it rained and the wind turned (Legge, III, 359). Rebellion of the three uncles, also of the state Yen 奄 of the Huai 淮 barbarians and of the Sü Jung 徐戎 (Legge, III, 362). The duke of Chou marched against them and his son against the two barbarian States. Wu-keng (s. 1122) was executed and Wei Tsz 微子, Shao's brother, installed (s. 1123) as the feudal prince of Sung to rule over the remnants of Yin (s. the Shu, Legge, III, 376). Kuan 管, the older of the three uncles, was executed, the second Ts'ai 蔡 imprisoned, and the third Ho 霍 degraded to the common people (s. Legge, III, 487). The duke of Chou wrote a piece of poetry on his victorious return.
- 1112 The duke of Chou occupied the place in front of the emperor, T'ai Kung 太公 to the left, Shao Kung 召公 to the right and the historian Tieh 佚 behind.

* In the district of Ch'ang-an, in the prefecture of Si-ngan.

- 1110 The chief of Yüeh Shang 越裳 (Tongkin) came to court with presents of white pheasants, because no storm visited his country for three years, and he thought that there must be saints in China. Later legends say that the duke of Chou gave him five chariots with a magnet needle pointing to the south to guide him on his return journey (Legge, III, 536.)
- 1109 Building of a new capital Loh 洛 in the East (Honan). (See the Shu, Legge, III, 381, 420, 434.)
- 1108 First year of Po-ch'in, duke of Lu (1108-1063).
- 1107 The emperor in a joke gave a sceptre to his younger brother and called him Lord of T'ang 唐 (G. 1739); he was told by his minister Tieh 佖, that the emperor cannot speak jokingly, but that every word he says is taken down by the historian and carried out, which was done. T'ang is now a district in Chihli.
- 1105 The duke of Chou gave some lessons on governmental duties (s. Shu, Legge, III, 399, 413, 453, 464, 474). He died at Fêng and was buried in Pi.
- 1103 Establishment of a mint; the money was made round with a square hole in the middle; 1/24th of a tael used in exchange at the nine treasuries 九府. Cloth and silk pieces were made two feet and two inches broad and forty feet in length.
- 1078 King Ch eng died. His son king K'ang 康王 reigned twenty-six years. [1062-1059, K'ao, duke of Lu. 1058-1053, Yang, duke of Lu.]
- 1053 Death of the excellent minister Shao-kung Shih (s. 1121). He often had gone outside among the people to hear their complaints and decided cases under a wild pear tree; the people would not cut down this tree after his death and made an ode on it (s. Sheking, II).
- 1052 Chao 昭王, son of the former, reigned fifty-one years. [1052-1039, Yu, duke of Lu.]
- 1039 The younger brother of the duke of Lu murdered his sovereign duke Yu 幽公 and took his throne as duke Wei 魏公. This remained unpunished. [1038-989, duke Wei of Lu.]
- 1002 The state of Chou began going down. The emperor was drowned on a hunting expedition, in crossing the river Han in a boat which was only glued together. A relative was drowned with the emperor.
- 1001 穆王 emperor Muh, son of the former, reigned fifty-five years to an age of 104 (G. 1559). [988-952, duke Li of Lu. 951, duke Hsien of Lu (s. 855).]

- 985 His journey to the west with his charioteer Tsao-fu 造父; he brought eight fine horses. He suppressed the rebellion of the Jung of Sü 徐戎.
- 967 From the expedition against the Dog-Jung 犬戎 he brought back four white wolves and four white deer, but no laurels.
- 952 Lü's essay on Punishments was published (s. Shu). Redemption by money of 2,000 serious crimes.
- 946 共王 emperor Kung, son of the former, reigned twelve years to his eighty-fourth year.
- 944 On a journey, the emperor came to Mi 密 in Shensi. Three girls wanted to go to him, but the duke of Mi kept them for himself against the advice of his mother to present them to the emperor, who exterminated Mi in the following year.
- 934 懿王 emperor I, son of the former, reigned twenty-five years. He moved the capital to Huai-li 槐里 (Si-ngan).
- 909 孝王 emperor Hiao, brother of Kung, reigned fifteen years to his sixty-fifth year of age.
- 897 Fei Tsz 非子 (a descendant of Yih, the minister of Shun), an expert in horse-rearing, was installed as Lord of an appanage 附庸之君 with the town of Ts'in 秦 in Shensi, the beginning of the state of Ts'in. Large hail-stones fell, so that cattle and horses were killed, the Yangtse and Han being frozen.
- 894 夷王 emperor I, son of I (s. 934), reigned sixteen years to his sixtieth year of age. He was the first emperor who received feudal lords in the hall below (*i. e.*, the feudal lords began to feel their power and the emperor had to do them honor). He sent the duke of Kuo 虢 against the Jung of T'ai-yüen 太原 in Shansi, who drove them to the north and gained 1,000 horses.
- 887 The Lord of Ts'u 楚 attacked Yung 庸 and appointed his three sons to be kings over three conquered states without asking I.
- 878 厲王 emperor Li, son of I, reigned fifty-one years.
- 868 The barbarians of the Huai 淮夷 plundered the country, the emperor sent Kuo-chung 虢仲 with an army against them. [855-826, duke Chen of Lu.]
- 860 In Ts'i the duke Hu 胡 was murdered by an uncle, who became duke Hien 獻.
- 849 The feudal lords brought no presents because the emperor had made an avaricious noble a governor 卿士.
- 846 The emperor's oppression made the people speak evil against him. The duke Shao 召 (a descendant of Shao-k'ang, s. 1053 and 1121,

s. Shu, V, 12) ventured to mention it; the emperor got angry and employed a priest of Wei 衛巫 to find those speakers out (by physiognomy); those he denounced were executed; this stopped the talk to the great pleasure of the emperor. Shao then made a song against the emperor (s. Sheking, III) and other pieces were made by different people.

842 Rebellion of the people. The emperor fled to Chi 彘 in Shansi. The crown prince hid himself in the house of duke Shao, *who gave his own son to the people to be killed instead of him.*

841 The two dukes of Shao and of Chou 周 governed in harmony, as the crown prince was too young; the title of the reign was Kung-ho 共和 joined peace.*

827 宣王 emperor Süan, son of Li, reigned forty-six years. After Li's death at Chi the two dukes placed the crown prince on the throne, but continued to assist in the government. Military expeditions had to be sent against the barbarous tribes: in the west Jung 西戎, in the north Hien-yün 獫狁, in the south King-man 荊蠻 and in the east to the south of the Huai 淮南. The emperor went in person against the Sü barbarians (s. 985) north of the Huai 淮.

822 Great drought (also in 826). The emperor improved his conduct; celebrated in a poem (s. Sheking).

816 The emperor could not be persuaded to perform the ancient rite of ploughing.

807 In the state of Lu, Po-yü kills his uncle, the duke I, and usurps the throne (806-796).

806 The emperor used to rise late; the empress Kiang Hou 姜后 begged to be punished for it as being her fault. This moved the emperor to reform (s. G. 333).

796 Emperor Süan punishes and kills Po-yü in Lu. Ch'eng, younger brother of duke I, is placed on the throne of Lu and rules as duke Hsiao 796-769.

789 In the war against the Kiang-jung 姜戎 the emperor suffered a defeat at Tsien-mou 千畝 in the west.

* There were twelve feudal states under the Chou dynasty:

1. Ts'in 秦 in Shensi; 2. Tsin 晉 in Shansi; 3. Yen 燕 near Peking; 4. Ts'i 齊 in North Shantung; 5. Lu 魯, South Shantung; 6. Ts'ao 曹, West Shantung; 7. Wei 衛 near Wei-hui-fu, N. Honan; 8. Cheng 鄭, first near T'ungchou in Shensi, then near Hsin-cheng in the west of K'ai-fêng-fu in Honan; 9. Sung 宋 near Kuei-te-fu, East Honan; 10. Ch'en 陳 near Ch'en-chou, south of K'ai-fêng-fu, S. E. Honan; 11. Ts'ai 蔡 near Ju-ning-fu, S. Honan; 12. Ch'u 楚 the present Hu-kuang on the Yangtze.

- 785 The emperor condemned Tu Pê 杜伯 to death. His friend Tso Ju 左儒 (G. 2025) interceded nine times without availing. The emperor said: You have to distinguish between your Lord and your friend. Ju answered: If the Lord is right and the friend wrong, I follow my Lord and kill my friend, but if my friend is right and my Lord wrong, then I follow my friend and oppose my Lord. The emperor got angry and demanded him to take this word back, which Ju refused. The emperor then had Tu Pê executed and Tso Ju killed himself.
- 781 幽王 emperor Yu, son of Süan, reigned eleven years.
- 779 Earthquake in Shensi; three rivers dry up, the K'i mountain slips. Several odes are made (s. Sheking).
- 773 The empress and the crown prince are degraded, and a favorite, Pao Sz 褒姒 (G. 1624), with her son elevated. The emperor had the alarm fires alighted to make Pao Sz laugh at the appearance of the vassals, and heaps of silk were torn, as she liked to hear the noise of it.
- 771 The emperor intending to kill his son, the former crown prince, demanded Shen 申, where he had taken refuge, to surrender him. This its ruler (father of the ex-empress) refused and allied himself with the Dog-Jung against the emperor, who was defeated and killed. The Jung then ravaged the country, so that the feudal lords of Tsin, Wei, Cheng and Ts'in united and drove them off. They then placed the old crown prince on the throne.
- 770 平王 emperor Ping, son of Yu, reigned fifty-one years. To escape the ravages of the Jung, the capital was removed to Loh-yang 洛陽 in the east (Honan). The duke Siang 襄 of Ts'in got the imperial diploma of feudal prince and the countries of K'i 岐 and Fêng 豐.
- 760 At the death of the duke of Ts'ao 曹 the crown prince is killed by his brother, who then reigns as duke of Muh 穆.
- 750 Great victory of the duke Wen 文 of Ts'in over the Jung; he returns the country east of K'i to the emperor and keeps all the west of K'i.
- 745 The marquis of Tsin, Chao 昭, gives part of his territory K'ü-wo 曲沃 to his uncle Ch'eng Sz 成師.
- 741 After the death of the duke of Ts'u 楚, his brother murdered the crown prince and reigned as duke (or king) Wu 武.
- 723 The duke of Lu 魯 sent an ambassador to the emperor to inquire about the border-sacrifice. The emperor sent the historian Kioh 角,

who was retained in Lu, and originated Mihism 墨翟之學 Lu had the border-sacrifice from this time, *i. e.*, usurped it.

- 722 Beginning of the **Annals of Lu**, Spring-Autumn Classic.*
- 720 The feudal state Cheng 鄭 sent an army under its general Ts'ai-tsu 祭足 into the imperial domain in Honan, who carried the grain away, because the duke of Cheng was to be relieved of his position as minister.
- 719 桓王 emperor Huan, grandson of Ping, reigned twenty-three years. The duke Huan of Wei 衛 was murdered by his step-brother, who occupied the throne.
- 712 The duke Yin 隱 of Lu is murdered by a prince, who then occupied the throne of Lu as duke Huan 桓公.
- 707 As the duke of Chéng (720) did no more appear at the imperial court, an imperial army of Ts'ai, Wei and Ch'en troops entered Cheng, but was defeated and the emperor himself wounded. The duke did not permit his army to pursue the emperor, but sent an apology after him.
- 696 莊王 emperor Chuang, son of Huan, reigned fifteen years.
- 694 Huan of Lu paid a visit to T'si with his wife, the step-sister of Siang 襄, the duke of T'si. They had incestuous intercourse. The duke reproved his wife, who complained to her brother; he had therefore the duke of Lu murdered at an entertainment he gave. He-kien 黑肩, a descendant of the duke of Chou, intended to kill the emperor

*NOTE.—In his essay on Prehistoric China (*s. China Branch of Royal Asiatic Society, Volume XXIV, 2, issued at Shanghai in August 1890*), Dr. Faber says, p. 141: "Chinese history begins with the *Annals of the Feudal State of Lu, 722 B. C.*, published by Confucius 240 years later. Though even this work has *suffered somewhat* by the doctrinal tenets of Confucius, still we find in it a statement of facts and a natural order of events. There are also other records of that period preserved, by which many statements of the Confucian text can be verified and others *rectified*. Of the time before the eighth century B. C. we find no such trustworthy historical records in China. Although there are still a number of documents in existence supposed to belong to earlier periods, we have no unquestionable evidence of their authenticity, but strong arguments to the contrary. The safest position that can be taken under such circumstances is to regard all documents of such earlier literature of China as *productions* of the time of Confucius and succeeding ages. Many of those works are, we admit, based on earlier traditions and, it may be, even on earlier written memoranda, but facts and *legends*, truth and *imagination*, original statements and later *enlargements* are deplorably mixed together."

And on page 154: "There can be little doubt that it was Chou 周, who commenced writing in its proper sense in China. Chou's fifteen slips are probably the *First Book* written in Chinese. But this does not exclude the existence of memoranda of various kinds. Even Confucius' edition of the *Annals of Lu* resembles old memoranda. This is a conclusion of very *serious import*. All monuments of literature, including some very famous portions of the *Sacred Books of China*, said to be older than the Chou dynasty, are thus pronounced to be later productions. It would have been impossible to compose those documents with characters consisting of figures of objects and ideographic combinations. As all the literary remnants of Chinese antiquity show a predominance of phonetic characters, *none can be older* than the Chou dynasty; they are most likely later

- and place his brother Koe 克 on the throne; on discovery He-kien was executed and Koe fled to Yen 燕.
- 686 Duke Siang of Ts'i was murdered by a relative, Wu-chih 無知, who was killed by an official in the following year. Kiu 糾, one of the princes of Ts'i, had fled to Lu, which State sent an army to place him on the throne in Ts'i, but Siao Pêh 小白, who had fled to Kù 莒, arrived before and became duke Huan 桓 (G. 841). Lu was defeated and Kiu killed. One of his guardians committed suicide; the other, *Kuan Chung* 管仲 (G. 1006), became the famous minister of duke Huan of Ts'i. He opened mines to get money and evaporated seawater to gain the salt.
- 684 Lu gained by stratagem a victory over Ts'i.
- 681 釐王 emperor Hi, son of Chuang, reigned five years. Wan 萬 of Sung murdered his duke Min 閔 for an offence; he also killed two ministers. The duke of Ts'i assembled Sung, Ch'en, Ts'ai, Chu to settle the trouble; as Sui 遂 was not represented, Ts'i annexed it. Lu, defeated by Ts'i, signed a treaty, when an officer of Lu, Ts'ao Mo 曹沫, seized the duke of Ts'i, put a dagger on his chest and thus forced him to return all the country conquered from Lu.
- 680 The earl of K'ü-wo (s. 745) vanquished Tsin and murdered his ruler Min 緡.
- 678 The emperor confirmed the earl Wu of K'ü-wo as marquis of Tsin.
- 676 惠王 emperor Hui, son of Hi, reigned twenty-five years. Five governors, headed by Pien Po 邊伯, rebelled to place Tui 頹, the younger son of emperor Chuang, on the throne. They did not succeed, but fled to Wei 衛. From there they received help, and

than Chou's (8th century B. C.). A few documents may, however, contain some more ancient matter in a revised form. There may have been other dynasties before the Chou, such as the Hia and Shang, but their government can have been neither extensive nor powerful. Meagre lists of the names of their kings are perhaps the only genuine records of their times. Any detailed stories such as of Yao, Shun, and Ch'eng T'ang, are legends which grew into shape a few centuries before Confucius. Not even the Book of Odes contains an allusion to Yao and Shun. Writing cannot have amounted to much even in the first centuries of the Chou dynasty, till Chou 籒 invented the Great Seal characters, about 800 B. C. Very remarkable is the fact that the reliable history of China has its beginning with the invention of the Great Seal characters."

In his essay on "The Historical Characteristics of Taoism" (*China Review*, XIII) Dr. Faber says (p. 239): "Confucius was the leader of a political school as well, and he never for a moment forgot his character as such. The texts he selected from among the great number transmitted from antiquity were only such as accorded with his political bias and purpose, and he pruned these texts without mercy in order to produce in them something of uniformity and consistency. The Confucian Classics are the *Canons of the Conservative party* of ancient China; they are, however, not reliable historical documents, but bear unmistakably the hall-mark of Confucius and his party."

also from Yen 燕, when they marched against Chou and established Tui. The emperor fled to Cheng 鄭.

673 The earl of Cheng with the duke of Kuo (s. 894) re-established the emperor and killed Tui and the five governors. The emperor gave a district to Cheng as a reward.

672 Tsin fought the Jung in Shensi and gained the famous beauty Li Ki 驪姬 (s. M. 347, G. 1101).

The duke of Ch'en 陳 killed his heir-prince.

670 Kuo 郭, a small State, lost its independence, because its ruler loved the good, but felt unable to make use of it; he hated the evil without being able to remove it.

662 Duke Chuang 莊 of Lu died, his son Pan 般 was soon murdered by K'ing-fu 慶父, a son of duke Huan 桓. The eight-year old K'i 啟 got the throne as duke Min 閔 (he was secondary son of Chuang).

661 Northern barbarians attacked Hsing 邢 in Chihli. Kuan Chung (s. 686) caused Ts'i to march to its rescue. Duke Hien 獻 of Tsin annexed K'eng 耿 and appointed Chao Su 趙夙; he annexed Wei 魏, where he installed Pi Wan 畢萬 and had K'ü-wo walled in for the crown prince. This was the beginning of the future three States—Han, Wei, and Chao.

660 K'ing-fu of Lu (s. 662) murdered his ruler, the duke Min; he and the widow of duke Chuang fled to K'ü 莒, where he was seized and executed by another son of Chuang, who then began his reign over Lu as duke Hi 僖. The northern barbarians attacked Wei 衛, whose duke was so fond of cranes that he neglected everything else. His defeated troops killed him; Ts'i then placed his brother on the throne of Wei as duke Wen 文. He developed husbandry, trade, industry, and learning, also his power from thirty war-chariots to 300 at the end of his reign. Mu succeeded in Ts'in (s. G. 1554).

659 Several states unite their troops against the northern barbarians, who again troubled Hsing (s. 661).

658 Tsin sending presents to Yü 虞 asked permission to march through its territory against Kuo 虢, which was conquered; three years later Yü also was conquered.

656 Ts'i united with other States, marched against Ts'ai 蔡, which offered no resistance; then against Ch'u 楚, which had neglected to pay tribute, but the trouble was arranged peacefully.

655 Duke Hien of Tsin raised Li-ki (s. 672) to the rank of first wife and killed his heir-son. Li-ki also spoke against two other sons

of the duke, both of them fled to other States. Chao Ts'ui 趙衰 (G. 188) accompanied one.

The emperor wanted to degrade his heir-son, but Ts'i, supported by the other States, prevented it. The able governor of Yü (658) Po-li-hi 百里奚 (G. 1659) fled to Ts'in 秦, which State now began to influence the politics of China.

651 襄王 emperor Siang, son of Hui, reigned thirty-three years.

Duke Huan of Ts'i assembled the princes of the State, and the emperor sent minister K'ung 孔 as his envoy with sacrificial meat, which Huan ceremoniously received. After the death of the duke of Tsin, his son by Li-ki (s. 655) succeeded, but was murdered by the tutor of the late crown prince (G. 673). He killed also the brother of the murdered one and his tutor who had enthroned him. Some neighbouring State then established one of the two fugitive princes as duke Hui 惠, 650.

648 The emperor's brother Tai 帶 conspired with the Jung, but they were kept in check by Ts'i, and Tai was captured, but pardoned.

645 Duke Huan of Ts'i asked his sick chancellor Kuan Chung about a successor and proposed Yi Ya 易牙, his cook. Kuan said, "No! he has no human feeling, for he boiled his own son to gratify the duke; K'ai-fang 開方 also not, for he turned against his parents to gratify the duke; nor Su-tiao 豎刁, for he castrated himself to gratify the duke." After Kuan's death the duke used nevertheless all three.

643 After Huan's death his five sons fought for succession, so that his corpse was left putrifying on his bed for sixty-seven days. Yi Ya established one of the five, but he was soon murdered; another was enthroned by the help of Sung and reigned as duke Hsiao 孝.

641 The baron of Tseng 鄫 was used as a victim for sacrifice by the order of duke Siang of Sung, because he had come too late to the meeting of the princes.

638 Sung was defeated by Ts'u.

636 The ducal prince Ch'ung-erh 重耳 (G. 523) entered Tsin and had the reigning duke Siang assassinated; he was confirmed by imperial decree as duke Wen 文. His faithful adherent Kiai Chih-t'ui 介之推 (G. 353, M. 253) hid himself with his mother in the woods of a hill to avoid taking office; the duke, after searching for him for a long time, set fire to the forest, intending to force him out, but Kiai was burnt to death. Hence the custom of not using fire in the third month for the whole month, till it was forbidden by a special

- edict in the fifth century (Wei Wu), now only observed at Tsing-ming (106 days after the winter solstice). The empress Wei 隗, a daughter of the chief of the Jung, had intercourse with Tai (s. 648) and was degraded for it. Tai joined the Jung against the emperor, who fled to Cheng and summoned the States.
- 635 Duke Wen of Sung defeated the Jung and killed Tai. He was rewarded with four towns.
- 633 Ch'u attacked Sung, which begged help from Ts'in. Ts'in first took possession of Ts'ao 曹 and attacked Wei 衛, when Ch'u's army was drawn away from Sung to assist Wei.
- 632 Tsin allied with Ts'i; Sung and Ts'in gained a decisive victory over Ts'u at Ch'eng Pu 城濮.
- 627 Ts'in advanced into Honan, but Ts'in, assisted by the Kiang Jung 姜戎, defeated its army at Hiao 殽.
- 624 Duke Muh of Ts'in (comp. G. 389 about his determined counsellor) marched against Tsin, took some places, buried the bones of the slain at Hiao and returned. Muh became the fourth leader of the States.
- 621 Muh died and was buried at Yung 雍 in Shensi; 177 persons were buried alive with him, among them three sons of a governor; the people feeling compassion made an ode (s. She-king I, 11, 6).
- 618 頃王 emperor K'ing, son of Siang, reigned six years. He had to send to Lu to borrow money for his father's burial.
- 612 匡王 emperor K'uang, son of K'ing, reigned six years.
- 609 Duke Wen of Lu died; a prince Sui 遂 murdered the heir-prince and the brother of his mother; he then enthroned another prince as duke Hsüan 宣.
- 607 Duke Ling of Tsin behaved like a lunatic; he shot from a terrace upon the people and looked how they tried to escape, he killed his cook for not roasting meat thoroughly. His minister Chao Tun 趙盾 (M. 52, G. 189) remonstrated without effect. The duke employed a man named Tsu-ni 鉏魔 to assassinate him; Tsu peeped into Chao Tun's room and saw him in his court-dress sitting asleep, when he retired with a sigh and said, one must honour the Lords of the people; to hurt such is dishonest, but to disregard the command of the ruler is unfaithful; then he knocked his head against a sophora tree and died. The duke then attempted to make his minister drunk and have him killed on his way home, but warned by a man whom he had saved from starvation, the minister escaped. The same person also killed a bloodhound let loose upon the minister.

Chao Tun then fled. His relative (clan-brother) killed the duke. The historian charged Chao Tun with the crime; because he was still minister, and responsible for it, he should have punished the murderer after his return.

606 定王 emperor **Ting**, brother of Kuang, reigned twenty-one years. The king Chuang 莊 of Ts'u returning from a victorious campaign against the Jung of Lu-hun 陸渾, marched into the imperial domain and asked the weight of the tripods. The emperor sent Wang Sun-man 王孫滿, who answered, that all depended on virtue, not on the tripods; as Chou's virtue was not yet decayed, the destiny of heaven remained unaltered; the question was therefore out of place. Chuang then went home.

597 Ch'u surrounded Ch'eng 鄭. Tsin came to its rescue, but was defeated at Pi 郕. Tu Ngan-ku 屠岸賈 (M. 726), a favored minister in Tsin, killed the son of Chao Tun (s. 607) and all his family; only the wife, sister of duke Ching, escaped; she gave birth to a son, who was saved because he did not cry. Two friends of his father resolved to save the child; the one, Kun-sun Chu-k'iu 公孫杵臼, hid himself with another child among the hills; the other friend, Ch'eng Ying 程嬰, went and told the minister that for 1,000 pieces of gold he would tell him the hiding place of Chao's child; he received the money, and his friend with the other child was killed; the true son was then brought to a safe place by Ying (G. 2073).

594 Ground rent was increased in Lu, doubling the taxation to two-tenths.

590 Formerly sixteen lots or tsiang 井 formed a k'iu 邱, four k'iu a tien 甸 and each tien had to furnish three soldiers; now every k'iu had this duty.

585 簡王 emperor **Kien**, son of Ting, reigned fourteen years.

584 Wu 吳* attacked Ch'u. The duke Ling 靈 of Ch'en 陳 had intercourse with the mother, Hia-ki 夏姬, of an official. This official killed the duke and was torn in five pieces by command of the king of Ts'u, then leader of the States. The king intended to take Hia-ki, but was dissuaded by Wu-ch'en, 巫臣. A minister of Ch'u was also persuaded by Wu-ch'en to leave Hia-ki alone. Wu-ch'en then took her and fled to Tsin. The minister seeing himself cheated, took revenge on the family of Wu-ch'en, who then hated Ch'u and

* The State Wu 吳 was in the present Kiangsu; its capital first Mei-li near Wu-si, then a place near Su-chou.

influenced the duke Ching 景 of Tsin to form an alliance with Wu. Wu-ch'en was sent there as ambassador and taught Wu chariot-fighting for the war with Ch'u.

- 581 Ch'eng Ying (s. 597) attacked the minister T'u and exterminated the whole family; he re-established the Chao family and then committed suicide to report in Hades to Chao Tun.
- 575 Tsin defeated the allies Ch'u and Ch'eng. The people of Ch'u killed their minister (Tsz Fan 子反) as the cause of the trouble.
- 574 Three governors of the family K'io 郕 were killed in Tsin. Another governor was killed in the following year, thereupon the duke Li 厲 was assassinated. The people then placed the duke Tao 悼, fourteen years old, on the throne. He appointed four ministers, among them Chao Wu 趙武 (grandson of Tun, s. 581 and 597).
- 571 靈王 emperor Ling, son of Kien, reigned twenty-seven years. He was born with a moustache. Tsin united the States to fortify a city of Ch'eng for the repression of Cheng, because it had deserted Tsin in favour of Ch'u.
- 569 A tribe of the Jung 戎 asked Tsin for a treaty, which was granted.
- 564 The minister Wei Kiang 魏絳 advised the duke of Tsin to relieve the people of their severe taxation and that those who had accumulated wealth should return it to the people. When this was in force for one year, Ch'u could not prevail in three attacks against Tsin (G. 805).
- 562 Tsin called another meeting of the States, the ninth in eight years. Ch'eng made presents of instruments and female musicians, of which the duke gave one-half to Wei Kiang.
- 551 Confucius (G. 1043) born at Tsou 鄒 in the district Ch'ang Ping 昌平* of Lu. His father was a military officer, Heh 紇, his mother Cheng-tsai 敬在. His father died the same year and was buried at Fang-shan 防山.
- 548 Tsui Tsz 崔子 fell in love with the wife of duke Tang 棠 and married her. The duke Chuang 莊 had intercourse with her and was killed by Tsui. The historian made an entry in his record that Tsui murdered his ruler. For this, Tsui killed the historian and also his two brothers; when the third brother also insisted on the entry, Tsui allowed it to stand.
- 544 景王 emperor King, son of Ling, reigned twenty-five years. The Wu State sent Ki Cha 季札 (G. 287) to Lu to inspect the music of

* Modern district Sz-shui 泗水, near Yenchoufu, Shantung; the name of the village was 闕里 Ch'üeh-li near the town Tsou (s. 85).

- Chou, as the music of the six ages (Yellow emperor, Yao, Shun, Yü, T'ang, Wu) was there performed. In passing Hsü 徐 the ruler there liked Ki's precious sword without venturing to express his wish. Ki observing this gave it as a present. On his return Ki found the ruler of Hsü dead, when he suspended the sword over his grave. Tsz Chan 子產 (G. 1029) became prime minister in Cheng 鄭. He made distinctions in appearance between carriages, etc., of the capital and the country, of high and low, and established mutual responsibility of villagers. He allowed free discussion of politics.
- 540 The duke of Tsin sent Han Süan-tsz 韓宣子 to Lu as ambassador; he inspected there the library at the archives, saw the Book of Changes, the Annals of Lu 春秋 and observed that the rites of Chou were all found in Lu, which convinced him of the virtue of the duke of Chou and the reason of the rule of the dynasty.
- 538 Tsz Chan introduced a new system of taxation (of the ground rent). He heard that he was slandered about it, but answered, what does it matter, when the country is profited by it?
- 536 The criminal law was cast in letters on tripods.
- 532 Confucius, nineteen years old, married a lady named Ch'ien-kuan 亓官 in Sung.
- 531 Confucius' son Peh Yü 伯魚 is born.
- 522 Tsz Chan on his deathbed counselled his successor Tsz T'ai-shu 子太叔 that the virtuous can by kindness subdue the people, but next in order nothing equalled fierceness, for the people fear it like fire, whereas in water many are drowned, *i.e.*, meekness is a danger.
- 519 敬王 emperor King, son of King, reigned forty-four years. After the death of the former emperor, the ministers raised Meng 猛, his second son, on the throne; the first son having died. The youngest son, Ch'ao 朝, then rose in rebellion. Meng died; Ch'ao was set aside, and his third brother, 丐 Kai, raised to the throne; he is emperor King. Ch'ao still occupied the royal city, and the emperor had to live outside of Loh-yang, being called the eastern emperor; Ch'ao being the western.
- 516 Ch'ao and the three ministers that supported him fled to Ch'u.
- 509 Ki-sun I-ju 季孫意如 of Lu put away the crown prince and appointed the brother of the deceased duke Chao 昭 as duke Ting 定. The earl of Ts'ai 蔡 paid a visit to Ch'u; where he was insulted by the minister Tsz Chang 子常. He then formed an alliance with Wu 吳 and T'ang 唐. The allies (G. 654) defeated Ch'u and took its capital Ying 郢. Tsz Chang escaped to Ch'eng, the duke of Ch'u fled

to Sui 隨. The general of Wu, Wu Tsz-sü 伍子胥, was a fugitive from Ch'u (G. 2358), when the former duke P'ing 平 had his father executed. He now had the corpse of P'ing taken out of his coffin and punished with 300 stripes. Shen Pao-sü 申包胥 (G. 1697), general of Ch'u, went to Ts'in and wept aloud without ceasing day and night for seven days, neither food nor drink entering his mouth during the time. Ts'in then granted him an army, with which Pao-sü defeated the army of Wu and retook Ying.

505 Rebellion of Yang Hu in Lu (G. 2382).

501 Confucius became magistrate in Chung-tu 中都.

498 Confucius' attempt to suppress the three leading families in Lu; his policy being to strengthen the ducal house and to weaken the private families.

497 Confucius being minister seven days, had Shao Cheng-mao 少正卯 executed. The State of Lu was reformed. One person used to give his sheep much water to drink before bringing them to the market, another winked at the fornication of his wife, a third was extravagant beyond measure; those that sold cattle or horses adorned them to fetch high prices. All these things were done away with in the course of three months. Male and female also walked separately on the roads, and what had dropped upon the road would not be appropriated; male persons aimed at honesty, female at modesty. The duke of Ts'i, who became alarmed, sent eighty female musicians and thirty teams (four each) of horses as a present to duke Ting. Confucius was no more wanted; he left in 496.

496 Ho Lu 閭閻 of Wu attacked Yüeh*, but was defeated by Kou-t sien 勾踐 and wounded on his great toe, from which he died (G. 654). Nan-tsz 南子, the wife of duke Ling of Wei 衛, had intercourse with her relative Chao, a prince of Sung 宋朝, and intrigued against the crown prince. Confucius left for Ch'en, but returned to Wei.

495 Confucius went to Sung, where a tree was hewn down with the intention to hurt him; he then went to Ch'en.

494 Fu-ch'ai 夫差 (G. 576), king of Wu, defeated Yüen at Fu-tsiao 夫椒 after a battle lost some months before. Kou-t sien 勾踐 (G. 982), king of Yüeh, still held Hui-k'í 會稽 in Chekiang. He sent from there eight beautiful girls and asked for peace, which was granted against the warning of Wu Tsz-sü (s. 509). Kou-t sien was endowed with Hui-k'í.

* The state Yüeh 越 was in Chekiang, its capital Hui (Giles: Kuei)-K'í near Shao-hsing.

489 Confucius went on invitation to Ch'u, but was endangered on the road by troops from Ch'en and Ts'ai and saved by soldiers from Ch'u. The king, however, was dissuaded by his minister Tsz Si 子西 from employing Confucius, who then went again to Wei.

[487 Ts'ao is absorbed by Sung.]

484 Confucius returned to Lu and revised the Classics.

481 A Lin 麟 was taken in the West of Lu. Confucius finished his work on the Annals of Lu or the Spring-Autumn Classic.

479 Death of Confucius at the age of 73.

[478 Ch'u conquers Ch'en.]

475 元王 emperor Yüan, son of King, reigned seven years.

473 Kou-tsien of Yüeh conquered Wu (G. 659). He had prepared for it during the last twenty years since his defeat. The minister Fan Li 范蠡 (M. 127, G. 540) prevented granting the same advantage to Fu-ch'ai, he had allowed to Kou-tsien, so that the defeated monarch committed suicide. The emperor recognised Kou-tsien as earl 伯 of Yüeh. Fan-li resigned his office and went to Ts'i, where he became rich. He left again and stayed at T'ao 陶, S. W. Shantung. His fellow-minister in Yüeh was soon accused of treason, the king sent him a sword to kill himself.

468 貞定王 emperor Cheng Ting, son of Yüan, reigned twenty-eight years. Duke Ai 哀 of Lu wished, with the help of Yüeh, to rid himself of the three Huan 桓 families, but had himself to flee to Yüeh. After being received back by his people, he died, and his son became duke T'ao 悼.

458 In Tsin there were six governors in power, four of them defeated two and divided their possessions. The duke Ch'u 出 of Tsin complained in Ts'i and Lu, whereon the four governors rebelled and the duke fled to Ts'i; in his place duke Ai 哀 was established, but the power remained in the hands of the governors.

[453 The families of Han, Chao, Wei in Tsin extirpate the family of Chi Peh.]

453 Tien-pan 田盤 of Ts'i had all places of magistrates 大夫 filled with his kindred (male-line).

[447 Ch'u conquered Ts'ai. 445 Ch'u conquered Ch'i 杞.]

444 Both Ts'in and Tsin gained advantages over different tribes of the Jung. From this time their inroads into China ceased, except by the I K'u 義渠.

440 考王 emperor K'ao, younger son of Cheng-ting, reigned fifteen years. After the death of Cheng-ting (441) his heir-son ascended the

throne as emperor Ai 哀王; his brother murdered him and took the throne as emperor Sz 思王, but a younger brother murdered him and reigned as emperor K'ao.

437 Duke Yu 幽 of Tsin paid visits at the courts of the three families—Han, Chao and Wei. Very little country was left for himself (comp. 458).

425 威烈王 emperor Wei Lie, son of K'ao, reigned twenty-four years. Duke Muh 穆 of Lu showed high respects to K'ung-kie 孔伋, the grandson of Confucius (子思).

403 The emperor confirmed the three families of Tsin as three Feudal States, thus dividing Tsin into three parts. The head of another family, Chih Peh 智伯, had been killed some time before by Chao Siang-tsz 趙襄子, who had the skull of Chih Peh lacquered and used as an utensil, (pot de chambre) at drinking festivals. The attempts of revenge by a minister of the killed, Yu Jang 豫讓, were unsuccessful, he was executed after the second failure. Wu Ch'i 吳起 of Wei 衛 (G. 2321) entered the service of Lu. His wife was a native of Ts'i; he killed her in order to become general in the war with Ts'i, which he defeated. Expelled by Ts'eng Shen 曾參 for not going into mourning for his mother, he went to Wei 魏, where he fought Ts'in and captured five cities. He slept on the ground without a mat, marched, carrying his provisions like the common soldiers; he even sucked their ulcers.

[403 Some Chinese books date from here the period of the "Warring States," others from 481-255, others from 255-221.]

401 安王 emperor An, son of Wei-li, reigned twenty-six years.

399 The Kuo 虢 mountain slipped and obstructed the Yellow River in Honan.

397 Chieh Lei 俠累, minister of Han, was in enmity with Yen Chung-tsz 嚴仲子. The latter sent 100 pieces of gold, each twenty-four taels in weight, to gain Nie Cheng 聶政; he first declined on account of his mother, but after her death he stabbed Chieh Lei and mutilated himself to prevent recognition and to avoid implication of his sister Yung 嬰, but when the corpse of her brother was exposed on the market, she went and made it known, and then killed herself at his side.

389 Tien-ho 田和 of Ts'i (G. 1915), who had two years before confined his duke Kang 康 on an island in the sea, asked the emperor through marquis Wen of Wei 魏文侯 to be confirmed as duke of Ts'i, which was granted.

- 387 Wu Ch'i (s. 403) fell under suspicion in Wei and fled to Ch'u, where duke Tao 悼 made him chancellor. He soon made Ch'u powerful over all surrounding States.
- 386 T'ien-ho (s. 389) receives his mandate as a feudal prince.
- 381 After the death of king Tao of Ch'u, the royal relations and high officers rose and killed Wu Ch'i.
- 376 The three states of Tsin disposed of duke Tsing 靖 and divided his territory.
- [375 Han absorbs Cheng.]
- 375 烈王 emperor Lie, son of An, reigned seven years.
- 372 Mencius is born at Tsou 鄒 in Lu (G. 1522).
- 370 King Wei 威 of Ts'i paid his respects to the court of the emperor; he was the only one of the feudal lords who performed this duty. He rewarded a governor, whose district was found in excellent order, by advancement and had another boiled, together with those that had recommended him; this frightened all officials so that Ts'i became among the States the best governed.
- 368 顯王 emperor Hien, brother of Lie, reigned forty-eight years. Duke Hien 獻 of Ts'in defeated the army of the three States of Tsin and took the heads of 60,000 men. The emperor congratulated him with a present of gala-robcs.
- 362 Duke Hiao 孝 succeeded his father in Ts'in. He invited statesmen *from abroad* to hand in plans for the strengthening of his State.
- 361 Yang of Wei 衛鞅 (G. 2296) presented financial and military schemes, which pleased the duke (see the Six Chancellors, Appendix C.)
- 354 Wei 魏 attacked Chao, besieged its capital Han-tan 邯鄲 and captured it in 353. Ts'i sent troops to help Chao, and Wei was defeated. It is said of the two rival generals Sun Pin 孫臏 and P'ang Kün 龐涓 that they had been studying together the military art under the famous Taoist Kwei Kuh-tsz 鬼谷子. Kün took service in Wei. As he feared the superior skill of Pin, he invited him, had his feet cut off and his face branded to disable him for ever. When an embassy from Ts'i arrived, Pin had a private interview, and was secretly conveyed to Ts'i, where he was received as guest by the minister T'ien Ki 田忌, who introduced him to king Wei (s. 370). The king appointed him adviser to T'ien Ki, who became general. They gained a great victory over Wei's army.

- 351 Marquis Chao 昭 of Han made Shen Pu-hai 申不害 his minister. He had studied Taoism, especially criminal law 刑名. He improved the administration, the relations to the other States and the army.
- 341 Wei attacked Han; Ts'i came to assist the latter, when Sun Pin (s. 354) gained a great victory over Wei; its general P'ang was killed and the crown prince captured.
- 340 Wei Yang (s. 361) received the title Lord of Shang 商君 after his victory over Wei 魏, when he had captured by treachery the commander Ang 邛.
- 338 After the ascent of king Hui-wen 惠文 to the throne of Ts'in, Wei Yang was denounced as rebellious, he fled, was refused entrance to one of the official hotels on the road, because he had no written permission according to his own strict law. Wei turned him back for his treachery (340). He had no choice but to return to Ts'in, where he was executed; his body being torn by horses into five pieces; all his family was exterminated.
- 336 Mencius visits king Hui 惠 of Wei 魏 at Liang 梁.
- 334 Ch'u destroyed Yüeh.
- 333 Alliance of six States against Ts'in, Su Ts'in 蘇秦 (G. 1775, s. Appendix C. 3) being the chancellor of all, with royal splendor. In less than a year the State of Ts'in had managed to get Ts'i and Wei on his side to attack Chao. Su went to Yen 燕.
- 328 Chang I 張儀, minister of Ts'in (G. 70), defeated Wei and captured fifteen districts.
- 324 Ts'in defeated Wei again and cut off a piece of its territory. Su Ts'in went from Yen to Ts'i and took office to advance the interests of Yen against Ts'i.
- 323 Chang went from Ts'in and became chancellor of Wei 魏.
- 321 An ivory bedstead, worth 1,000 pieces of gold, was offered to the ambassador from Ts'i in Ch'u, but refused.
- 320 慎靚 emperor Shen Tsing, son of Hien, reigned six years.
- 319 King Hui of Wei (s. 336) died, and his son Siang 襄 ascends the throne of Wei. Mencius leaves Wei for Ts'i.
- 318 Five States make a combined attack on Ts'in, but are defeated at the Han Ku 函谷 pass, in Honan. [Yen, duke of Sung, assumes the title king (318-286).]
- 317 Su Ts'in (s. 333) is stabbed to death by a governor of Ts'i. The king Siang following Chang I's advice, attaches himself to Ts'in. Chang I returns to Ts'in.

- 316 Ts'in conquered Shu, *i. e.*, Szechuan. King K'uai of Yen 燕君噲 wishing to imitate Yao, resigned his throne to his minister Tsz Chih 子之.
- 314 赧王 emperor Nan, son of Shen-tsing, reigned fifty-nine years. Ts'i invaded Yen, cut Tsz Chih into small pieces and killed K'uai. Mencius left Ts'i.
- 312 Ch'u had been separated from its friendship with Ts'i by a promise from Ts'in to hand over a district of 600 *li*, which was not kept. In the following war Ch'u was defeated near its capital Tan-yang and 80,000 of its soldiers killed (beheaded). Ch'u lost another battle, was also opposed by Han and Chao, made therefore peace with Ts'in. The new king of Yen, Chao 昭, had a palace built for his adviser Kuo-wei 郭隗 and made Yoh I 樂毅 (M. 930) his minister.
- 311 Chang I persuaded five States to attach themselves to Ts'in, but this federation dissolved with the death of the king Wei of Ts'in.
- 310 Chang I leaves Ts'in again and becomes minister in Wei 衛.
- 308 Ts'in went to war with Han and gained territory, also 60,000 heads in 307. In Chao foreign dress and shooting on horseback 胡服騎射 were recommended and with some difficulty introduced.
- 299 Kin Wu-ling 武靈 of Chao degraded the crown prince and put the son Ho 何 of his favorite Meng Yao 孟姚 in his place. Ts'in made war again on Ch'u and captured eight cities. Then treacherously inviting king Huai 懷 of Ch'u to an interview, he imprisoned him. His faithful officer K'ü P'ing 屈平 (or Yüan 原) wrote his famous elegy 離騷 and drowned himself in the Milo 汨羅 river in Hunan (G. 503).
- 298 Meng Ch'ang-kün 孟嘗君 (G. 1515, see also the six chancellors) escaped through clever help from the prison in Ts'in. Ts'in invaded Ch'u and cut 50,000 heads off, captured also sixteen cities, because a man of Ch'u had boasted of the superiority of his tutelary gods. Meng Ch'ang-kün allied Ts'i with Han and Wei and defeated the Ts'in army at Han-ku (s. 318). The Ho and the Wei rivers were stopped up for a day (by corpses). Ts'in bought peace by the surrender of three cities east of the Ho.
- 295 The king of Chao (s. 299) resigned in favour of his son Ho, who reigned as king Hui Wen 惠文. The degraded crown prince Chang 章 revolted and killed the minister of the king. The royal prince Ch'eng 成 and the officer Li Tui 李兌 raised soldiers and defeated Chang, who fled into the palace of the ex-king, but was

killed there with all his adherents. Ch'eng and Tui being afraid that the ex-king would take revenge on them, enclosed him in his palace, killing everybody that attempted to make his escape, so that the ex-king lived for a time on bird's food and died from starvation after three months.

293 Han and Wei suffered defeat by Ts'in under Po Ch'i 白起 (G. 1653), who cut off 240,000 heads; he also captured the general of Han and five cities (G. 2279).

292 The king of Ch'u, K'ing Siang 頃襄, married a princess of Ts'in, though his father died as a prisoner in Ts'in 296 (s. 299).

289 Death of Mencius.

286 Ts'i annexed the State of Sung.

285 King Min 湣 of Ts'i elated by his success, began war with Ch'u and the three Ts'in, intending besides to push aside the two Chou (East and West) and establish himself as emperor.

284 King Chao 昭 of Yen, on an understanding with Ts'in, Ch'u, Chao and Wei, sent an army under the general Yo I 樂毅 into Ts'i, who entered victorious into its capital; king Min fled and was killed by his minister. Yo I transferred all treasures from Ts'i to Yen and conquered over seventy cities, which were incorporated into Yen. Wang Chuh 王蠋, commander of one of the cities, preferred suicide to surrender; his grave received honours.

283 Min's son went in disguise to K'ü 莒, where he served as a laborer in the family of the historiographer Kiao 杲, whose daughter, attracted by his noble figure, pitied him, provided him secretly with food and clothing and came to intimacy. Wang Sun-kia, 王孫賈, one of the attendants of king Min, returned home, but upbraided by his mother for his disloyalty to his king, he went to the market and called for revenge on the murderer; 400 men immediately joined him, so they killed the regicide and made the disguised laborer king Siang 襄.

280 The king of Ts'in desired to gain a precious stone 璧 (M. 551 and 393) from Chao for fifteen cities, but when the stone was sent, the cities were not given, so that the bearer brought the stone back. This caused ill-feeling and war, in which Po Ch'i of Ts'in (s. 293) defeated Chao and cut 20,000 heads off.

279 Lin Siang-ju 藺相如 (G. 1256), who had been the bearer of the jade-stone, also accompanied his king to a meeting with the king of Ts'in, where a treaty was concluded. Lin was raised in rank above another minister, Lien Po 廉頗 (G. 1254), who intended to disgrace

Lin. Lin avoided Lien in consequence. When reproached for it, he answered, that their enmity was like the fighting of two tigers, whereas the State of Chao required their united strength; he thought it better to give their first consideration to the public affairs and not to private ones; Lien acknowledged his wrong and the two became the best friends 爲刎頸交. Yo I (284) fled, after king Chao's death, to Chao 趙, and Ts'i defeated Yen and recovered its seventy and more cities (G. 1922). King Siang (s. 283) could now make his entrance into the capital of Ts'i, where he raised his sweetheart to the rank of queen. Her father was so displeased with this love-marriage of his daughter without go-between, that he would not see her again all his life long.

The State of Sieh 薛 was annihilated by Ts'i and Wei, because after the duke's death his sons quarreled about succession.

- 278 Ts'in's general Po Ch'i (s. 293) conquered Ying 郢, the capital of Ch'u and burned I-ling, where Ch'u's mausoleums were.
- 273 Han was attacked by Chao and Wei, but rescued by Ts'in, which took a district from Wei.
- 270 Ts'in's attack on Chao was repulsed. Fan Chü 范雎 (G. 533) was made vice-governor in Ts'in.
- 266 King Chao of Ts'in removed his mother from the government and drove out three ministers.
- 263 The crown-prince of Ch'u, who resided as a pledge at Ts'in, together with his tutor Huang Hie 黃歇 (M. 218), escaped and became the king of Ch'u K'ao-lie 考烈; he made his tutor prime minister.
- 262 Ts'in conquered another district from Han.
- 260 A portion of the district did not like Ts'in and joined Chao. Ts'in defeated the army of Chao and closed it into Shang Tang 上黨, so that their provisions were exhausted for forty-six days and they devoured one another. After their commander was killed by an arrow from Ts'in, 40,000 men surrendered and were all butchered by Po Ch'i (s. 293); only 240 young ones were sent home to Chao.
- 258 Ts'in invaded Chao and surrounded its capital. Huang Hieh (s. 263), with an army of Ch'u, came to relieve it. An army of Wei also approached; as the commander stopped on the way, he was killed by prince Wu Chi 無忌 (G. 2320), who took the command over the army of 80,000 men and advanced.
- 257 Po Ch'i, the famous commander of Ts'in, fell in disgrace, was imprisoned and a sword sent to him, with which he made an end of himself. The Ts'in army was then defeated and Han-tan the

capital of Chao relieved. A general of Ts'in with 20,000 men surrendered to Chao. Wu-ki did not dare to return to Wei. I-jen 異人, son of the crown prince of Ts'in, escaped from Chao, where he resided as a pledge. His friend *Lü Pu Wei* 呂不韋 (G. 1455) had prepared the way for him to be made crown prince after his father's ascent to the throne. His wife, a concubine of Lü, gave birth to a son, Tsz Cheng 子政, the future emperor Shih.

256 Ts'in conquered two cities from Han and cut 40,000 heads off. From Chao it took over twenty districts and cut 90,000 heads off. The emperor Nan-wang made an attempt to unite the States against Ts'in, but Ts'in invaded his territory and he had to surrender West Chou. The eastern Chou still continued (s. 285).

255 Sün K'uang 荀況 (opponent of Mencius, G. 807) was made a governor in Ch'u. Ch'u took Lu and transplanted its inhabitants to Kii 莒.

254 Huan Hui 桓惠, king of Han, attended the court of Ts'in.

250 The king Chao Siang of Ts'in died the year before (251); his son, king Hiao Wen 孝文, died after three days, so that I-jen (s. 257) came on the throne as king Chuang Siang 莊襄, and Lü Pu Wei served as his minister. The ruler of East Chou also attempted an alliance of the States against Ts'in. Lü was sent to anticipate their attack. He made an end of Chou, its ruler was removed to a city in Honan. Ts'in gained from Chou seven townships 邑. Chou had lasted 873 years under thirty-five sovereigns.

[249 Lu is annexed by Ch'u.]

The Ts'in 秦 Dynasty, B. C. 249-206.

249 Emperor Chuang Siang 莊襄王 (s. 250).

247 Ts'in sent an army against Wei, but prince Wu-ki (s. 258), leading the troops of five States, defeated and pursued it to the frontier.

246 Emperor Shih 始皇帝, only thirteen years old; his name was Cheng (son of Lü Pu-wei, s. 257 and Appendix C. 6). He reigned twenty-five years over Ts'in and then twelve years as emperor over all China; died fifty years old.

244 Chao sent an army against Yen and took two cities from it. The same general Li Muh 李牧 (G. 1177) succeeded in defeating the Huns after several years' preparation; over 100,000 horsemen were killed,

so that this Tan-yü 單于 tribe did not venture near Chou for over ten years.

- 243 In autumn there appeared locusts and pestilence. Honors 爵 of one degree were granted for 1,000 shih 石 of grain, in order to relieve the famine. This was the beginning of the sale of government honors.
- 241 Five States formed an alliance under Ch'u and attacked Ts'in, but were defeated and put to flight. Ch'u removed its capital farther south into Kiang-nan.
- 238 In summer (4th month) there appeared great frost in Ts'in, so that people died from it. Lao Ai 嫪毐, the favorite of the emperor's mother, rebelled and was defeated in battle, wherein several 100 heads were cut off; he himself was captured and executed with all his relations; the empress-dowager was banished, her two sons killed, twenty-seven remonstrators were executed. Mao Tsiao 茅焦 (G. 1498), a visitor from Ts'i, ventured to remonstrate against the banishment of the dowager and finally persuaded the emperor to recall her. The king K'ao-lie of Ch'u was without a son. An officer of Chao, Li Yüan 李園 (G. 858), had given his sister to Huang Hie 黃歇, the minister of Ch'u, who brought her to the king when pregnant. The king K'ao-lie 考烈 made her queen, and the son she gave birth to, heir-prince, afterwards king Yu 幽. After the death of king K'ao-lie, Li Yüan had Huang Hie assassinated in order to prevent the story from being made known.
- 237 Lü Pu Wei was banished. The imperial relatives advise the emperor to have all foreign officers dismissed. Li Sz 李斯, also a foreigner from Ch'u (G. 1203), presented a petition against it, which stopped the order.
- 235 Lü Pu Wei, afraid of execution, poisoned himself in Shu (Szechuan); he had negotiated with Ch'u to become minister there against Ts'in; this became known.
- 233 Han Fei 韓非 (G. 614) was employed by the king of Han to arrange for Han's submission to Ts'in. Han Fei was a fellow-student of Li Sz (s. 237) under Sun Hing (s. 255) and famous in jurisprudence 刑名法術之學. But he had no influence on the politics in Han, though a relative of the king and for a time in office (s. M. 149). In Ts'in he fell soon under suspicion; when cast into prison, he poisoned himself, Li Sz helping him to the drug.
- 230 Ts'in made an end to the State of Han and carried king An 安 into captivity.

229 Ts'in attacked Chao, where Li Muh (s. 244) was employed to resist them. Ts'in bribed a eunuch to accuse Li Muh of treason. The king appointed in consequence two officers to take his place, and they murdered Li, as he would not submit to the order.

228 Chao was then annexed; the king led into captivity. The emperor entered Han-tan 邯鄲 and killed all that had been opposed to his mother's family. Prince Kia 嘉 of Chao established himself as king at Tai 代 in Shansi; he united his soldiers with those of Yen at Shang-ku 上谷. After the death of king Yu (s. 238) of Ch'u, his brother Hêh 郝 came to the throne, but after three months he was murdered by a step-brother, who took the throne.

227 Tan 丹 (G. 1866), crown prince of Yen, sent a man of Wei 衛 to murder the emperor, but he failed (s. G. 399). Ts'in defeated the troops at Shang-ku (s. 228) and captured the capital of Yen. The king fled and sent the head of his son Tan to the emperor.

225 Wang Pan 王貲, son of the famous general Wang Tsien 王翳 (G. 2151), marched against Wei 魏; he led the waters of the Yellow river into the city of Wei. The king Kia 假 surrendered, but was executed.

The emperor had asked Li Sin 李信 how many soldiers were required to conquer Ch'u, and received the answer 200,000. He then asked Wang Tsien, who said, not less than 600,000 men. The emperor answered, You are now old and may be excused; he sent Sin with 200,000, who suffered a thorough defeat. The emperor then went in person to Wang Tsien and gave him 600,000 men.

224 Wang Tsien defeated the army of Ch'u and killed its commander.

223 Wang Tsien conquered the whole State of Ch'u and led king Fu-ch'u 負芻 into captivity.

222 Wang Pan (s. 225) annihilated Yen and Tai and captured their kings. His father, the old Wang Tsien, pacified Kiang-nan, then he settled himself in Hui-k'i 會稽 and governed the prefecture Soochow.

221 Wang Pàn compelled K'ien 建, the king of Ts'i, to surrender; this made an end of Ts'i. K'ien was confined to a place in Honan, where he died from hunger. The emperor was now the only ruler over all China, and considering himself to have united the virtues of the three sovereigns and five emperors of antiquity, he united their titles into the one of Huang Ti 皇帝. He abolished the posthumous titles

謹法 for when determined by the deeds 行 of the deceased, the son would judge his father, the minister his sovereign. He therefore called himself the First, his successor should be the Second 二世, then the Third to the ten-thousandth without an end. He began the year with the 10th month, divided the empire into thirty-six provinces, collected all weapons into the capital and had them cast into bells, had twelve golden images made, each of 1,000 shih weight (shih=picul); he made measure and weight unique and transplanted 120,000 families of braves to the capital.

- 219 The emperor travelled eastward, erected a stone-monument praising his merits, on the Tsou Yi 鄒嶧 mountain (in Shantung), offered sacrifices 圭 on the T'ai 泰 mount, where he erected a stone, also on a hill, Liang-fu 梁父, below. He then ascended the Lang-yeh mountain 琅邪 (also in Shantung) and erected a memorial stone. He sent the adept 方士 Sü Shih 徐市 with several 1,000 boys and girls on the sea in search of the three Fairy islands. On his way back he fasted and prayed to recover the nine tripods, which king Chao 昭 of Ts'in had taken from Chou, but lost in the waters of Si 泗; 1,000 men were drowned in the attempt without result. He crossed the Huai 淮,* sailed on the Kiang 江 to Hunan and returned.
- 218 On another journey to the East, Chang Liang 張良 (G. 88, M. 26) of Han made an attempt to assassinate the emperor, but killed by mistake his companion in the cart. He escaped, though search was made for ten days. The emperor raised another monument.
- [217 Shih-li-fang, a Buddhist priest, came to China.]
- 215 The emperor asked the oracle of Tsz Kao 子高, a legendary personage (M. 641) and received the reply, that Hu 胡 would destroy Ts'in (G. 816). The emperor understood this of the Huns and sent the general Meng T'ien 蒙恬 (G. 1526) with 300,000 men against them.
- 214 Meng T'ien conquered the country on the bend of the Ho; the *great wall* was built over 10,000 *li* in length and the army kept over ten years at work.
- 213 At Li Sz's 李斯 (G. 1203) advice the ancient *books* were *burned*, except those on medicine, divination and agriculture. Those who wished to study the laws, had to engage officials as teachers.

*The river 淮 Huai rises in the south of Honan in the T'ung-po mountains (border of Hupeh); flowing east the main stream joined the old Yellow River bed near Tsing-ho 清河 (department 淮安 Huai-ngan) in Kiangsi, cp. Legge Shu-king, p. 104, 107, 140. Chavannes, Mémoires Historiques de Sema-tsien, p. 115.

Those who conversed about the Sheking and Shuking, were publicly executed. Those who preferred antiquity to their own time, were exterminated with their families.

- 212 The Afang palace was built. The court astrologer Lu-sheng 盧生 (who had also asked the oracle of Tsz Kao for him in 215) advised the emperor to walk in disguise, and never let people know in what room he lived, to avoid evil spirits; he might then be able to procure the elixir of immortality; the emperor followed him. 460 scholars were buried alive; the crown prince Fu Su 扶蘇 (G. 601), who remonstrated, was banished to the army in the north.
- 211 A meteorite 隕石 had fallen in Shantung. Somebody cut the characters on it, "Death of emperor Shih and division of the land;" as the individual could not be discovered, everybody living near the place was killed and the stone burnt.
- 210 The emperor travelled again; he sacrificed to Shun in Hu-kuang, to Yü in Hui-ki (s. 222) and raised a monument in praise of his virtue. In the 7th month he arrived in Sha Chiu 沙邱 in Chihli and died. Li Sz (s. 213) and the eunuch Chao Kao 趙高 (G. 165) sent a forged dispatch, that the young prince Hu Hai 胡亥 (G. 816) should be heir and the older Fu Su be doomed to death. Fu Su committed suicide and the general Meng Tien, who had advised the emperor otherwise, then took poison.
- 209 二世皇帝 Erh-shih Huang-ti, younger son of the former, reigned three years and died twenty-four years old. He had twelve brothers and ten sisters killed. As a mausoleum for his father he built a huge underground palace, ornamented with immense treasures of gold and jewels. Several hundreds of beautiful concubines were entombed alive with the corpse.*

Two officers rebelled, Ch'en Sheng 陳勝 (G. 242), who called himself king of Ch'u 楚 and Wu Kuang 吳廣, styled king of Kia 假. Ch'u's general, Wu Chen 武臣, conquered Chao 趙 and made himself king there. Liu Pang 劉邦 rose and called himself duke of P'ei 沛. Another man of Ch'u, Hiang Liang 項梁 (G. 694), collected soldiers in Wu (present Soochow). T'ien Tan of Ts'i 齊 田儋 (G. 1921) established himself as king of Ts'i 齊. The king of Chao sent his general Han Kwang 韓廣 to conquer Yen 燕, who succeeded, but remained there as king of Yen. General Chou Shih 周市 of Ch'u made Kiu 咎 (a prince of Wei 魏), king of Wei and

*About the sacrifice of human beings at burials, see De Groot, *The Religious Systems of China*, Vol. II, Book I, Part III, Chapter IX.

became his minister. But the State of Wei 衛, that had still an existence, was now exterminated. About the governor of Kuang-tung s. G. 923.

208 The emperor sent two officers to assist the general Chang Han 章邯 (s. G. 53) against Ch'u. They were victorious and the king of Ch'u was murdered by his charioteer, who was killed in turn by a friend of the king, but Ch'u submitted again to Ts'in. Hiang Liang retook it and made prince Sin 心 king. The emperor, influenced by the eunuch Chao Kao (s. 210), had his two ministers imprisoned; one K'u Tsi 去疾 committed suicide, and Li Sz (s. 213) was cut in two at the hip; his family, comprising three generations, was exterminated. Hiang Liang was killed in battle.

207 His nephew Hiang Chi 項籍 (or Hiang Yü 項羽, G. 690) murdered his superior, Sung I 宋義 (G. 1834) and defeated the army of Ts'in. Chang Han with his whole army surrendered to Hiang Yü. The eunuch Chao Kao murdered the emperor and placed his nephew Tsz Ying 子嬰 (G. 2113) on the throne. The new emperor had Kao and his family of three generations executed. Of Kao the story is told, that he once declared a deer to be a horse and the courtiers did not dare to contradict it.

The duke of P'ei, Liu Pang, marched to the capital and defeated the army of Ts'in, whereupon Tsz Ying surrendered himself and the imperial insignia. He had only been emperor for forty-six days. The Ts'in dynasty had lasted for forty-three years.

Tsz Ying was murdered a few days after his resignation by Hiang Chi (s. 207).

*The Han 漢 Dynasty, B. C. 206-A. D. 25,
also styled the Former 前 or Western 西 Han.*

206 B. C. 沛公. The duke of P'ei 劉邦, Liu Pang (G. 1334), entered Hien-yang 咸陽 and abolished the laws of the Ts'in. His dynastic title was Kao Ti 高帝 or Kao Tsu 高祖. His rival, Hiang Chi 項籍 or Hiang Yü (G. 690),* enticed over 200,000 soldiers of the Ts'in to submit to him and had them massacred soon after. Duke P'ei sent troops to hold the Han-chü pass; Hiang Chi scattered them; the inhabitants of Hien-yang were then slaugh-

*The Pa-wang (tyrant) of Western Ch'u.

tered, the emperor Tsz-ying was killed, the grave of Shih Hwang T'i opened and plundered; he then went to the East with great spoil. How Chi Sin 紀信 saved Liu Pang s. G. 290. Liu Pang escaped to Szechuan.

About T'ien Jung 田榮 of Ts'i 齊 s. G. 1919.

204 A famine prevailed inside of the Kwan pass, so that men devoured one another.

202 First taxation per head, 120 cash, from fifteen to fifty-six years of age. Hiang Chi, who had proclaimed king Huai of Ch'u as emperor under the title of I-ti, caused him to be assassinated. General Chang An attacked Hiang Chi, but the latter defeated him and also Liu Pang. Peace was made, but Liu Pang violated it and vanquished Hia Chi completely at Kai-hia. Hiang Chi escaped and committed suicide. Liu Pang 劉邦 was proclaimed emperor.

201 Chang Liang 張良 (s. M. 26) retired to an ascetic living. Han Sin 韓信 (G. 617 and 1005), who had been made king of Ch'u, was suspected of rebellion, captured and degraded to the rank of an earl of Huai Yin 淮陰侯. He then joined the Huns, who ravaged the northern frontier.

200 The emperor led an army in person, gained a victory over the confederates and nearly captured them. The Huns then plundered Tai in Shansi (G. 1505).

198 The remnants of the Han Sin rebels were beaten at Tung-yüan 東垣 in Chihli.

197 Ch'en Hi 陳稀 (G. 702), a commander, rebelled at Tai. The emperor led an army in person and defeated him.

196 The empress had Han Sin executed and his three relations destroyed 夷三族 (the kindred of his father, mother and wife). The same was done to Pang Yüeh 彭越, whose services had been rewarded by the appointment to be king of Liang 梁王. He was beheaded for not sending sufficient help against Ch'en Hi. Chao T'o 趙佗 of Canton recognised the Han (G. 187). Yin-pu 英布, king of Huai-nan, also rebelled; defeated by the emperor he fled, but was delivered over and executed.

195 Ch'en Hi (s. 197) was executed and the Tai country settled again. The faithful prime minister Siao Ho 蕭何 (G. 702) was degraded and imprisoned for a few days, then restored. The king of Yen 燕 also planned a rebellion, when the emperor died (cp. G. 539).

- 194 **Hiao Hui Ti 孝惠帝** (G. 1372), son of Kao-tsu, eleven years old. His mother, empress Lü 呂后 (G. 1442, M. 458), murdered Hui's step-brother Ju-yi 如意 and the mother of the same, lady Ts'i.*
- 193 Earthquake in Shensi. Drought.
- 190 Flowers and fruit in winter, also thunder.
- 189 Drought in summer.
- 188 The emperor died. The empress Lü placed a substituted child on the throne, after she had murdered the real mother.
- 187 The **Empress Lü** begins her own reign, which continued for eight years to her death in her sixty-second year of age.
- 186 Earthquake in Shensi and mountain-slip. Issue of coins, 八銖 Pa-shu cash, one-tenth of an ounce; later on only one-twentieth.
- 185 Floods in Honan.
- 184 The empress invests her sister Sü 嬃 as 'marquis' of Lin-kwang 臨光. (This is the only female feudal prince in Chinese history.) The baby-emperor was murdered and another put in his place, king of Heng Shan 恒山王.
- 183 T'o 佗, the king of South Yüeh 南越王, rose in rebellion.
- 182 Issue of five-fen cash 五分錢.
- 181 A general was sent against South Yüeh 南越.
- 180 Inundation of the Yangtse and Han. Death of the empress. The great ministers receive the king of Tai (5th son of Kao-tsu) on the throne. The young emperor, enthroned by Lü, was put to death (G. 422).
- 179 **太宗孝文皇帝** emperor Wen (G. 1298) reigned twenty-three years and died in his forty-sixth year of age. He abolished the law of family complication, ordered the support of the poor and the rearing of the old. Earthquakes in Ts'i and Ch'u. Mountain slip. Great flood.
- 178 The libel-law was abolished. Death of Ch'en P'ing 陳平 (G. 240), author of Six Wonderful Plans.
- 177 The Huns were repulsed and fled. The emperor's brother, king of Ts'i-pei 濟北, rebelled; defeated by a general, he committed suicide.
- 175 Earthquake. Coinage of 四銖 cash. Removal of the prohibition of free coinage.

* She cut her hands and feet off, put her eyes out and destroyed the organs of hearing and of speech and then casting the still living victim of her rage upon a dunghill, she bade the emperor, her son, go to inspect what she termed the "human sow" (M. 458).

- 174 The king of Huai-nan (another brother) rebelled; banished to Shuh he died on the road.
- 169 The Huns plundered Shensi.
- 168 The Yellow river broke through its embankments and flooded Honan and Shantung.
- 167 The punishment of mutilation was abolished through the pleading of a young lady Ti-ying 緹縈 (G. 512) for her father.
- 166 The plundering Huns were beaten back.
- 162 Peace with the Huns. Search for ancient books (G. 599).
- 158 The Huns invaded Shensi and Shansi. The general Chou Ya-fu 周亞夫 (s. M. 74, G. 426) went against them. The emperor who visited the camp had to wait for the orders of the general before he was admitted by the guard. The Huns were driven back. Great drought. Locusts. About Chai Kung 翟公, who lived during this reign, and his mean friends s. G. 15, and about the honest official Chang Shih-chih s. G. 105. The famous scholar and author Kia I (s. G. 321).
- 157 The emperor died. Praise of his economy for the good of the people. He had commanded that mourning for him should last only three days.
- 156 孝景皇帝 Emperor Hiao King (G. 1284). The law of flogging was mitigated. The size of the bamboo used was determined five feet in length, one inch thick at the handle and half-an-inch at the end, and it had to be planed smooth.
- 154 Rebellion of seven kings (imperial princes), who demanded the execution of the prime-minister Ch'ao Ts'o 趙錯 (G. 204), who was sacrificed to them. As the rebels were not yet satisfied, the general Chou Ya-fu (s. 158, G. 426), marched against them; the kings were defeated and perished; three by the executioner, four by their own hands.
- 152 An imperial princess was given in marriage to the chief of the Huns, Shen Yü 單于.
- 151 Degradation of the empress Po 薄氏.
- 150 Degradation of the heir-prince Yung 榮. The sister of the emperor, Piao 嫖, had a share in the intrigues. Lady Wang 王氏 was made empress and her son crown prince. He was married to his niece, the daughter of his father's sister. The dethroned empress had objected to a marriage between this lady and her own son, the former crown prince.
- 149 Earthquake. Hailstones fell twenty inches in size.

- 147 Earthquake. Drought. The distillation of spirits was prohibited. Locusts. The premier Chou Ya-fu resigns (s. 158), because the emperor ennobled persons illegally.
- [145 Sz Ma-ch'ien 司馬遷 born, author of the 史記 Historical Records.]
- 144 The Huns invaded Shansi and Shensi.
- 143 Earthquakes for twenty-two days. The emperor invited the ex-minister Chou and had a large piece of meat without chopsticks placed before him; Chou asked for them, but was reprimanded by the emperor. Chou's son bought 500 breast-plates and shields, which he concealed in the ground. When the father was officially made responsible for it, he refused food for five days and died from the rupture of a bloodvessel.
- 142 Three shocks of the earth occurred in one day. Drought in autumn.
- 140 世宗孝武皇帝 emperor Wu (G. 1276), son of King, sixteen years old, reigned fifty-four years. About his consort A-chiao 阿嬌 s. G. 1, and about his intimate friend whom the emperor could not save from death s. G. 630. A tribute of dwarfs s. G. 2363.
- 139 The great empress dowager favored Taoism against Confucianism (s. 150). She died in 136.
- 138 Inundation of the Yellow river in Ping-yüan district, Shantung. Famine caused cannibalism.
- 136 Professors of the Five Classics were appointed 置五經博士.
- 134 The emperor invited every district to recommend one filial and honest man, 孝廉. The best scholars he inspected in person.
- 133 He sent magicians 方士 in search of the Genii islands. The chief of the Huns, Shen Yü (s. 152), was enticed into an ambush, but escaped; the general Wang Hui 王恢 was made responsible for this failure and died in prison by his own hand (G. 608).
- 130 A storm blew that uprooted trees. The empress was degraded for disliking the emperor's superstition. Plague of caterpillars.
- 129 First registration of mercantile cars 算商車. The Huns plundered Chihli; war-chariots beat them back. Great drought in summer and locusts.
- 128 The Huns returned into Chihli. The general Li Kwang 李廣 fought against them with success (s. M. 349); they called him the Flying General 飛將軍.
- 127 The Huns plundered another region, were beaten by general Wei Tsing 衛青, who took a portion of their country south of the Yellow river, in the present Shensi, where he established a prefecture and settled people.

124 The Huns plundered the new prefecture, but were defeated by Wei Tsing, who was made generalissimo.

123 Another defeat of the Huns, over 10,000 men were killed. One of the six Chinese generals, Chao Sin 趙信, however, suffered a defeat and surrendered to the Huns.

The people were invited to buy honors, also pardon for guilt. Over 200,000 pounds of gold were distributed as rewards among the soldiers, for heads they had cut off and brought in. Of Han soldiers and horses over 100,000 had died.

122 The kings of Huai-nan 淮南 (G. 1269) and Heng-shan 恒山 planned rebellion; failing they committed suicide. Chang K'ien 張騫 reported to the emperor about his mission to the West (s. G. 29). He brought to China the walnut, grape (teaching the art of making wine), the knotty bamboo, and hemp.

121 The general Ho Ch'ü-ping 霍去病 (G. 645) defeated the Huns. The chief of one tribe submitted, with five States depending on him, to a settled living. Ho brought back a golden image (of Buddha?) worshipped by the chief.

120 Great floods in Shantung. The poor people were removed to the west of the barrier. A basin of forty *li* circumference was formed in Shensi to practice naval fighting (M. 331).

119 The two famous generals (s. years 127 and 121) defeated the Huns and took 19,000 heads. A court-magician gave a silk book to a cow to swallow to deceive the emperor; but he, recognising the handwriting, had the forger executed.

118 Taxation on property, five per cent. on everything without exception; self-valuation, false estimates were punished with confiscation of the whole property, informers receiving one-half. Many were ruined by false accusations. Chi An 汲黯 (G. 286) put an end to illicit coinage at K'ai-fêng fu.

115 Great flood, many people starved. Prohibition of free coinage (after sixty-one years, s. year 175).

114 Famine east of the barrier, leading to cannibalism.

113 Two magicians are highly honored.

The ambassador to South Yüeh 南越 (Canton, etc.) was there killed by the minister, who also killed his king and placed another on the throne.

112 South Yüeh was destroyed by an imperial army. 106 nobles were degraded because their contributions of gold were found inadequate. The magician Luan-ta 樂大 practised more tricks to deceive the

- emperor, who had him executed by cutting him in two, through the loins.
- 111 South Yüeh was pacified and divided into nine prefectures. A magician succeeded in convincing the emperor of some traces of genii; many monasteries and temples were built in consequence, the emperor writing himself the rules of canonisation.
- 110 The emperor marched with 180,000 soldiers against the Huns; he sent an officer to the chief Shan-yü (s. year 152) who retained him, the emperor withdrawing his troops sacrificed to the tomb of the Yellow emperor. He then went to sea in search of Genii, traversing 18,000 *li*.
- 109 He remained for several days at Tung-lai (in Shantung) without seeing anything. The Yellow river had broken its embankment in Chihli and was over twenty years without repairs. The emperor now sent some myriads of men and went himself, submersed a white horse and precious stones, also stimulating the men in their work. He built more temples and expected to see spirit-men. Drought.
- 108 Thunder in the twelfth month, rain, and hail of the size of horse heads. Expedition under the general Chao Po-nu 趙破奴 against Lou-lan 樓蘭 (west of Hami), whose king was captured, and against Choe Sz 車師 (Turfan) which was destroyed 破. War against Korea.
- 107 The Korean king was killed, his capital taken, the country divided into four districts and governed by Chinese.
- 104 Locusts spread from the east of the barrier. The general Li Kwang-li 李廣利 was sent against Khokand 大宛 (G. 1161).
- 102 The people of Khokand killed their king and surrendered. The conqueror got several tens of fine horses. Chao Ch'ung-kuo 趙充國 (G. 150) with only 100 men rescued Li from the surrounding Huns, in the year ninety-nine.
- 100 Su Wu 蘇武 (G. 1792) having been sent on a mission to the Huns, was kept prisoner for nineteen years, but remained faithful to China.
- 99 The general Li Ling 李陵 (G. 1171) surrendered to the Huns; his family was executed for it.
- 97 The historian Sz Ma-ch'ien 司馬遷 (G. 1750) who tried to intercede, was imprisoned and castrated.
- Law, that sentence of death should be redeemable with money.
- 91 A hurricane visited the country, blowing away houses and rooting up trees. The crown prince Kù 據 was accused of practising witchcraft 巫蠱, so that the emperor was haunted by wooden men

- in his dreams. He killed the accuser and fled, but was caught and died with his mother, the empress Wei 衛, by their own hands.
- 90 The emperor getting to understand the affair of the crown prince (G. 983) had the family of the accuser exterminated.
- 89 The magician's intercourse with spiritual beings interdicted, their temples destroyed.
- 88 Earthquake. Chin Mi-ti 金日磾 (G. 382) detects a conspiracy.
- 87 Death of the emperor. He appointed three guardians for his ten years old son and successor, among them a tartar (M. 267).
- 86 孝昭皇帝 emperor Chao (G. 592, 1297), reigned thirteen years until his twenty-second year. His mother had to commit suicide by command of the emperor, to prevent her from repeating empress Lü's atrocities. Heavy rain from the seventh to the tenth month.
- The emperor's brother Tan 旦, king of Yen 燕, planned rebellion; he himself was forgiven, but his faction was executed. The mother of Tsüen Po-yi 雋不疑 taught her son, a city magistrate, to be strict in his duties without harshness. The emperor sent inspectors into the provinces to give promotion to excellent persons and to inquire into the grievances of the people.
- 85 He sent officials out to advance seed and food to the poor. Then he commanded not to collect it back; he also remitted the ground rent to them for the year.
- 84 Offerings to the phoenix 祠鳳皇 at Kiang-nan.
- 81 Su Wu (s. 100) returned from the Huns and was made chancellor of the relations with dependent States 典屬國, *i. e.*, minister of foreign affairs.
- 80 The emperor's sister Kai 蓋 conspired with the king of Yen 燕 (s. 86) and several high officials, to kill the minister and dethrone the emperor. They were discovered and executed.
- 77 The ambassador to Lou-lan 樓蘭 (now Pidshan) assassinated the king there and placed the younger brother of the same on the throne (s. M. 142). He was ennobled for this deed by the emperor.
- 76 Great drought.
- 74 Death of the emperor. The Generalissimo Ho Kuang 霍光 (G. 653) on the request of the empress, placed the king of Ch'ang Yi 昌邑 a grandson of Wu Ti, on the throne, as the deceased left no son. His indulgence in pleasure was such that Ho and all the officials petitioned the empress-dowager to put him aside (G. 1028). The grandson of Wu's unfortunate crown prince Kū (s. 91) was then advanced. He made lady Hū 許 empress.

73 中宗孝宣皇帝 emperor Sūan reigned twenty-five years and died forty-two years old (G. 1310).

Earthquake. Ground rent and taxes were remitted.

71 Hien 顯, the wife of Ho-kuang (s. 74), bribed the female physician to poison the sick empress, which she did by mixing aconite in the medicine. The empress had been of low origin, the daughter of the jailor who saved the prince's life (s. Mcg., p. 103).

70 Hien accomplished her plan to have her daughter made empress. Earthquake. Mountains burst in two prefectures. The ancestral temple was destroyed; the emperor put on mourning and stayed away from the audience hall. Lectures on the Classics are commenced and excellent scholars promoted.

68 Ho-kuang (s. 74) died.

67 The emperor made his son Shih 奭 crown prince. Hien (s. 71) became so angry about it that she could not eat, as she wanted her own son Yü 禹 on the throne. Several attempts to poison the crown prince failed. Earthquake. The emperor asked for honest statements; he decreased the garrison of the capital, closed the imperial palaces in the prefectural cities and had money advanced to the poor (comp. 48).

66 Hailstones kill men. Lady Ho (s. 71) planned rebellion, but was executed with all her family. The empress, her daughter, was degraded.

65 So-choe 莎車 in Turkestan revolted and was destroyed by imperial troops sent against it.

64 High officials are ordered to examine the prisons. Rent was remitted in favor of the sick.

The Huns caused trouble.

61 The Tibetans, Kiang 羌 of Sienling 先零, rebelled. The general Chao Ch'ung-kuo 趙充國 (s. G. 150) was, seventy years old, sent there and operated successfully. He left military settlers 屯田.

60 When Chao collected his army to leave their country, the Tibetans killed their chief Yang Yü 楊玉 and 4,000 men came over to him; he made them settle at Kin city 金城.

A firm and upright official, Kai Kuan-jao 蓋寬饒, offended the emperor several times, so that in anger he had him cast in prison, when Kuan drew his knife and cut his throat under the portal; everybody pitied him.

Cheng Kih 鄭吉 organised the dominion in the west from Turfan, Choe Sz 車師, as his centre for governing thirty-six States.

54 The first granaries were built. A feud arose between the two chiefs of the Huns; they separated into two States.

53 The two Hun chiefs sent their sons to the court.

51 The portraits of eleven meritorious statesmen were placed in the Unicorn-hall (built by Siao Ho 蕭何 (s. M. 578) to store away prohibited books).

Confucianists were appointed to deliver discourses on the five Classics.

48 孝元皇帝 emperor Huan (G. 1350) reigned sixteen years to his forty-third year of age. His rescue from a bear s. G. 566. He allowed that the produce of the imperial domains 公田 and parks 苑 should be given to the poor and the revenue in kind to those in need for seed and food. Great plague in the sixth month (cholera?); he diminished his food, music, park horses, etc., to relieve the suffering. In the ninth month there were great floods east of the barrier and famine. He had closed the imperial (traveling) palaces of rare use, diminished the grain for feeding horses and the meat for feeding beasts. Death of Chang Ch'ang 張敞, a famous governor (s. G. 21, and about Chu Yün, G. 484).

47 Three great officers, including Liu Hsiang 劉向 (s. G. 1300), were imprisoned through the jealousy of two eunuchs; when set free they were degraded. A short time afterwards they came in favor again, but two of them were soon re-imprisoned, and the third committed suicide, when the eunuch Shih Hien 石顯, his enemy, received a place in the high secretariat as 中書令.

Famine east of the barrier. Earthquake in Shensi, and again during the seventh month.

46 Abandonment of Hainan (Chu-ai 珠崖 prefecture).

44 The chief of the Huns killed a Chinese ambassador and fled west to K'ang Kū 康居 or Sogdiana.

43 The emperor desired that the honest, the generous, the humble and the practical among the scholars should be advanced (comp. G. 349). Great famine. The eunuch Shih-hien (s. year 47) intrigued against two high ministers. His efforts were successful in the year 40, so that one committed suicide and the other died from apoplexy.

42 Revolt of the Tangutes (羌 kiang) of Lung-si 隴西 in Shensi. The general Feng Fung-shih 馮奉世 defeated them and had several thousand beheaded, so that all the rest fled beyond the boundary.

41 Earthquake. The indirect taxes were re-established, 復鹽鐵官. 1000 students were attached to the professors (s. year 51).

- 40 The ancestral temples in the prefectural cities were abolished. In building a mausoleum, no town was laid out to move people there.
- 39 Great flood in Honan, the Yellow river breaking through its embankments.
- 37 King Fang 京房 (G. 398) was executed, because denounced by the chief eunuch (s. year 47), whom he had offended. Another officer was imprisoned by the same.
- 36 The governor of Turkestan, Chen Tang, defeated the Huns and beheaded their chief in Sogdiana (s. year 44). The head was sent to the capital and exposed at the city gate for ten days.
- 35 Earthquake in Shensi, mountain slip and stopping up of rivers.
- 33 The Hu-han-hsie Huns 呼韓邪 tender their submission; their chief was then married to an imperial palace lady, Chao Kün 昭君 (G. 2148).
- 32 孝成皇帝 emperor Ch'eng (G. 1271) reigned twenty-six years to his forty-fifth year. The eunuch Shih Hien was dismissed and died on his way home. Several near relations of the emperor's mother, lady Wang 王, received highest honors. The censor Yang Hsien remonstrated and resigned, but his resignation was not accepted.
- 30 Great rain for over forty days. Rumours being spread that a great flood would come, the people got into great confusion. Earthquake. Mountain-slip in Szechuan.
- 29 The Yellow river broke through in Shantung (Tung-chang prefecture), flooding four prefectures, thirty-two districts.
- 28 Wang Yin-shih 王延世 had bamboo baskets made, forty feet long and nine feet in circumference; filled with small stones and being carried between two ships, they were let down; the breach was stopped in thirty-six days.
- 26 Earthquake in Szechuan. Mountain-slip, so that the Yangtse was blocked up and its water driven backward.
- Liu Hiang 劉向 was commissioned to revise the books collected from all sources (M. 404).
- 25 A chief of the Huns comes to the court. An ambassador from Kashmir, 屬賓 Tsi-pin, arrived with presents.
- 24 The emperor pleased with Hin 歆 (G. 1304), the son of Liu Hiang (s. 26), wished to make him a high official, but was prevented by Wang Fung 王鳳 (s. year 32).
- 23 Liu Hiang remonstrated about the imperial favour spent on the relations of the empress-dowager, but without success. Flood east of the barrier in autumn.

- 20 The emperor walked in disguise in the streets and open country, had cock-fighting and horse-racing.
- 18 Great drought. The lady Pan 班, of the rank of a Tsieh-yü 婕妤, refused to sit in the same carriage with the emperor (M. 538). The emperor then favored a dancing girl, Chao Fei-yen 趙飛燕, and her sister (M. 41). They slandered the empress and lady Pan, so that the empress was disgraced; though lady Pan was pardoned, she begged to become a lady in waiting on the empress-dowager.
- 17 The Yellow river overflowed its banks.
- 16 The father of lady Chao was ennobled and she herself made empress. A censor, who remonstrated, was imprisoned and then placed in a low office. The brother's son of the empress-dowager, Wang Mang 王莽, was ennobled (G. 2203). Liu Hsiang wrote his "Account of Famous Women" 列女傳, "New Preface" 新序, and "Stories" 說苑.
- 13 Great drought in the summer.
- 10 Slip of the Min mountain 岷 in Szechuan, obstructing the Min river 岷江; the bed was dry for three days.
- 8 K'ung Kie 孔吉, descendant of Confucius in the thirteenth generation, was ennobled as prince 侯.

The empress, lady Hsi 許氏, committed suicide; a minister, who wanted her as a concubine, had been imprisoned.

Mang (s. year 16), twenty-eight years of age, courted popularity by associating with the worthy and distributing money among scholars. In his family he lived economically, so that his wife received visitors in a short dress. 3,000 pupils were added to the imperial college on the remark of Liu Hsiang, that Confucius as a private person maintained so many; but the number decreased in the following year.

- 7 The emperor died. His adopted son succeeded. He called Liu Hin (s. year 24) to continue the work of his father on the Classics.

Earthquake extending over more than thirty places from the capital to the north.

Experts were invited to regulate the Yellow river. Kia-jiang 賈讓 said: to lead the water into the sea, is the superior plan; to divide its force by canals, is a middling device; to embank it, is the inferior method.

- 6 孝哀皇帝 emperor Ai reigned six years to his twenty-fifth year of age (G. 1303).

- 3 Great drought in the first month. The emperor presented his favorite Tung-hien 董賢 with weapons from the arsenal. The chief of the Huns petitioned to be received at court, which was granted on the recommendation of Yang-hsiung 楊雄 (G. 2379).
- 2 Tung-hien (s. year 3) was ennobled lord over 2,000 families. The minister Wang Kia 王嘉, who remonstrated, was imprisoned and executed. Tung-hien was then made generalissimo. The emperor even intended to yield the throne to him in imitation of Yao and Shun, which was prevented by the objection of another high minister.
- B. C. 1 Death of the emperor. Tung-hien was degraded and killed himself. Wang-mang (s. year 16) had the latter's coffin conveyed into prison, examined and afterwards buried; his property (4,300 millions) was confiscated.
- A. D. 1 孝平皇帝 emperor P'ing (G. 1319). He was the son of the prince (king) of Chung-shan 中山 (in Chihli), who was the son of emperor Yüan 元 (s. year 48) by a palace lady. He reigned five years to the fourteenth year of his age. Mang (s. year 16) acted as the guardian 太傅. 28,000 families were added to his possessions, so that his power equalled a ruler's (of antiquity). He ennobled a descendant of the duke K'ing of Lu and the head of the sixteenth generation of Confucius.
- 2 A rhinoceros was presented from the Huang-chih 黃支 State in the south-sea, 30,000 *li* from the capital in Honan. Another statement is, that this was a farce to deceive the people as if the government had the admiration of far distant nations (Mcg., 108). Great drought and locusts.
- 3 Mang's daughter was made empress. Mang killed his own son Yü 宇 and exterminated the royal family of Chung-shan, including the emperor's mother, Wei-ki 衛姬, and adherents, several 100 persons.
- 4 Building of an assembly hall, an academy and an observatory. The formation of musical standards was undertaken. All scholars in the empire being well versed in the Classics were called out, as also those of remarkable ability.
- 5 To Mang was granted nine special favors. He murdered the emperor (by poisoning). The dowager appointed a great-great-grandson of Suan (s. years 73-48) and Mang as the regent. (G. 1373).

- 6 孺子嬰 Ju Tse Ying, two years old, reigned three years. The governor of An-chung 安衆 (in Honan) raised troops against Mang, but suffered death in this attempt.
- 7 The Great Guardian Tse I 翟義 marched against Mang, setting up another emperor, but was defeated and killed; the new emperor fled.
- 8 Earthquake in spring.
- 9 Mang dethroned the emperor and made him duke of Ting-an in Shensi. The governor Liu-kwai 劉快 marched against Mang, but was defeated and killed.
Mang prohibited the sale of ground-property and slaves.
- 10 He abolished the nobility and made all equal to the common people. Relying on the well-filled treasury, he dispatched Sun-kien 孫建 with twelve generals on twelve different roads against the Huns.
- 11 The Huns succeeded in invading Shansi and killed the chief officer and carried officials and people away captive. The people in their misery became robbers.
Mang intended to make Kung-sheng 龔勝 instructor of the crown prince, but he declined, and refusing to take any nourishment he died after fourteen days.
- 12 Permission was given to buy land.
- 17 Rebellion began in Kiang-nan, Shantung, and Hu-kwang.
- 18 Yang Hiung 楊雄, a governor of Mang, died. Two more rebel leaders rose in Kiang-nan; the troops sent by Mang against them had no success. Mang's grandson, Tsung 宗, committed suicide because he had painted his portrait in imperial dress, which was denounced as a rebellious design.
- 20 Great rain for over sixty days. A plot against Mang's life was unsuccessful; the originator, a non-official, died.
- 21 Mang's wife died. The crown prince planned to kill Mang and committed suicide on discovery. Great famine and locusts east of the barrier. Another rising in Hu-kwang. A woman, Ch'ih Chao-p'ing 遲昭平, raised soldiers in rebellion.
- 22 Cannibalism in Kwangtung. Locusts darken the sky. The rebel leader Fan Ts'ung 樊崇 called his troops "Red Eyebrows" (M. 111, G. 536). They suffer a defeat from Mang's best troops, over 100,000 men. The people preferred the Red Eyebrows to the licentious government troops; they were then defeated and their general killed. The two brothers, Liu Yin 劉縯 and Liu Hsiu 劉秀 (G. 1305), descendants of a Han emperor, began their operations against Mang, whose chancellor, 太師, joined them. They had some

unsuccessful fighting with Mang's two generals, but declared Liu Hsüan a cousin of Liu Hsiu, emperor.

- 23 He is known as **Huai Yang Wang 淮陽王** (G. 1308). He reigned two years. Mang sent 42,000 men under four generals against the city of Kwang-yang 昆陽, where they suffered a defeat. The emperor had Liu Yin killed, fearing his success, and made his brother a prince. Mang became so nervous that he could eat nothing but fish and drink some wine and could not lie down to sleep, but only lean forward on a table for a nap. Other risings occurred in Shensi and Szechuan (G. 1033). Ch'ang-an, where Mang resided, was taken; his daughter, the empress of Ping (s. year 4), burned herself with the palace. Mang, who fled, was taken and cut into pieces. Hsiu removed all innovations of Mang. Wang Lang 王郎 proclaimed himself emperor in Han-tan 邯鄲 (Chihli).
- 24 The emperor left the government to his father-in-law Chao Meng 趙萌 and gave himself up to drinking day and night. Rebellion was spreading. Hsiu fought against Han-tan, took 30,000 heads and finally also Wang Lang's. Hsiu was promoted as king; he also subdued brigands. Kung Sun-shu 公孫述 proclaimed himself king of Shuh 蜀 and later on emperor Ch'eng 成. The Red Eyebrows (G. 536) attacked Ch'ang-an. Liu Yung 永, king of Liang 梁, revolted, calling himself emperor.

*The Later Han Dynasty 後漢, A. D. 25-220,
also styled Eastern Han 東漢, from its Capital at
Loyang in Honan.*

- 25 Liu Hsiu (s. 22) occupied the throne as **世祖光武皇帝** emperor **Kwang Wu** (G. 1305), reigned thirty-three years to his sixty-third year of age. Although he granted an amnesty 大赦, the Redbrows proclaimed Liu P'en-tsz 盆子 emperor and entered Ch'ang-an.* Huai Yang-wang, the dethroned emperor, became frightened and fled from Loyang, but was killed by the Redbrows. Some more rebel leaders established themselves.
- 26 The meritorious officers were all ennobled as feudal princes. The Redbrows plundered Ch'ang-an and invaded Shensi. The imperial

* Near Si-ngan-fu, Shensi.

general Teng Yü 鄧禹 (G. 1908) entered Ch'ang-an, but the Redbrows returned and defeated Teng Yü, who took to flight after severe fighting; of his 20,000 men only twenty-four reached their homes. Other high dignitaries caused trouble at the same time.

27 The general Fêng I 馮異 (G. 567) received the command and gained a victory over the Redbrows; 80,000 men surrendered, the rest fled. The anti-emperor P'en was pardoned (a. year 25) and attached to the king of Chao. Some more rebellions started, but were soon suppressed and the leaders decapitated.

28 Continued fighting with rebels.

29 More fighting. One general, Keng-yen 耿弇, pacified forty-six prefectures and butchered the inhabitants of 300 cities without loss to himself. The emperor opened a high school 太學 for research into antiquities, refinement in rites and in music, also in style and in other things. He called the three private scholars, Chou Tang 周黨, Yen Kwang 嚴光 and Wang Liang 王良 to the capital; the two first, however, refused to take office.

30 Two rebel leaders were beheaded in Kiang-nan. Keng-yen with six generals marched against Shuh 蜀. They were defeated owing to the rebellion of Wei Hiao 隗囂 (G. 2275). The number of districts was reduced (over 400), and nine-tenths of the lower officials were dismissed. Ground-rent was fixed in accordance with the old usage to one-thirtieth.*

Tou Jung 竇融 (G. 1958) joined the emperor with the troops of five prefectures. Thirteen generals of Wei Hiao surrendered with over 100,000 men. Hiao fled to a city in Shensi, where he was surrounded, but saved by soldiers of Kung Sun-shu 公孫述, the rebel king of Shuh, his ally. Hiao's son, whom he had sent in the year 29 to the emperor as a pledge, was executed.

Brigands arose in Honan; the emperor went in person and overcame them.

33 Death of Chai Tsun 祭遵, a famous general ennobled as marquis, who put to death his own son for breach of the law (G. 16). Death of Wei Hiao; his son Shun 純 succeeded and soon surrendered in the year 34.

35 Expedition against Shuh. The floating bridges were burnt and several thousand soldiers drowned. As no prisoners of war were taken, the people were eager to open their doors and surrender (G. 77). The people of Sien-ling 先零 rebelled, but were sup-

* i.e. $3\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of the land-value.

- pressed. The king of Shuh employed assassins and had several high imperial officers murdered; the troops of Shuh were defeated.
- 36 Wu Han 吳漢 (G. 2330) gained a great victory over the army of Shuh. He attacked the capital. Kung Sün-shuh (s. 30) came out and was killed in the battle; the capital surrendered and the whole of Shuh became tranquillised.
- 37 The high officials were prohibited to accept strange delicacies 異味. Grand reception of the victorious general. 365 meritorious officers received promotion, forty-five relatives of the emperor got advancement.
- 38 Two Turkestan kings sent presents and begged for Chinese protectorate, which was not granted.
- 39 Han Hien 韓歆, the minister of justice, a straightforward man, committed suicide together with his son, because the emperor had reproved him instead of following his advice. The emperor had them buried in good style.

Statistics ordered of all the arable land and the inhabitants.

- 40 The female chieftain Cheng Tséh 徵側 and her sister rebelled in Tongking (G. 1490).

Bands of brigands were suppressed by decapitation.

- 41 The empress was degraded and a palace lady promoted. The general Ma-yüan 馬援 was sent to Tongking. He defeated the rebel women, captured and decapitated them (s. years 42 and 43) (s. G. 1490).
- 43 The crown prince, son of the former empress, was degraded and the son of the new empress put in his place. Huan Yung 桓榮 was appointed tutor of the crown prince; he surpassed other scholars; the emperor examined him before the assembled professors, who asked questions.
- 43 An old servant (slave) of an imperial princess had killed somebody in open daylight; the magistrate Tung Sün 董宣 watched his opportunity and had him killed, when he came out of the palace; he also used strong language about the behaviour of the princess. She in return complained to the emperor, who went in a rage and summoned Sün to have him beaten to death. Sün knocked his head to the ground and said, I beg one word before I die. The emperor giving permission, he said sagely: virtue elevates the throne, but when a slave is allowed to murder people, how can the empire be governed? I need no beating, but beg to kill myself. He knocked his head against a pillar, so that the blood overran his face. The

emperor, regarding this as loyalty and uprightness, made him a present of 300,000 cash.

- 44 The emperor made a brother of the empress Kwo 郭 master of entertainment, visited him frequently, and heaped so many valuable presents on him, that his house was called the Golden Cave.

The Huns plundered Shensi and Shansi regions; the general Ma Yüan received permission to fight them.

- 45 and 46. The repeated requests of eighteen Turkestan States for protectorate 都護 being refused, they joined the Huns (G. 1411).

- 48 The Huns were divided in the Northern and Southern; the Southern sent tribute.

Ma Yüan led over 40,000 men against the aborigines 蠻 of Wu-ling 武陵 (in Hunan). He died in the camp in the year 49.

- 54 The northern Huns begged marriage relation, which was now granted, though it had been refused in the year 51.

Great drought in the summer.

- 55 Great flood in the fifth month. Locusts.

- 56 The emperor deified the T'ai mountain and sacrificed on the north side of the Liang mountain. Locusts in autumn. Building of a reception hall, an observatory and an examination hall. Picture prognostics were distributed over the empire. Huan T'an 桓譚 (G. 844) remonstrated against it as unscriptural 非經 (*i. e.*, against the Classics), which so enraged the emperor that he wished to decapitate him. T'an knocked his head on the ground to bleeding, whereon he was pardoned and released. Going to assume his office as magistrate, he died on the road from disease.

- 57 Death of the emperor. He had attended to the court daily from morning till afternoon. He often discoursed with the high dignitaries on the doctrines of the Classics. He favored civil mandarins more than military officers and secured peace in the country.

- 58 顯宗孝明皇帝 Ming Ti reigned eighteen years to his forty-eighth year of life (A. D. 75). (G. 1292.)

- 59 He celebrated the great shooting ceremony and that of giving a feast to the veterans. After the ceremony a conversation on the Classics was held in the upper hall.

- 60 He made lady Ma empress (G. 1471). She was fond of learning and negligent in her dress.

The emperor had the portraits of twenty-eight meritorious generals, to which later on four more were added, put up in a pavilion, but Ma Yüan, his father-in-law, not amongst them. The

government was so kind, that some of the people delivered more goods for taxes than their share, or gave their age as younger for the service; the prisons were empty (?). (cp. G. 394 about a governor of this reign).

- 65 Guilty persons, even those who had forfeited their lives, were allowed to redeem themselves.

The emperor sent to India (in the years 61-67) to inquire about **Buddhism** (G. 1984).^{*} Books and priests 沙門 were brought. The highest idea expressed in the books is emptiness 虛無爲宗, compassion (not to kill), that the spirit of man 精神 is not destroyed but takes another form; everything done in this life, good and evil, finds its retribution; the cultivation of the spirit in order to become a Buddha is therefore valued. With high sounding words the vulgar fools were enticed. Those who got to the essence of their religion were marked as Sha-men 沙門. Of the nobles, Ying 英, the emperor's younger brother, was the foremost in the new faith.

All the officials were repeatedly requested to speak without restraint.

- 66 A prosperous year. The emperor held Confucianism in highest esteem (G. 323); all the high dignitaries had to acquaint themselves with the Classics. He established a classical school for the sons of the imperial female relations. The members of his bodyguard had to learn the Canon of Filial Piety. Sons of the Hun chiefs were sent to the capital to enter the school.
- 70 Ying (s. year 65) planned rebellion, was therefore degraded and banished; he committed suicide in the year 71, but involved many persons; over 1,000 suffered death or banishment and several thousands were cast into prison (G. 2541).
- 72 The emperor visited Confucius' home, went in the hall and commanded the crown prince and all nobles to rehearse the Classics. Six imperial sons were promoted to kings, but with only the income of several districts. Two generals devised an expedition against the Huns.
- 73 The country of Hami was taken from the Huns (G. 1959). One of the generals returned without seeing the enemy; he was imprisoned, and died after his release. Pan Ch'ao 班超 (G. 1598), younger brother of the historian Pan Ku 班固, was sent to the West. He

^{*} Two Indian Buddhists, Kashiapmadanga and Gobharana, came back with the mission and settled in Loyang.

- used strong measures, so that several states, Khotan 于闐 (賓) among them, made their submission, and Turkestan became again united with China, after a separation of sixty-five years. The northern Huns made an inroad into Shansi, but were repulsed, several hundred beheaded, and over 1,000 died among the carts.
- 74 The censor Chu Fu 朱輔 set forth the virtue of Han in such a way that over a hundred barbarian states in the south-west called themselves vassals and sent tribute. Turfan was conquered and a governor established there.
- 75 The Northern Huns with 20,000 horsemen attacked Turfan and killed its ex-king; they also attacked the Chinese governor, who repulsed them with poisoned arrows. Soon after the governor was attacked from other places; Turfan also rebelled, so that he had to make his escape in the year 76.
- 76 肅宗孝章皇帝 Chang Ti reigned thirteen years and died thirty-one years old (G. 1355). He had the starving people fed from the granaries and encouraged agriculture, he cared for the election of officers to procure conformity with the seasons, *i.e.* by a correct calendar, and he wished an impartial administration of justice. Two of the ministers begged for a generous government, which the emperor fully granted. Trouble again in Turfan.
- 77 Great drought. The empress dowager did not permit that relatives from the female side should be ennobled.
- 79 Formation of a Classical Club in the palace 白虎觀. The historian Pan Ku 班固 (G. 1600) was a member and published the proceedings; the work is still preserved.
- 80 The emperor raised truthful men, who remonstrated to the utmost and preferred the life of a hermit to luxuriant ease.
- 81 In Chengtu (capital of Szechuan) people and goods were abundant, but the houses crowded. It was an old regulation to prohibit the people from work at night to prevent fire; fires were nevertheless frequent. The emperor sent Lien Fan 廉范 (G. 1252) as governor. Lien simply abolished the old regulation and only insisted on a plentiful supply of water. The people sang his praise for it.
- 82 The empress Tou 竇 was childless; she caused the crown prince, a son of lady Sung (G. 1250), to be degraded and her adopted son (of another palace lady) to be appointed instead. As the empress envied his mother, she anonymously accused the child's grandmother of high treason, who then died in prison and the mother died of grief in the year 83.

83 The brother of the empress, Tou Hien 竇憲 (G. 1956), tried to cheat the daughter of the emperor Ming (s. year 58) about some garden-land, but the emperor discovered it and disgraced him.

Pan Chao was made military governor of Turkestan.

85 The emperor went and sacrificed to Confucius and his seventy-two disciples at Ch'üeh-li 闕里, the village where Confucius was born, under performance of the music of the six periods (of the Yellow emperor, Yao, Shun, Yü, T'ang and Wu); he also assembled the sixty-two male members of the K'ung family (descendants of Confucius).

86 The professor 博士 Ts'ao Pao 曹褒 begged to explain the rites of Han, which Pan Ku seconded. Pao was made chairman of a large assembly of literati for the purpose, where all points were discussed and an older work, Han I 漢儀, in 12 chapters, adopted as basis. Pao wrote out 150 chapters, which the emperor in the year 87 accepted without further discussion.

88 Death of the emperor. Tou Hien, cousin of Ho Ti (s. year 83), killed a governor. The empress appointed him commander of the chariots and cavalry against the North Huns to atone for his sin.

89 孝和皇帝 Ho Ti, the fourth son of Chang Ti, reigned seven-teen years and died when twenty-seven years old (G. 1275).

Tou Hien and Kang Ping 耿秉 defeated the Huns. They killed many; over 200,000 surrendered. They penetrated 3,000 *li* beyond the frontier. Pan Ku engraved an account of it in stone.

The Huei-chi mountain 會稽 (in Chekiang) burst. Great flood.

91 Tou Hien sent soldiers against the Northern Huns; they penetrated 5,000 *li* beyond the border. Tou Hien killed one of the great ministers.

92 Earthquake, drought, locusts. Tou Hien was executed with all his family for planning treason. The eunuch Cheng Chung 鄭衆 (G. 271) acted as the adviser of the fourteen years old emperor and was raised to high honour. All distant relatives of Tou Hien and his associates were degraded, but allowed to return to their homes; his secretary Pan Ku (s. year 79) died in prison. As Ku left the history of the Han unfinished, his sister Chao 昭 (G. 1597) was appointed to complete it (M. 758. 535).

95 The ground split open at a place in Chihli in the seventh month; earthquake in the ninth month.

96 A palace lady, Yin 陰, was raised to the rank of empress. Locusts in summer.

- 97 Earthquake in Shensi. Drought, locusts. The ground-rent and duty on hills and marshes was abolished. After the death of the empress-dowager the emperor first learned who his mother was and conferred honours on the dead.
- 98 Great flood.
- 102 The empress was degraded for jealousy and sorcery and died of grief. Pan Chao, governor of Turkestan (M. 536), begged to be allowed to return home on account of his old age; his sister petitioned for him successfully. He died one month after his arrival in Loh-yang. The palace lady Teng 鄧 was made empress. She was of a gentle and humble disposition, beloved everywhere. The eunuch Cheng (s. year 92) was ennobled (the first precedent).
- 105 The emperor died; his son, 100 days old, succeeded him.
- 106 孝殤皇帝 Shang Ti (G. 1330), five months old, reigned only eight months. Great floods in the ninth and the tenth month. Hail.
- 107 孝安皇帝 An Ti, son of emperor Ho's brother, twelve years old, reigned nineteen years. Empress Teng remained regent (G. 1374).
- 108 The Chinese general suffered a great defeat in fighting the Kiang 羌 (Tanguts, Uigours). Drought. The empress released some innocent persons from prison, which brought rain. A storm with hail in the sixth month. Yang Chen 楊震 (M. 880), a poor and upright scholar, was brought to the notice of the emperor.
- 109 Great famine at the capital, causing cannibalism, also in Shansi and Shensi. Offices and honors were offered for contributions of money and grain.
- In the twelfth month there was again great famine, accompanied with cannibalism, in Shansi and Shensi.
- 110 Several thousand brigands killed a magistrate and plundered the people in Honan. Yü Hü 虞詡 (G. 2522) quickly restored order; promising pardon, he gained between two and three hundred, and they were induced to betray their former comrades.
- 114 In Annam the ground split open to a length of over 100 *li*. Drought and locusts during the summer. The ground sunk in, in Shansi 地陷.
- 115 The palace lady Yen 閼 was raised to the rank of empress. She was envious of lady Li 李, who had borne a son to the emperor, and therefore she poisoned her.
- Yü Hü (s. year 110) was sent against the Tanguts in Shensi with success.

119 Earthquake.

[120 Hsü Shen 許愼, author of the Shuo Wen, died (G. 787).]

121 Death of the empress-dowager. She had taken the calamities of the people so to heart, that she remained without sleep during the night. She diminished her personal expenditure, to relieve the suffering, therefore prosperous times appeared again. The emperor promoted noble-minded scholars and ennobled two eunuchs.

122 He sent the eunuchs, his nurse and her daughter to the mausoleum; a high minister who passed them, made obeisance before the carriage of the daughter. Another minister remonstrated strongly against it.

123 The nurse was ennobled. Pan Yung 班勇, son of Pan Chao (s. year 73), was sent as resident to Turkestan (near Turfan). Earthquake.

124 The eunuchs caused the minister of instruction to be degraded; he committed suicide (G. 2362). The crown prince was also degraded. Earthquake, flood, hail.

125 The emperor died on a journey to the South, in Honan; he was brought back to the palace for the funeral ceremonies. I 懿, grandson of emperor Chang (s. year 76), was placed on the throne, but he died a short time after. The brother of the empress-dowager, whom she had made commander-in-chief, advised her to keep I's death secret and the palace shut, till another imperial prince was on the throne. The chief eunuch, however, made Pao 保, the degraded crown prince (s. year 124), emperor. He exterminated the brother of the empress and his adherents, had the dowager confined to the seclusion-palace, and ennobled the chief eunuch with eighteen of his fellows. Earthquake.

126 孝順皇帝 Shun Ti reigned nineteen years and died when thirty-two years old (G. 1335).

129 Kwei-yang (in Hu-kwang) presented large pearls, which were returned.

131 The emperor erected a high-school and revived learning that had been neglected, after a short effort, under the former emperor.

132 Competitive examinations for graduates in two branches—family law (domestic discipline) 家法 and official papers 牋奏.

133 The emperor ennobled his wet-nurse. Earthquake at the capital. The ground split eighty-five chang (a chang is about ten feet). The emperor at the head of the high officials and honest scholars went there. As he charged them to speak openly, Li Ku 李固 (G. 1156) declared that the nurse and the relations from the female

side ought not to be put in power, neither should eunuchs. The emperor took the advice and made also Ku himself high counsellor.

134 Drought. Chang Heng 張衡 (G. 55) begged that divinatory diagrams should be suppressed. He constructed an armillary sphere.

135 Earthquake, also in the year 137.

141 Li Ku (s. year 133) was made governor of the T'ai Mountain to suppress the brigands, which he accomplished.

142 The leader of the brigands in Kiang-nan surrendered with over 10,000 men to another general.

143 Earthquake in Shensi; 180 shocks between the ninth and eleventh months. Hills and valleys were rent, cities and monasteries ruined and great numbers of people killed.

To the topics of examinations were added morals 孝悌 and official duty 從政.

144 Death of the emperor. His son was placed on the throne.

145 孝冲皇帝 Ch'ung Ti (G. 1341) reigned only one year and died three years old. An earthquake occurred in the year 144 after his elevation, which gave an opportunity to a counsellor to address the empress mother who reigned for her son.

The emperor died in the first month of the year. On the advice of Liang K'i 梁冀 (G. 1243) her brother, the empress-dowager placed a great-grandson of emperor Chang (s. year 76) on the throne. As he was only eight years old, the dowager put the government in the hands of Li Ku (s. year 133). Evil eunuchs were reprimanded.

146 孝質皇帝 Chih Ti (G. 1358) reigned one year. Classical learning, high school and examinations were well attended, the number of scholars being over 30,000. A sea-wave swept the shore. Liang K'i poisoned the emperor. He told the dowager to dismiss Li Ku and place a grandson of Chang (s. year 76) on the throne.

147 孝桓皇帝 Huan Ti was fifteen years old and reigned twenty-one years (G. 1287). Earthquake in the fourth and ninth months. Liang K'i had Li Ku and another faithful minister executed.

149 Flood, earthquake and mountain-slip.

150 The dowager handed over the government and died the next (the second) month. The wife of Li Ku was endowed with a city.

151 At the meeting of the ministers for congratulation, Liang K'i wore a sword; the chancellor upbraided him, and by imperial order he forfeited a year's income. The emperor went in disguise to

Honan. A typhoon uprooted trees and darkened the daylight. Earthquake. Scholars of integrity were promoted.

- 153 Locusts. The Yellow river overflowed. Through a famine in Chihli several hundred thousand families became vagrant.
- 155 The southern Huns under Tai K'i 臺耆 rebelled. The imperial resident Chang Huan 張奐 subdued them. The Kiang 羌 (had been attached to the Huns) sent presents of horses (twenty teams) and gold, which the imperial resident refused and increased his esteem among the people.
- 156 30,000 brigands plundered three provinces; they could not be managed within a year. They abstained from entering the district governed by Han Shao 韓韶, who fed 10,000 of the vagrant people from the magazines.
- 158 The Grand Historian asserted that the change in the eclipse of the sun was Liang K'i's fault. K'i incriminated the historian, who died in prison. This caused the emperor's anger.
- 159 After consultation with the chief eunuchs, Liang K'i and all his family were exterminated, the corpses thrown into the marketplace, over 300 of his other connections were dismissed, his wealth (over 300 millions) was confiscated, and for it one-half of the rent and taxes remitted throughout the empire; his gardens and parks were handed over to the poor people. The five eunuchs were ennobled.
- 161 Fire in a hall of the palace (south). Great pestilence. Fire in the military magazine. Hail in the fifth month. Earthquake in the sixth. Two mountains split. The salaries of all the officials were decreased, the nobles had to pay in advance one-half of the ground-rent, offices were offered for sale.
- 165 The emperor sent a high eunuch to the K'u* 苦 district in Kiangnan to sacrifice to Lao Tsz 老子. He had a temple built in honor of Lao Tsz at the mountain Lung-hu 龍虎 (in Kiangsi) and appointed *Chang Tao-ling* 張道陵 the chief of all Taoists with the title "Heaven's Teacher." His descendants still continue this office.

The empress was degraded for being jealous of so many favorites. The Grand Guardian 太尉 Yang Ping 楊秉 died. He abstained from wine, women, and wealth 酒色財. Earthquake. Li Ying 李膺 (G. 1233) was made high inspector. A corrupt magistrate, fearing his stern integrity, hid himself between the double wall of his brother's house, the guardian of one of the palace gates. Li had him taken out, imprisoned and executed. All the

* Former pronunciation Wu.

eunuchs got so frightened that they did not venture outside of the palace. They told the emperor so with tears, when he inquired of them the reason. Liu-k'uan 劉寬 on the other hand, gained the love of the people by his kindness.

- 166 Sün Shuang 荀爽 (G. 809) wrote in an examination paper that of the 6,000 *females in the palace* the useless ones had better be sent home to get married; this would really be a great fortune to the State; the emperor advanced him into office.

The emperor sacrificed in person to Lao Tsz.

The eunuchs caused two governors to be killed; Li Ying (s. year 165) and Tu Mi 杜密, with over 200 of their adherents, were cast into prison and the Grand Guardian dismissed. Tou Wu 竇武 (G. 1964,) father of the empress, was appointed guardian of the city gates.

He was a pure character and lived very simply; he distributed rewards among the pupils of the high school and the poor.

- 167 The ground split open. The faction of Li was, on Tou Wu's suggestion, sent home on parole. Flood. The sea overflowed (tidal wave). Death of the emperor.
- 168 孝靈皇帝 Ling Ti, great-great-grandson of Chang (s. year 76), reigned twenty-two years to his thirty-fourth of life (G. 1312). Tou Wu was appointed commander-in-chief, Chen Fan 陳蕃 grand preceptor. Flood. The two dignitaries petitioned for the execution of the chief eunuch 曹節 and others, but he murdered them instead. The dowager was removed to the southern palace.
- 169 Li Ying (s. year 165) and over 100 of his adherents were executed through the machinations of the eunuch. Their wives and children were banished; altogether 6-700 persons were involved.
- 171 Earthquake. Overflow of the sea. Pestilence.
- 172 Hu Kuang 胡廣 died (G. 819) He had served over thirty years under six emperors, filling the place of four ministers in turn. He was a superior politician, but time-serving. Flood. The ominous rebel Hū Sheng 許生 proclaims himself emperor.
- 174 The rebel is decapitated.
- 175 The five Classics were cut in stone and placed before the gate of the high school. The writing was done by Ts'ai Yung 蔡邕 (G. 1986) in three kinds of letters. Over 1,000 chariots arrived daily with scholars to inspect the stones.
- 176 The governor Ts'ao Lüan 曹鸞 petitioned for the liberation of the proscribed party (s. year 169); this roused the wrath of the

emperor, who had Ts'ao imprisoned and executed. New search was made after the party and their pupils; former servants, parents, sons, and brothers who were found in office were all dismissed and confined to their homes, together with five grades of relations.

177 Drought. Locusts. Earthquake. The Sien-pi 鮮卑 (Tunguts) ravaged Chihli. The governor Chao Pao 趙苞 (G. 175) dispersed them; they killed his mother, and Pao died from hemorrhage.

178 Earthquake during the second and in the fourth month.

Ts'ai Yung (s. year 175) brought a charge against the eunuch Cheng Huang 程璜 that he would be a danger to the State. He had Yung imprisoned and condemned to public execution. Another eunuch, Lü Kiang 呂彊, used all efforts to extricate Yung, so that the emperor reduced the sentence of death to one degree less; he and his family should be shorn and with chains round their necks be transported to a place in Shensi for life. The empress was degraded and secretly executed, through the intrigue of Wang Fu 王甫, a eunuch. Sale of offices: 2,000 shih 石 income for twenty million cash; of 400 shih income for four million cash; highest or ducal dignity for ten million cash; the second dignity of governors for five million cash.

179 The eunuch Lü-kiang (s. year 178) was ennobled, but declined the honor.

180 Two parks were laid out and remonstrance against it unheeded.

181 The emperor had a market opened in his harem, where the ladies sold and bought, stole, cheated and quarrelled; the emperor, dressed as a market-butcher, enjoyed the sight, which was followed by feasting.

182 He built a hall 400 feet wide.

184 Chang Kioh 張角 (G. 36) and two brothers began the rebellion of the yellow turbans 黃巾賊 in thirty-six places. The imperial troops under Ts'ao Ts'ao 曹操 (G. 2013) and three other generals defeated them; the heads were cut off of several 10,000. Kioh died, and his two brothers were also defeated and beheaded (G. 855).

185 Thirteen eunuchs who had assisted against Kioh were ennobled. A rebellion (s. G. 2380).

187 The former magistrate Ch'en Shih 陳寔 died; over 30,000 people came from all sides to mourn for him.

189 Death of the emperor. Ho Tsin 何進 (G. 644), the brother of the empress, called Tung Cho 董卓 (G. 2091) to put down the eunuchs. The latter assassinated Ho Tsin and carried the empress-dowager

and the fourteen years old emperor, her son, away (about the chief eunuchs a. G. 73). The commander Yüan Shao 袁紹 (G. 2561) went to pursue them, and killed over 2,000 eunuchs. Cho wished to disinherit the emperor and put his seven years old brother (son of a palace lady) on the throne. Shao did not consent and fled. Cho dethroned the **Shao Ti** 少帝 (G. 1333), made his brother emperor and murdered his mother the dowager (about Ka Hün, G. 932). Cho acted as regent with much arrogance.

- 190 **孝獻皇帝 Hien Ti** reigned thirty-one years (—220), was then dethroned and died when fifty-four years old (G. 1301).

Cho killed the dethroned emperor. He moved the capital to Ch'ang-an with several millions of people. Lo-yang he had burned, and despoiled the mausoleums and family graves of the nobles. Sun Kien 孫堅 (G. 1798) marched against Cho, but Cho gained a victory over Ts'ao Ts'ao at Yung-yang 滎陽 (Honan).

Liu Yü 劉虞 was made Great Preceptor 太傅; he pleased the people by his mildness; over a million refugees were received by him and cared for.

- 191 The generals east of the pass elected Liu Yü as emperor, but he declined. Sun Kien defeated Cho, who fled to the West. Earthquake. Sun Kien is shot dead by soldiers of Liu Piao in battle.

- 192 Cho's generals gained a victory, but he himself was murdered by his adopted son Lü Pu 呂布 (G. 1454). Ts'ai Yung died in prison (executed). Over 300,000 yellow turban soldiers surrendered to Ts'ao Ts'ao. Several of Cho's generals killed the minister Wang Yün 王允 (G. 2261), who had caused Cho's assassination through Lü Pu by rousing the passion of Lü Pu for a singing girl, Tiao Ch'an (G. 1913), whom Wang Yün at first had presented to Cho.

- 193 Liu Yü met his death in fighting Kung Sun Tsan 公孫瓚 (G. 1034.) The Hua mountain in Shensi burst.

- 194 Ts'ao Ts'ao defeated *Liu Pei** 劉備 (G. 1338). Earthquake at the capital. Drought.

- 195 Cho's two generals, Li Kieh 李傕, and Kuo Sz 郭汜, quarrelled among themselves; Li took possession of the emperor. He was killed in a battle against Ts'ao Ts'ao. Kuo was killed by his own soldiers.

- 196 Ts'ao Ts'ao kept the emperor in his power and took the government into his hands; the emperor had only the name left. He accumulated a million *huh* 斛 (picul) of grain at Hsü 許 in Honan, so that he afterwards had no trouble about provisions for his expeditions.

* Later on emperor Chao-lie of Shuh-han.

- 197 Yüan Shu 袁術 (G. 2563) was proclaimed emperor. Ts'ao Ts'ao attacked him and put him to flight.
- 198 Ts'ao Ts'ao killed Lü Pu (a. year 192).
- 199 The emperor sent secret instruction to Liu Pei to annihilate Ts'ao Ts'ao; he raised troops against the latter, but was beaten. Death of Yüan Shu.
- 200 Ts'ao Ts'ao avenged himself on those who plotted against him, exterminating their three relations (of father, mother, and wife). He defeated Liu Pei again and captured his two wives and their children, also Kuan Yü 關羽 (G. 1009, since 1594 worshipped as the God of War). The latter, shut up with the ladies all night, did not touch them. He escaped again to Liu Pei. Sun Ts'ê 孫策 (G. 1823) died from an arrow-wound by an assassin; his brother Sun Ch'üan 權 (G. 1803) took the command.
- Death of Cheng Hsüan 鄭玄 (G. 274), the most voluminous commentator on the Classics.
- 201 Ts'ao attacked Liu Pei, who made his escape. Death of Chao K'î 趙岐, author of the best commentary on the works of Mencius (G. 146).
- 202 Ts'ao demanded Ch'üan to entrust his son to him, but following the advice of Chou Yü 周瑜 (G. 428) he did not consent.
- 205 Hsün Yüeh 荀悅 (G. 811), grandson of Shu and nephew of Shuang, (G. 809), sent in a programme of government, recommending to the emperor the removal of four evils: hypocrisy, selfishness, licentiousness, and extravagance, and the adoption of five political measures, namely encouragement of agriculture, examination of the inclinations of the people, extension of mental culture (learning), military preparation, rewards and punishments in a legal way; these should be carried out honestly and adhered to persistently.
- 207 Liu Pei met *Chu Ko Liang* 諸葛亮, i. e., K'ung Ming 孔明 (G. 459). Pei's companions Kuan Yü 關羽 and Chang Fei 張飛 were, at first, not pleased with this new attachment.
- 208 Ts'ao pressed Sz Ma-i 司馬懿 (G. 1754) into his service (M. 655) and executed K'ung Jung 孔融 and family (G. 1046). Pei had to flee before Ts'ao and leave wife and child behind. Chang Fei protected a bridge. Later on Ts'ao with 800,000 men was defeated by the united forces of Pei and Sun Ch'üan (a. year 200) at Ch'ih Pi 赤壁 near Wuchang on the Yangtsze (s. G. 428).
- 209 Ch'üan left Pei in possession of Kingchou and gave him his sister in marriage. She was a masculine woman and had 100 maiden-

servants, who stood with drawn swords, so that Pei trembled whenever he went in to her.

210 Ts'ao built a terrace about 100 feet high with over a hundred dwellings for his favorite concubines.

212 Hsün Yü 荀彧 (G. 810), counsellor of Ts'ao, committed suicide, because his warning was not heeded.

214 Liu Pei took possession of *Shuh* (Szechuan). Liu Chang 劉璋 surrendered the capital, though he still had 30,000 intact soldiers desirous to fight, and provisions for a year.

The empress Fu 伏 had since the year 200, when Ts'ao had executed Tung Ch'eng 董承 and his daughter, a palace lady, with her child, resentment in her heart against him; she wrote a letter to her father to assassinate him. Ts'ao, who heard of it, had her seized, dragged barefoot with disheveled hair through the palace, passing the helpless emperor, and cast into a dungeon, where she died. Her two sons were poisoned. His daughter was then raised to the dignity of empress.

215 Sun Ch'üan suffered a great defeat at Ho-fei (Kiangnan).

217 Ch'üan, defeated by Ts'ao, surrendered. Fighting continued between the troops of Ts'ao and of Pei.

218 Two officials conspired against Ts'ao and were executed.

219 Liu Pei made himself king of Han-chung 漢中. Ch'üan's general Lü Meng 呂蒙 (M. 462) enticed Yü (s. year 200), so that he was captured and *beheaded*.* Meng died from disease. A case of his military discipline is recorded; he had forbidden marauding; one of the soldiers of Meng's native place had taken a hat, Meng ordered with tears his execution, which had great effect. Ch'üan called himself the subject (minister) of Ts'ao, who thought himself equal to king Wen of the Chou.

220 Assassination of Chang Fei (s. year 207), the valiant friend of Liu Pei.

Ts'ao died. His excellencies as a general were prominent in maintaining strict discipline, etc. His burial place was kept secret; seventy-two different localities were so called. His son Ts'ao P'ei 丕 (G. 2008) succeeded.

* About this Kuan Yü, the God of War, Faber writes (*Famous Men of China*, p. 16): "We may call him the modern *national god* of China. He is worshipped . . . to help against all kinds of evil . . . Such veneration of warriors among the Chinese is the strongest evidence that the *Chinese mind* is eminently warlike. The facts to the contrary repeated over and over by foreign writers in general works on China—though such facts are true—have their cause not in the Chinese mind, but in other circumstances (bad organisation, etc.)." May foreign diplomats ponder this!

Hua T'o 華陀 (G. 830), the famous physician, died in prison. Nine degrees of mandarins 九品 were fixed by Ts'ao P'ei.

A censor caused all officials below the rank of minister to be examined and those not up to the mark, dismissed. The emperor sent the imperial insignia to P'ei, who took them.

The Three Kingdoms 三國*

Wei 魏 220-265, central and north provinces, capital at Yieh 業 or Siang (=Chang-te-fu) in Honan.

Shuh Han 蜀 漢, 221-263, capital at Ch'eng-tu.

Wu 吳 229-280, south of the Yangtsze, capital at Nanking (old name 建業).

221 **昭烈皇帝** Chao Lieh Ti. This is the imperial name of Liu Pei (s. year 194), the descendant of emperor King (B. C. 156). When Ts'ao P'ei usurped the imperial throne (Wei Dynasty), Liu Pei established the **Minor Han** or **Shuh Han** dynasty (G. 1338).

Pei made Chu Ko-liang (s. year 207) his prime-minister and Hū Tsing 許靖 minister of education. Chang Fei (s. year 207) was polite to leaders, but harsh toward inferiors; the emperor warned him in vain; he was murdered in his tent and his head carried to Sun Ch'üan. Ch'üan sent a messenger for peace; the brother of Ko-liang recommended it, but Pei would not hear of it, as he intended to revenge the death of Kuan Yü (s. year 219). Ch'üan then gained Ts'ao P'ei of Wei, who appointed him king of Wu 吳王 (M. 632).

222 The emperor Liu Pei leading his army of 700,000 men in person, was defeated by Ch'üan's general Luh Sun 陸遜 at I-ling 夷陵 (Ichang); over forty battalions were scattered, about 10,000 killed on a hill, where the emperor had concentrated his forces; he himself escaped the surrounding enemy with difficulty. His general Huang K'üan 黃權 was cut off on the North of the Yangtsze and surrendered. The emperor was advised to enslave his wife and children, to which he objected, treating them as before.

*The work San-kuo-chih 三國志 commences with 169, the second year of emperor Ling Ti. The rebellion of the Yellow Turbans began 184. The work concludes 280 with the conquest of the kingdom Wu by the new dynasty Ts'in.

The king of Wu threw up his allegiance to Wei; as Ts'ao P'ei (of Wei) intended to march against Wu, the people sent an embassy to the emperor (Liu Pei).

- 223 Death of the emperor. His son Liu Ch'an 禪 succeeded, seventeen years old, reigned forty years, when he submitted to the general Teng Ai (s. year 263) of Ts'in; he died at the age of sixty-five (G. 1272).
- 224 Ts'ao P'ei of Wei led in person his dragon-boats against Wu. The general of Wu, Sü Sheng 徐盛, concentrated his flotilla on the Yangtze, erected wooden pillars and dressed the reeds to deceive the enemy. As the boats met a fierce wind that nearly turned them over, they returned.
- 225 Liang went on an expedition against the independent tribes in the S. W. (of Szechuan) and subdued them, beheading their chief and capturing and releasing another seven times, to make him submissive. He then invaded four States in Yunnan.
- 226 Ts'ao P'ei of Wei died and his son succeeded as 明帝 emperor Ming from the year 227-239 (G. 2003) of the Wei dynasty.

Under his reign women were admitted to official life.

- 228 Chu Ko-liang attacked Wei, but suffered a defeat at Kie-ting 街亭 (N. W. of Kingchou). Wei's general was Sz-ma I 司馬懿 (G. 1754, s. year 208). After Liang's return the commander Kiang Wei 姜維 surrendered to him. The people of Wu induced the governor of Yangchou to fight, when he suffered a great defeat, losing over 10,000 men, dead or missing; the victors carried much booty away.
- 229 Death of Chao Yün 趙雲 (G. 196), a hero of the wars of the three kingdoms.

Chu Ko-liang marched again against Wei without gaining any advantage. Sun Ch'üan of Wu (s. years 200 and 221) assumed the title of emperor of Wu (G. 1803).

- 231 Liang marched the third time against Wei and gained some advantage at the Lu city 鹵, where one of Sz-ma I's generals was killed.
- 234 Liang constructed wooden oxen (wheel-barrows?) and mechanical horses (?) to convey provisions; getting Wu as an ally, they marched against Wei. Sz-ma I remained at his fortified position, so that Liang sent him a ladies' headdress as an insult. Liang died suddenly in his camp. His troops were then led back, the commander of the avantguard rebelled, but was defeated and executed.
- Earthquake at Lo-yang.
- 235 For the building of a hall, 30-40,000 men are employed in Wei.
- 236 Large coins, at the value of 500 cash each, were made in Wu (silver?).

237 Earthquake in Wei. Two men were cast of copper in Wei and placed before the palace-gate. An artificial hill was made in the park, to which even the highest dignitaries had to carry mud. Different kinds of trees and fine grass were planted, birds and beasts kept on the hill.

238 Coins were made in Wei 1,000 cash in value (weight 16 chu, diameter 1 inch 4 tenths; 24 chu=1 tael).

Kung Sün-yüan 淵, governor of Liaotung, usurped the title of king. Sz-ma I defeated and executed him.

239 King Ming of Wei (s. year 226) died.

240 His son Fang 芳 succeeded as 廢帝 Fei Ti (reigned till the year 254, G. 1996).

248 Ts'ao Shuang 曹爽 (G. 2011) of Wei planned rebellion. Sz-ma I could not prevent his bringing conspirators into official positions, and he retired for a time from court, but succeeded in the year 249 in killing the leaders and having their families exterminated (s. McG., p. 144).

A young widow, urged by her father to marry again, cut her ears off and swore that she would not do so; when her father urged her again, she cut her nose off and remained firm (G. 681).

To Sz-ma I the rank of premier and the nine imperial gifts were offered, but he declined.

250 The king of Wu, Sun Ch'üan (G. 1803, M. 632), degraded the crown prince Sun Ho 孫和 (G. 1808) and appointed Sun Liang 亮, the son of a palace lady, in his stead (G. 1813). The king of Lu and the high commander were executed.

251 Sz-ma I died and his son Shih 師 succeeded to his office. Sz-ma I had just put down another insurrection and had over 1,000 executed.

252 Death of the king of Wu, Sun Ch'üan; his son 廢帝 Fei Ti (Sun Liang) reigned in Wu from the year 252-258* (G. 1813).

253 A brigand of Wei attempted to kill the emperor of Shuh, but failed and pierced the commander to death. An army of Shuh attacked Wei and besieged a city in Shensi.

254 The Chancellor Sz-ma Shih killed the three highest officials and exterminated their three kinds of relations (father, mother, and wife). The empress was degraded, for her father and relations were among the slain. He also removed the emperor to a city in Honan and placed the younger brother on the throne of Wei as Shao Ti 少帝 from the year 254-260 (G. 2005) (fourth emperor of Wei).

* Different from Fei Ti in Wei (240-254).

- 255 Two governors of Wei raised soldiers against Shih, but were defeated and fled to Wu. Death of Shih. His brother Chao 昭 (G. 1746) took his office. The chief-commander Kiang Wei 姜維 of Shuh (G. 344) gained some advantage over Wei, but withdrew soon.
- 256 Kiang Wei attacked the State of Wei again, but was defeated with great loss, therefore hated in Shuh.

Wang Siang 王祥 (G. 2175) famous for his filial piety; through melting the ice by the warmth of his body, he caught a pair of carp for his mother. When employed in office he showed much transforming influence.

- 257 The governor of Yang-chou marched against the chancellor without success. His city was taken and he executed in the year 258.
- 258 Sun Ch'en 孫綝 (G. 1813 and 1810), minister in Wu, removed Fei Ti and placed Fei's brother Sun Hsiu as *King Ti* 景帝 on the throne in Wu; King Ti had Ch'en executed a little later (twelfth month).
- 260 Sz-ma Chao (a. year 255) had the emperor of Wei assassinated and placed an uncle of Shao, the fifteen-years old **Yuan Ti** 元帝 (G. 2001) on the throne in Wei. See Chia Ch'ung, G. 319.
- 262 Chi K'ang 嵇康 (G. 293, M. 246) and the Club of the Seven Worthies (M. 85) were fond of Taoism and drinking. One of them, Yüan Tsi 阮籍 (M. 968) played chess without stopping even when his mother was dying, and continued his drinking up to two gallons 斗 a time, so that he caused a hemorrhage. His nephew (M. 963) fell in love with the slave-girl of his aunt, the aunt sent her away, but he borrowed the horse of a guest and brought her back, riding on the same horse with him. Chi was killed by Sz-ma Chao (chief minister in Wei) for writing a satire about him.
- 263 Wei sent the generals Teng Ai 鄧艾 (G. 1903) and Chung Hui 鍾會 (G. 516) against the State of Han; the guardian of the pass committed suicide, and Kiang Wei (s. year 255) was defeated. Teng marched over the mountains and took Ch'eng-tu; the emperor surrendered and the imperial prince committed suicide. This was the end of the State of Shuh Han.
- 264 Chung Hui, being jealous of Teng, had him executed and was himself murdered by subordinates. King Ti of Wu died, and his nephew succeeded as **Mo Ti** 末帝. Sz-ma Chao took the title king of Tsin 晉, but died the same year. His son **Sz-ma Yen** 炎 de-throned Yüan Ti of Wei and became the first emperor of the Tsin Dynasty in the year 265. (Wei had five rulers during forty-six years.)

*The Tsin Dynasty 晉 (265-420).**The Western Tsin (265-316).*

265 Sz-ma Yen or 世祖 武皇帝 emperor Wu reigned twenty-five years and died when fifty-five years old (G. 1768). His capital was Lo-yang in Honan.

268 The emperor's mother died; he wore plain dress for three years. The high-guardian Wang Hsiang 王祥, one of the twenty-four examples of filial piety, died.

274 Wang P'ou 王裒 (G. 2215), another of the twenty-four examples, refused to take office, because his father Wang I 儼 had been executed for a bold reply to emperor Wen 文 of Wei. P'ou lived retired, teaching. He always burst out in tears when reading the ode 蓼蓼者莪 "lu lu tsoe wo" s. Sheking II, 5. 8 (Legge IV, II, p. 350, M. 805a).*

About another filial son, who took no concubine but spent 10,000 cash on his daily food, s. G. 661.

278 The general Yang Hu's 羊祜 plan of operation against Wu adopted by the emperor (M. 885).

In autumn Tsin was flooded and worms 螟 appeared in the grain stalks. Yang Hu recommended before his death Tu Yü 杜預 (G. 2072) as his successor in office. Yang Hu was after his death much bewailed by the emperor, the people, and also the officers of Wu. Another good minister (s. G. 586).

279 A chieftain of the Sienpi took a district of Shensi, but was soon driven back. Liu Yüan 劉淵 (G. 1380), an able chief of the Huns, received a high command from the emperor, against the warning of his ministers. Over 200,000 men were sent against Wu. The king of Wu indulged, with his officials, in drinking and cruelty (Mcg., p. 154). The premier made an attempt to oppose the invading army, but was killed in battle.

280 The king of Wu (Sun Hao, Mo Ti, s. 264) surrendered to Tsin, and the State had an end, after fifty-nine years of duration under four rulers (G. 1807).†

* Some words of this ode are: Alas, my parents, with what toil ye gave me birth! Fatherless, who is there to rely on? Motherless, who is there to depend on? Oh my father who begat me! Oh my mother who nourished me! Ye indulged me, ye fed me, ye held me up, ye supported me, ye looked after me, ye never left me, out and in ye bore me in your arms. If I would return your kindness, it is like great Heaven, illimitable!

† Sun Hao used tea.

282 The emperor added the 5,000 harem ladies of Wu to his own harem, in which he had already several thousand. He drove around in a carriage drawn by goats and went in where they stopped. The ladies then put bamboo-leaves and salt-water on the ground, to make the goats stop at their door. The father and two brothers of the empress Yang 楊 had the government in their hands; the old ministers retired.

The Sienpi made another incursion.

289 A chief of the Sienpi received a command; Liu Yüan was advanced to the rank of a governor.

290 孝惠皇帝 emperor Hui, son of Wu, reigned seventeen years, and died from poison in his forty-eighth year (G. 1752).

291 The empress Kia 賈 murdered the father of the empress-dowager Yang (s. year 282) and degraded her; she also killed two brothers of the emperor. About her nephew s. G. 324.

292 The empress cut off the provisions of the dowager, so that she died after eight days; she then honored the corpse.

294 A chieftain of the Tikiang 氐 羌, a tribe in Shensi, assumed the title emperor. He collected 70,000 men and annihilated a small force of 5,000 men sent against him in the year 297, but was defeated in 299.

300 The crown prince, the son of a palace lady, was first degraded, then poisoned by the empress (G. 1749). Lun 倫 (G. 1757), a brother of the emperor, went with soldiers into the palace and killed the empress and her adherent, the minister Chang Hua 張華 (G. 65), the author of the work Investigation of Things 博物志. Yün, a brother of the emperor, opposed Lun and died. Lun called himself emperor, and sent Hui away; two of his brothers then killed Lun after some fighting. One of the two, who had some power and sided with the emperor, was slaughtered together with the three family relations of all his adherents. The wars among the brothers, the eight kings, went on till the year 304 (G. 297), when two more were killed. The emperor died suddenly, having been, as is believed, poisoned by his brother, the king of the East-Sea.

307 孝懷皇帝 Emperor Huai, twenty-fifth son of Wu, reigned six years, was captured and killed in his thirtieth year (G. 1751; Mcg., p. 160 says, he was forty-two when he ascended the throne).

One rebel-chief was killed by two of his generals, who submitted themselves to the government. Another brigand, Shih Lo 石勒 (G. 1720), killed a governor in Honan; driven back by an imperial

army, he joined Han, where Liu Yüan (s. year 279) had established himself.

- 308 An attack of the Han on Lo-yang was beaten off by the governor of Liang 涼 in Kansu (G. 81). Liu Yüan took the title of emperor and moved his residence to Ping-yang 平陽 in the year 309.
- 309 The king of the East-Sea, brother of the emperor, entered the capital and killed an uncle and over ten other high persons, including the president of the council. He dragged him from the side of the emperor and killed him with the other persons; the emperor only shed tears. It is put on record, that the father of one of the killed used to spend 20,000 tsien 錢 daily for his food, and his grandfather 10,000.
- 310 Liu Yüan of Han died; the heir-prince Ho 和 succeeded, but was murdered by Yüan's brother, who took the throne. Shih Lo of Han (s. year 307) invaded the country.
- 311 The king of the East-Sea marched against him, but died on the way. Shih Lo pursued his funeral, surrounded and killed over 100,000 men, not one escaping. He broke open the coffin and burned the corpse as a retribution to him who had disturbed the empire. The new Lord of Han, Ts'ung 聰 (G. 1359), sent a general with 27,000 soldiers against Lo-yang; the army of Tsin was defeated in twelve battles. Liu Yao 曜 (G. 1365), Shih Lo and another general also brought troops, made a joined attack and took the capital. The palace was plundered, the crown prince killed, and the emperor tried to escape to Ch'ang-an, but was overtaken and carried as prisoner to Ping-yang, where he received the title of a duke. The Han soldiers suffered a defeat at Ch'ang-an, which restored the confidence of the army of Tsin.
- 312 Liu Yao was driven from Ch'ang-an and put to flight. The prince Sz-ma Yeh of Tsin, a grandson of emperor Wu (s. year 265), entered the city Ch'ang-an and was proclaimed crown prince.
- 313 Liu Ts'ung killed emperor Huai at Pingyang.
Sz-ma Yeh, called 孝愍皇帝 emperor Min (s. year 312), reigned four years; was killed in the year 317 in his forty-eighth year. He left the government to the care of a minister (G. 1767).
- 314 Shih Lo (s. year 307) surprised Tsi 薊 (Peking) and had the governor executed. Tsi attached itself to Tuan Pi-tan 段匹磾 (the Tuan were one of the Sienpi tribes).

There were troubles in Hukuang, in Shansi, and in Kuangtung.

- 316 Liu Yao besieged Ch'ang-an, when the emperor surrendered. This ended the Western Tsin; it had lasted fifty-two years under four emperors.

*The Eastern Tsin 東晉 (317-420).**

- 317 中宗元皇帝 emperor Yüan (named Niu Jui), a great-grandson of emperor Sün (*i. e.*, Sz-ma I, the grandfather of Wu) reigned six years and died at forty-six years of age (G. 1570 and 1574). He had been prime-minister under Min. He established a high-school. Liu Ts'ung killed the ex-emperor Min Ti at Pingyang.
- 318 Yüan, who called himself king, took the title of emperor. He liked the law-school, especially Han Fei Tsz. Yü Liang 庾亮, brother of the empress, who favored Lao and Chuang, spoke against it, saying that Shen 申 and Han were ungenerous and had an injurious influence on the people 刻薄傷化.

A fire in the palace of Ts'ung of Han (s. year 311) burned twenty-one of his sons to death. Ts'ung died of grief soon after. He left four queens under twenty years of age. His son Ts'an 粲 (G. 1358), a bad man, was killed with all relations in the city by a general, Chin Chun 靳準. This general also opened the graves of Yüan and Ts'ung, had the latter's corpse decapitated and the temples of both burnt. Chun was defeated by Shih Lo and a Han general, then decapitated and his family exterminated. Liu Yao became king, he appointed Shih Lo duke of Chao 趙.

- 319 Han took the name of Chao (=Former Chao) and moved his residence to Ch'ang-an (—329). Shih Lo of After Chao called himself king (in Hsiang=Shun-te-fu in Chihli).
- 321 Yu Wen 宇文 attacked Mo-jung Hui 慕容廆 (the Mo-jung were a Sienpi tribe or Tunguses); he was defeated and Liaotung taken by Hui.
- 322 Wang Tun 王敦 (G. 2238), a commander-in-chief of Wuchang, marched in rebellion against Chang-sha, but interviewed by his two brothers he returned.

The After Chao also caused trouble and conquered some cities.

The emperor, who was well-meaning but not clear-sighted and undetermined, took the troubles to heart and died.

* Cp. Appendix A.

- 323 肅宗明皇帝 emperor Ming, oldest son of Yüan, reigned three years in Tsin and died at twenty-seven years of age (G. 1760).
- 324 Several generals marched against Wang Tun, and then against the emperor himself. Tun died from illness; his soldiers dispersed and his adherents were massacred. Tun's grave was opened, his garments burnt and the corpse decapitated (G. 2303).
- 326 顯宗成皇帝 emperor Ch'eng, oldest son of Ming, reigned seventeen years (—342) and died when twenty-two years old (G. 1769).
- 328 Su Chün 蘇峻 (G. 1778), a high dignitary, who rose in rebellion the year before, beat several armies (G. 2526), but succumbed when T'ao K'an 陶侃 (G. 1897) took the field against him; he was beheaded. Shih Lo (s. year 307) defeated and killed Liu Yao. The brother of Su Chün, who had taken the command of the rebels, was overwhelmed and beheaded.
- 329 Shih Hu 石虎 (G. 1705), the Minister of Shih Lo, defeated the heir-prince and successor of Yao, and killed him together with over 3,000 of his followers. The State of the Former Chao was then absorbed by the *After Chao*.
- 330 Ts'u Yoh 祖約, the confederate of Su Chün (s. year 328), who had joined Shih Lo, was massacred together with his family.
- 333 Hui of Liaotung (s. year 321) died and his son Huang 皇晃 succeeded. Shih Lo died and his son Hung 弘 succeeded. Shih Hu (s. 329) murdered the queen-dowager; some officers attempted to punish him, but failed and were killed in the attempt.
- 334 Shih Hu murdered his king and established himself as 居攝天王.* On the State of Ch'eng, see Appendix A, the illeg. States 1.
- 335 Shih Hu favored Buddhism; see States 4.
- Chinese* were permitted to become *monks*.
- 337 Huang (s. year 333) called himself king of Yen 燕 and was confirmed as such by the emperor in the year 341.
- 339 Wang Tao 王導, the prime minister of Tsin, who had served three emperors, died (G. 2232). He loved simplicity and suppression of desires, he stored up no grain, nor was there double silk in his garments. He was called the Kuan-tsz of the Kiang 江左夷吾†.
- 343 康皇帝 emperor K'ang, younger brother of Ch'eng, reigned two years and died twenty-two years of age (G. 1770).

* "Heavenly king regent;" State After Chao, his capital Yieh = Chang-te-fu in Honan.

† The I-wu of the left bank of the Yangtze. Kuan I-wu, a famous statesman in Ts'ü, s. B. C. 686-645 (G. 1006, M. 293).

His commander-in-chief Yü I 庾翼 sent the general Huan Sian 桓宣 against Chao; he suffered a severe defeat and died from chagrin.

- 345 孝宗穆皇帝 emperor Muh, son of K'ang, reigned seventeen years and died when nineteen years old (G. 1761).

凉 Liang became an independent kingdom, s. States 9.

- 347 The general Huan Wen 桓溫 entered Ch'eng-tu and made an end of the Ch'eng Han State (s. illeg. States 1).

- 349 After the death of Shih Hu (s. year 329), king of Chao, the crown prince and the dowager were murdered by his brother Tsun 遵, who took the throne; but a relative, Shih Kien 石鑒, murdered him after six months. Chu P'ou 褚裒, father of the empress dowager, reigning in Ts'in, led an army of 30,000 men against Chao without success.

- 350 Over 100,000 people collected around Fu Hung 蒲洪, who proclaimed himself king of Ts'in 秦 (s. States 7).

Jan Min 冉閔, the adopted son of Shih Hu, murdered Kien, king of Chao, and thirty-eight grandsons of Shih Hu, exterminating the Shih family. He changed the name of the State into Wei 魏. Fu Hung was murdered by the general Ma Ts'iu 麻秋. His son Fu 苻 (the other character 蒲 P'u had been changed for this) Kien 健 (G. 578) decapitated the murderer and called himself Heavenly king of Ts'in. After he had taken Ch'ang-an from Tu Hung 杜洪, who had seized it, he took the title of emperor in the year 352.

The end of the Posterior Chao (see States 4). Jan Min of Posterior Chao is killed by the general of the State Yen. Yen also conquers Wei.

- 352 The kings of Ts'in (7) and of Yen (6) called themselves emperors. Yin Hao 殷浩, high commander, discouraged pupils to attend the imperial high-school. He made some unsuccessful attacks on the States to the North of Nanking.

About the changes in the State of Liang, see States 9.

- 354 Yin Hao was deprived of every rank. Huan Wen 桓溫 (G. 846, 836) got the command; he defeated Ts'in, but treating the people very kindly, they made presents of cattle and wine; male and female appeared on the road to see him and the aged shed tears of gratitude. In another battle, only a few weeks later, Wen gained no advantage and lost over 10,000 men; he then returned.

- 356 Huan Wen defeated Yao Siang 姚襄, who had rejoined the Imperials in the year 352 and fallen off to Yen in 354. Siang fled

to the north and occupied a district in Shansi, but was defeated and beheaded in 357.

- 357 His brother Ch'ang 萇 (M. 902) and the people surrendered to Ts'in. The drunken king of Ts'in was killed by the soldiers of Kien 堅, his brother (G. 579, M. 141), who takes the throne. His faithful minister was Wang Meng 王猛 (G. 2204); he raised persons of rare talents, revived abolished offices, encouraged agriculture, cared for the distressed, worshipped the gods 禮百神, established schools, eulogized purity of character, connected extinguished families, so that the people of Ts'in were greatly delighted.
- 358 Great drought in Ts'in. King Kien reduced his viands, stopped music, ordered the queen and her ladies to work at the filatures, made mountains and plains accessible, ceased from war to nourish the people, and the drought was no calamity.
- 360 The king Ts'in of Yen died and his son Wei succeeded. Huan Wen made Hsieh An 謝安 (M. 584) marshal for the expedition to the West.
- 361 In Ts'in every governor was ordered to advance candidates on four standards 四科—filial and brotherly behaviour, honesty, literature, and administration 孝悌廉直文學政事. A reward was given for every one that passed the examination and a punishment 罪之 for every failure.
- 362 哀皇帝 emperor Ai, oldest son of Ch'eng, reigned four years and died in his twenty-fifth year (G. 1758).
- Yen attacked Lo-yang; an army of Huan Wen saved it, but Yen surprised it in the year 365.
- 363 Chang T'ien-hsi 張天錫 (G. 114) of Liang poisoned his ruler, who was his nephew, and took the throne (s. States 9). The murdered one had also slain his ruler, an uncle, and sons (G. 61).
- 366 帝奕 emperor I, younger brother of Ai, who had no son, reigned six years (G. 1755).
- 369 Huan Wen's expedition against Yen failed (G. 302), because Ts'in came to its help. He afterwards was badly defeated by Ch'ui 垂 and Te 德, relatives of the king of Yen, when 30,000 of his soldiers were beheaded. Wen wished to throw the blame on a general, who refused obedience, seized a district and surrendered to Yen; the place was captured by Huan in the year 371 and the son of the traitor executed.

Ch'ui's success made the queen-dowager and the high-custodian P'ing 評 jealous. To escape destruction, he fled to Ts'in, where he

was received with distinction. Ts'in sent Wang Meng (s. year 357) with 30,000 men, infantry and cavalry, against Yen; he took Lo-yang.

Huan Wen became angry, because Sun Sheng 孫盛 (G. 1815) had written his failures into the annals of Ts'in. He reprimanded Sheng's son, who implored his father, supported by all the family, to alter the entry, but he refused, so the son did it secretly.

370 Wang Meng marched again against Yen, whose general, P'ing 評, with 300,000 soldiers became afraid, lost several cities and then suffered a severe defeat; over 50,000 heads of his soldiers were taken; the whole loss amounted to over 100,000. The capital Yieh 鄴* was invested; king Kien came in person with 100,000 men; king Wei 暉 attempted his escape, but was captured and, after the surrender of Yieh with 40,000 families (of Sien-pi), transferred to Ch'ang-an.

371 太宗簡文皇帝 emperor Kien Wen, a younger son of Yüan, born in the year 320, reigned two years and died when fifty-three years old (G. 1771).

150,000 families of barbarians 夷 were collected by Ts'in at the central pass, Kwan-chung 關中.

372 Wang Meng was made prime minister; he was a clear-minded and firm man, freed himself of useless persons, encouraged agriculture and military training; he placed only able men in office and inflicted strict punishment on the guilty; thus the state became wealthy, the army strong and always victorious. Ts'in had a magnificent government. He died in the year 375.

373 烈宗孝武皇帝 emperor Hiao Wu, third son of Kien Wen, reigned twenty-four years; was murdered in his thirty-fifth year (G. 1766).

The minister Huan Wen died.

376 Ts'in annexed the States of Liang (G. 114) and T'ai. In T'ai, Shih Kün 寔君 had murdered his sovereign; he was captured and in Ch'ang-an was torn asunder by two chariots.

378 King Kien of Ts'in drank wine with his officials to extreme drunkenness. Chao Cheng 趙整 made a song exhorting the king, who received it well and had then only three cups according to the rites on such occasions.

379 Ts'in surprised a city in Shensi. Its governor Chi Yih 吉翹 drew a sword to kill himself; when prevented and captured, he did neither eat nor speak and died.

*Yieh=Chang-teh-fu, Honan s. years 220 and 334.

381 A Buddhist temple, Fu-tsing-shê 佛精舍, was built inside the Imperial palace, where the priests had to live.

Sixty-two states of the East-barbarians and Turkestan brought tribute to Ts'in.

383 The king of Ts'in marched with over 600,000 infantry and 270,000 cavalry against the emperor, but was beaten by the imperial generals Hsie Shih 謝石 and Hsie Hsüan 玄 with 80,000 men; the king could only collect, of his scattered troops, over 100,000 and return.

384 Ch'ui (s. year 369) of the Mo-jung proclaimed himself king of Yen (s. States 8) and defeated a Ts'in army, beheading its general. There were several rebellions, fightings and murders.

385 Ch'ung 冲 of the Mo-jung proclaimed himself emperor of Western Yen (s. States 8), which lasted only for ten years. He conquered Ch'ang-an. Kien of Ts'in (G. 579) was captured by Yao Ch'ang 姚萇 (G. 2428) of the After Ts'in and executed. Kien's son Fu P'ei 苻丕 proclaimed himself emperor of the Former Ts'in (s. States 7), but perished soon. K'i-fu-kwo-jen 乞伏國仁 proclaimed himself Khan 單于 of West Ts'in.*

386 Ch'ung of the West Yen was murdered by his general, who raised another general on the throne, and was killed by the people. Tai (5) was revived and the name Wei (13) given to it. The emperor Chung 忠 of West Yen, appointed by the people, was also soon murdered and Yung 永 got the throne (year 386-394); he defeated Ts'in, and king P'ei was killed (G. 596).

389 Lü Kwang 呂光 proclaimed himself king of San Kiang 三江 (G. 1447). The After Ts'in carried off 50,000 captives, male and female. The queen of Ts'in's king Teng 登, lady Mao 毛, an excellent rider and archer, had several hundred men on horseback and killed over 700 enemies; when captured, she wept and reviled the general, so Ch'ang 萇 killed her.

The emperor and his minister Tao Tsz 道子 (G. 1763) gave themselves up to wine and pleasure; their associates were females, monks and nuns; all government business fell into disorder.

392 Li Liao 李暹 of Shantung petitioned to have the temple of Confucius repaired; the emperor gave no answer.

394 The After Ts'in destroys the Former Ts'in; king Teng is killed.

Movements in Liang, s. States 14-18.

396 Yen conquers Ping city 平城 of Wei.

*In Kanau.

The emperor was suffocated by his favorite concubine Chang 張 when drunk, because he told her, as she was thirty years of age, he would take a younger one (G. 1766).

- 397 安皇帝 emperor An, Wu's heir-son, reigned twenty years; (—418), was murdered in his thirty-seventh year (G. 1764).

Wang Kung 王恭 raised soldiers and had two other high officers of the same surname killed. There was also trouble in Liang and Yen.

- 398 Teh 德 of the Mo-jung went with 40,000 families southward and founded the state South-Yen in Honan. Wang Kung and Huan Hsüan 桓玄 (G. 837, son of Huan Wen) with others revolted. Kung was murdered by his own cavalry-commander, who wished to surrender to the imperial general. The kings of Yen and Wei assumed the imperial title.

- 399 Kwei 珪 divided the ministry into thirty-six departments, with 360 officers and eight heads; he appointed professors for the five Classics and increased the number of students to 3,000 and collected a library. Teh, king of South-Yen, surprised Kwang-ku 廣固 and made it his capital. The rebel Sun En 孫恩 (G. 1804) took Kuei-ki in Chekiang, killed the governor and drove over 200,000 men and women to the sea, where they sought refuge on the islands. He took the city again in the year 400 and killed the new governor. The king of S. Yen proclaimed himself emperor.

[Fa Hien 法顯, the famous Buddhist, started on his journey to India; he returned in the year 414, landing near Kiautschou.]

- 401 An officer of the After Liang assassinated his ruler and put his brother on the throne; the queen Yang 楊 committed suicide. The ruler of N. Liang was also murdered. Sun En made another inroad into the Chekiang province, when he was defeated by Liu Yü 劉裕 (G. 1375) and again at Chinkiang; he then surprised Kwangling, the present Yangchou. The ruler of After Yen was murdered; the queen-dowager then placed the uncle of the murdered king on the throne, who had the murderer executed.

- 402 Yüan Hien 元顯, son of Tao Tsz (s. year 389), the king of Kuei-ki, received an appointment against Huan Hsüan (s. 398), who went to open rebellion and was joined by Liu Lao-chi. Hien's soldiers became disorganised, so that he was easily taken and killed with those around him. Lao-chi soon after strangled himself, because Hsüan took away his command and his soldiers dispersed. Sun En on a new piratical incursion into Chekiang was defeated and

drowned himself in the sea. Huan made Lu Sun 盧循, Sun's successor, governor of a city, but he plundered another city and was defeated by Liu Yü (s. year 401). Huan killed king Tao Tsz.

403 Huan Hsüan proclaimed himself king of Ts'u and soon after emperor; he sent the emperor An away to Kiukiang. When he seated himself on the throne, the platform under it broke; his courtiers grew pale, but one of them said: it is Your holy virtue being so heavy that the earth cannot sustain it, which pleased Huan.

404 Liu Yü marched from Chinkiang against Huan, who sent his brother Hien 謙 with an army to resist him. Hien suffered a severe defeat. Huan Hsüan fled, taking emperor An with him to Hukuang, and being defeated again and again, he went to Yünnan and was killed there; his whole family had, by this time, already been exterminated. The emperor An was reestablished.

405 Buddhism, s. States 10. Kumarajiva translated over 300 books 卷*; several thousand priests were constantly sitting in meditation in the temple 大營塔寺; from the highest dignitaries downward, the people adopted Buddhism 奉佛, nine out of ten.

A governor of the After Ts'in, a Hun (G. 1346), formed the State of Hia, s. States 19, A. D. 407.

Lu Sun (s. year 402), who had established himself in Canton, sent tribute to the court and some medicine named "help to wisdom" for Liu Yü, who had defeated him. Liu Yü returned a soup called "life supplemented," indicating he had deserved death.

407 King Hi of Yen (State 8) was murdered by his adopted son, who founded the N. Yen (State 20).

409 Liu Yü defeated S. Yen and besieged its capital. Hing of Ts'in marched against Hia and was defeated. An officer murdered the king of N. Yen (20) and took the throne. In Wei (State 13) the king was murdered by his son, who was killed by his step-brother, the appointed heir.

410 S. Yen was destroyed with the loss of its capital; the king was executed.

Lu Sun (s. the year 402) marched from Canton into Hukuang and surprised several cities. Liu Yü defeated him and chased him back; he was finally executed in Annam in the year 411.

412 The king of W. Ts'in was murdered (s. States 12).

414 S. Liang was exterminated by Western Ts'in.

415 Great drought in Posterior Ts'in.

* Also the Diamond Sutra.

- 416 Two Yao 姚 joined in rebellion in Posterior Ts'in (States 10), but were annihilated.
- 417 Liu Yü takes Lo-yang and makes an end of Posterior Ts'in, after Ch'ang-an, its capital, had been taken; king Hung surrendered, was carried away and beheaded.
- 418 Liu Yü left his second son I-ch'en 義興 with some generals in charge of Ch'ang-an. The king of Hia made an attack, but was beaten back by two generals. One of the generals killed the other and was beheaded for it by another high officer, who was killed by I-ch'en. This gave the king of Hia an opportunity to take Ch'ang-an by surprise. Liu Yü murdered his emperor.
- 419 恭皇帝 emperor Kung, younger brother of An, reigned two years; was murdered in his thirty-seventh year (G. 1765).

The king of Hia called a retired scholar into his presence and had him executed for his extreme temerity.

- 420 Liu Yü, who had already the title king of Sung, assumed the imperial title and degraded the emperor; he kept him at a city in Hukuang, guarded by soldiers.

Eastern Tsin (s. year 317) had ruled 104 years under eleven emperors; both Tsin 156 years under fifteen emperors.

Division between the *North* and *South* of China (420-589*).

The *Liu Sung* 劉宋 (420-479) and *North Wei* 北魏 (386-534).

Besides *Sung*, six other States had assumed sovereign power in China at this time, i.e., *Wei*, Hia, N. Liang, W. Liang, N. Yen and W. Ts'in. Of these perished W. Liang 421, Hia and W. Ts'in 431, N. Yen 436, N. Liang 439. From 439 only *Sung* and *Wei* divided China between themselves. *Sung* perished in 479 and Ts'i took its place (479-502), followed in the year 502 by Liang and in 557 by Ch'en (557-589). In 555 After-Liang (-587) branched off from Liang. *Wei* in the North split in the year 534 into *W. Wei* and *E. Wei*. *E. Wei* perished in 550; *W. Wei* perished in 557 and After-Chou (557-581) took its place. *Sui* united all in the year 589.

* This is the period of the "Former five Dynasties" 前五代 or the "Southern and Northern Dynasties" 南北朝, 420-618. [The period of the "Later five Dynasties" 後五代 is much later, 907-960]. The number "five" refers to the southern States: 1. *Sung* 420-479. 2. *Ts'i* 479-502. 3. *Liang* 502-557 (from which rose *Hou Liang* 555-587) and 4. *Ch'en* 557-588, and 5. to *Sui* 589-618.

420 Liu Yü as 高祖武帝 emperor Kao-tsu Wu, reigned three years; he died in his sixty-seventh year of life (G. 1375). He ordered the officer Chang Wei 張偉 to poison the dethroned emperor. Chang preferred to take the poison himself and died. Wu then sent some soldiers over the wall; they suffocated their victim, because he refused to take the poison which they offered him. Wu, at the head of all the officers, performed the ceremony of public weeping for three days.

423 Liu I-fu, called 少帝 emperor Shao, eldest son of Liu Yü, reigned one year; was murdered in his nineteenth year of life (G. 1314).

Wei built a wall, over 2,000 li long, in Shensi against the incursions of northern barbarians.

Ts'ui Hao 崔浩 (G. 2035), a governor of the State of Wei, disliked the doctrines of Lao-tsz and Chuang-tsz as not being in accordance with human feelings. He did not believe in Buddhism, because it was a foreign religion 胡神. He became, however, converted by the Taoist priest K'ou Kien-chih 寇謙之 (G. 984), who pretended to have received special revelations from Lao-tsz. Hao then presented the priest's book to the king to get its teaching sanctioned. The king consented and made provision for a sacrifice to the Great Mountain of the South. Kien-chih was installed as Heavenly teacher 天師 in P'ing-ch'eng 平城,* the capital of Wei; a place of worship, five stories in height, was erected for him and 128 priests admitted, who received free clothing and food.

The emperor was murdered by his minister Sü 徐 and two other ministers, after having been dethroned for about one month.

424 太祖文帝 Emperor Wen, third son of Liu Yü, reigned thirty years; murdered by his heir-son when forty-seven years old (G. 1315). The three regicides also killed the new emperor's brother, the second son of Liu Yü.

426 The three regicides were exterminated with their adherents in Sung. Wei conquered some places of Hia, and in the following year, 427, its capital, T'ung-wan 統萬, where they captured the ruler of Hia in the year 428, but suffered a reverse soon after; the Hia re-took Ch'ang-an.

[427 Death of the famous poet T'ao Ch'ien 陶潛 (365-427.)]

429 Ts'ui Hao (s. year 423) became commander-in-chief of Wei. He was a good astrologer; the king often went to him on inquiry about strange events and received full information. Earthquake in Ts'in.

* Tat'ung-hsien in Shansi.

430 Sung attacked Wei and took possession of Honan, but was soon beaten back.

On the death of the king of Yen, his brother Hung 弘 killed the heir-son and took the throne.

No rain fell in West Ts'in from the first to the ninth month. Sung coined money of four chu 銖. Another war with Wei.

431 Hia destroyed the State of West Ts'in, the king was captured and executed. Ku-t'ai 滑臺 was invested by Wei, and heroically defended by Chu Siu-chih 朱脩之, who held his city for several months till overcome by hunger; Wei honored his heroism. Another Sung general fought over thirty battles with Wei, till his provisions were burnt. He was pursued by those of Wei, who had learned from deserters of his exhausted condition. He deceived them by piling up sand-heaps at night, putting some grain on the top; when the soldiers of Wei saw it in the morning, the deserters were killed for false information and the Sung army got away in safety. (G. 1873.) The State of Hia was extinguished.

Ts'ui Hao became minister of instruction in Wei, and Chang-sun Tao-sheng 長孫道生 minister of public works. The latter was famous for his purity and economy 性清儉. He did not change the bear-skin under his saddle for several tens of years.

436 The minister of works in Sung was executed with his eleven sons and two colonels from fear of their power. (G. 1873). Wei rejoiced that the Wu fellows 吳子輩 (designation of Sung people in Wei) now ceased to be formidable. Wei destroyed N. Yen; its king fled to Korea. In Sung, a celestial sphere 渾天儀 was cast.

438 Four kinds of learning were established in Sung: Hsuan 玄, Taoism; Sz 史, History; Wen 文, Literature; Ju 儒, Confucianism.

439 Wei destroyed N. Liang. Ts'ui Hao and Kao Yün 高允 (G. 970) were ordered to revise the history of the State.

442 The king of Wei received the book on magic 符籙 of the Taoist sanctuary (s. year 423).

Sung repaired the temple of Confucius.

446 The Buddhist priests of Ch'ang-an entertained some officers of the king of Wei on his visit. They noticed weapons there and reported it to the minister Ts'ui Hao, who disliked Buddhism. He had a search made, when many wine-vessels and women, hidden away, were found. The minister thereupon induced the king to have all priests within the kingdom killed, their buildings and books

destroyed. The heir prince Huang 晃, who had favored Buddhism, gave them warning, so that many could hide themselves and their books, but no temple nor pagoda was left standing within the State.

Sung sent the general T'an Ho-chih 檀和之 against Annam; he gained a victory by mock-lions, which brought the elephants of the enemy into confusion. An immense amount of treasure was captured.

447 Money was coined in Sung, double the usual size, but withdrawn in 449.

450 The King of Wei gave orders to Ts'ui Hao (s. year 439) that in writing the history of the State they should aim at the truth 務從實錄. Hao wrote commentaries on the Yi-king, Lun-yü, Shih and Shu, which were praised by flatterers as superior to those of Ma, Cheng, Wang and Kia. They induced him to have his work on history cut in stone, which he did; and he had the tablets (slabs) placed east of the altar of Heaven at the roadside. The people of Wei became angry and slandered Hao, because he exposed the evils of the State. The King (emperor Wu of Wei) decreed the execution of Hao with all his family (relations of father, mother, and wife) and his assistants. The crown prince interceded for Kao Yun, who thus was saved.

Sung attacked Wei and captured several cities, but when the king of Wei approached with an army superior in numbers, the Sung general fled, but was pursued and beaten with a loss of many thousand men. The king of Wei sacrificed first-class victims to Confucius in Lu.

452 The king of Wei was murdered by an officer, who put king Yü 余 on the throne and then murdered him too. He was executed in consequence, with the relations of father, mother and wife, when Wen Ch'eng, son of the deceased crown prince, ascended the throne in Wei.

453 Emperor Wen was murdered by his son Shao 劬 (G. 1348), because he was to be degraded as crown prince. Shao also murdered three ministers (G. 2564) and took the throne. His third brother, Tsün 駿, marched with an army against him, dethroned him with the help of the people of Sung and had Shao and another brother executed. (G. 2180).

454 世祖孝武皇帝 Emperor Hiao Wu, third son of Wen, reigned eleven years to his thirty-fifth year (G. 1295).

Sung coined money (four grains) with the designation of the period 孝建.

- 460 The emperor ploughed the consecrated field; the empress inspected the culture of the silkworm, and the dowager attended to the ceremonies. There was building and restoration of palaces, etc., going on in Sung.

A brother of Hiao Wu rebelled, but was killed and his accomplice cruelly executed.

- 465 Liu Yeh, called 廢帝 emperor Fei, eldest son of Hiao Wu, reigned eight months, and was murdered in his nineteenth year (G. 1366).

Coins of two grains were cast in Sung.

The emperor of Wei died and his son succeeded as Hien Wen Ti 獻文帝. The emperor of Sung confined his three uncles in the palace. Tsz Hsün 子勛 (G. 1364), brother of the emperor, marched troops against the capital, when the emperor was murdered by one of the high officers and his uncle Yü 或 placed on the throne (G. 1376).

- 466 太宗明帝 emperor Ming, eleventh son of Wen (s. year 424, G. 1376), reigned seven years to his thirty-fourth year. Tsz Hsün, who called himself emperor, was defeated and decapitated. Two governors, who had sympathised with him, offered their submission, but an army being marched against them, they rose in rebellion and joined the Wei State. Ming, being childless, gave a palace lady to an attendant Li 李 and, when she was with child, took her back; this son Yü 昱 was made crown prince; other women, who had sons, were killed and their sons taken by favorites as their own.

- 467 Wei took several districts from Sung, and two more in the year 469, when the city of Tung Yang 東陽 was conquered after a siege of three years; its valiant governor was carried as prisoner of war to the capital of Wei and treated badly.

- 471 The emperor of Sung had three brothers murdered to secure succession to his adopted favorite.

The emperor Hien Wen of Wei resigned the throne to his five-year old son, devoting himself to Taoism and Buddhism.

The Sung emperor had a splendid Buddhist temple built 湘宮寺, and spoke of it as his merit, when a high officer replied: It has been made from the people's money, selling their children and pawning their women; what merit is therein? The emperor showed some emotion and had the temple torn down.

473 蒼梧王 'king Ts'ang Wu, adopted son of Ming (s. year 466), reigned four years; was murdered in his 14th year of life (G. 1377).

Wei gave to K'ung Ch'eng 孔乘, the head of the descendants of Confucius in the 28th generation, the title 崇聖大夫.

476 The empress dowager of Wei, Fung 馮, assassinated her husband the ex-emperor for killing her paramour.

477 順帝 emperor Shun (G. 1294). The commander-in-chief Siao Tao-ch'eng 蕭道成 murdered the young king Ts'ang Wu, because he had shot arrows at him when asleep. He placed Ming's third son on the throne, who reigned two years and was murdered in his fourteenth year. The governor Shen Yu-chih 沈攸之 marched troops against Siao, but was defeated and committed suicide in the year 478. Three high officers made an attempt against Siao's life, but failed and lost their own (G. 497). Siao gradually usurped all power and brought the Sung dynasty to an end in the year 479. It had reigned sixty years under eight rulers.

The *Ts'İ* 齊 Dynasty (479-502).

479 太祖高帝 emperor Kao. He was a descendant of Siao Ho 蕭何 of the Han, twenty-fourth generation (G. 714). Kao had not only the ex-emperor murdered, but also his whole family, i.e., all relations of the imperial house. He despised precious things and said, if he should reign for ten years, gold and mud would then have the same value. He reigned, however, only four years and died in his fifty-fourth year.

483 世祖武帝 emperor Wu, eldest son of Kao, reigned eleven years and died in his fifty-fourth year (G. 715).

The palace lady Lin 林 bore a son, who was made heir to the throne; his mother had to kill herself.

Wei forbade marriage between people of the same family name.

484 The son of the emperor, Tsz Liang 子良, was devoted to Buddhism and called the best priests to teach it. Fan Ch'en-sheng 范縝 maintained that there was no Buddha, the spirit becoming destroyed; for the form (body) was the substance of the spirit, the spirit the operation or quality 用 of the body, as sharpness was of a knife; there being no sharpness left after the destruction of the knife, how could a spirit remain after the death of the body? Tsz Liang admired his talent, but regretted his disbelieving Buddhism.

487 Kao Yün 高允 (G. 970), governor of Hien-yang, died in his ninety-eighth year of life. He had served five emperors (of Wei) without reproach. Known to be charitable and quiet, fond of reading, instructing men in what is good, diligent, impartial to relatives, and not forgetting old obligations, he was much respected by the dowager and the emperors.

492 Wei restored the sacrifices to Yao, Shun, Yü, duke of Chou and Confucius. The emperor went in person to offer worship and sacrifices.

Ts'i ordered Shen Yo 沈約 (G. 1702) to write the history of Sung.

494 高宗明帝 emperor Ming (G. 709) a brother of Kao. He murdered two grandsons of Wu that had been placed on the throne, one after the other, as Wu's son had died before (G. 698-699). Ming reigned five years and died in his fortieth year. He had also murdered seven uncles and seventeen cousins.

495 Wei attacked Ts'i, but was repulsed. The king of Wei sacrificed to Confucius, promoted the head of his family, had the grave repaired and a stone-tablet erected.

Wei prohibited foreign language 胡語, adopting the Chinese, collected rare books and regulated the measures and weights. This was the first search for books, more than 500 years after that under Ch'eng of the Han, B. C. 26.

A high-school was opened for children of nobles, and four lower schools (preparatory) in Lo-yang, the new capital.

496 Wei changed the family name To-ba 拓拔 into Yüan 元, for To meant 土 earth, the origin of all things. The officers of government were allowed three years of mourning (leave of absence).

In Ts'i the removal of all gold and silver ornaments from horses and carriages was decreed.

The crown prince Sün 恂 of Wei disliked study; as he developed corpulency, he found the climate of Honan too hot and longed to get back to his northern home; he also wore the forbidden foreign dress; an officer remonstrated, whom Sün, with his own hand, cut down; for this the emperor degraded him to the level of the common people, and as he planned rebellion, he was executed.

The law of responsibility of the whole family, if one guilty member escaped, was abolished in Wei.

498 In Ts'i the governor of Kuei-ki 會稽 rebelled, but was defeated and killed.

- 499 東昏侯 Tung Hun Hou (G. 711), oldest son of Ming, reigned two years, and was set aside by his brother and assassinated, nineteen years old. Fung 馮, the empress of Wei, had intrigues with the eunuch Kao 高 and did other evil things; he was sent into the back-palace. Ts'i attacked Wei, but suffered a defeat. The emperor of Wei died and his son succeeded as Hsüan Wu 宣武帝. The emperor of Ts'i killed several of his highest dignitaries.
- 500 One governor of Ts'i rebelled and joined Wei, two others attacked the capital, but were defeated and killed. The emperor had also the people burdened on behalf of his extravagancies in building a new palace for the old one, that was burnt at Nanking, so that his brother and another relative dethroned him.
- 501 和帝 emperor Ho, eighth son of Ming, reigned one year; was dethroned and killed in his sixteenth year of life (G. 712).

Tung Hun was murdered by the people of Ts'i. He then received the title Hou, *i. e.*, marquis. His beautiful favorite *P'an Fei* 潘妃 (G. 1605), whose footsteps were "*golden lilies*," was also killed as a dangerous person, that had brought ruin to the State of Ts'i.

The governor Siao Yen 蕭衍 (G. 720) had induced Tung Hun's brother to take the imperial title, he himself marching with the latter's consent upon Nanking, which he took. When emperor Ho was on his way to Nanking a few months later, he learned that Siao had already assumed the supreme power and he was forced to resign the throne to Siao.

This ended the dynasty of Ts'i, which had lasted twenty-four years under seven rulers.

The *Liang* Dynasty 梁 (502-557).

- 502 高祖武帝 emperor Wu, the Siao Yen mentioned above (G. 720), reigned forty-eight years and died when eighty-six years old.

The emperor sent an officer to the place where the ex-emperor Ho lived and offered him pure gold to swallow to end his life. Ho answered, For to die I need no gold, strong wine will do. He drank himself deeply drunk, when the officer suffocated him.

The emperor had two boxes put up in a public place; when officers wished to say something and dared not do so openly, they put it in writing in the wooden box; when people had a complaint, they put a statement of it in the stone box.

503 There was a famine in Wei (Shensi); officers were sent about to relieve the poor.

Ki Fan's father 吉玢 had got falsely accused and condemned to death; when the fifteen years' old son offered to die instead, the emperor, after having examined the boy's motives that only filial devotion moved him, pardoned the father.

505 Professors of the five Classics were appointed and schools established in the provinces and prefectural cities. The first temple of Confucius was built in Liang. The most plentiful years in Liang; thirty cash a huh 斛 of grain.

506 The prohibition of salt manufacture was abolished in Wei.

507 Wei and allies, several 100,000 men, attacked the city Chung-li of Liang, but were defeated. Kao Chao 高驤, brother of the favorite lady in Wei, murdered the empress Yü 于 and her son; the favorite was then made empress in the year 508.

509 Liang asked Wei for peace, which Wei did not grant. In Wei Buddhism was much favored; over 3,000 monks arrived from Turkestan, for whom the emperor had over 1,000 buildings erected in connection with the Yung-ming temple 永明寺. Other temples besides were being built until the year 512, to the number of 13,000 in the State of Wei. About Buddhism in the State Liang s. G. 1622.

512 Hū 胡 was the first crown prince in Wei who was relieved from the obligation to kill his *mother*. This had been the established law, in order to prevent intriguing and confusion in the palace.

513 At Shou-yang 壽陽, a city in Kiangnan (Wei), the water rose by incessant rain, so that it stood in the second floor. There were earthquakes in two districts all the year long; many people were killed or injured.

515 Emperor *Hiao Ming* 孝明 ascended the throne of Wei after the death of his father. Kao Chao (s. year 507) was executed; the empress, his sister, became a nun; a palace lady, Hu 胡, the mother of Hū, the present emperor (s. year 512), was raised to the dignity of empress.

516 The Wei river in Liang was diked in to a distance of nine *li*; the dyke was below 140 cubits, above forty-five and twenty high; poplars were planted along it and a camp was entrenched on it. This work was done with the intention to flood a city of Wei and then take possession of it. The dyke burst in the ninth month with the noise of thunder, heard to 300 *li* distance; over 100,000 people of the Liang were drowned.

Empress Hu had Buddhistic temples and pagodas built of great size and splendor.

- 517 In the official manufactories of Liang the people were forbidden to weave figures of genii, birds and beasts in cloth, to avoid their being afterwards cut to pieces (!) ; animal sacrifices to ancestral temples were prohibited and vegetable ones substituted.
- 518 The dowager Hu 胡 of Wei murdered the elder dowager Kao 高. She sent two messengers, one of them a monk, to Turkestan for Buddhist books, and they brought back 170 of them.

Wei repaired the Classics cut in stone in three kinds of characters.

- 520 Yuan Ai 元乂, the brother-in-law of the dowager Hu, caused the execution of a high dignitary and the confinement of the dowager to the north-palace. Arrival of Bodhidharma at Canton (G. 14).

- 523 Iron money was coined in Liang.

- 525 A rebellion in Wei in the year 524 was soon repressed. The dowager came in favor again and had Yuan Ai executed. Another rebellion was also put down (G. 979).

- 527 Fang King-peh 房景伯 was made a governor; he employed the son of one, who had offended him, as bearer of a flag of truce to brigands; they surrendered, regarding this messenger as an assurance that King-peh would not remember past wrongs. His mother, Ch'iao 翟, understood the Classics. A woman complained that her son was unfilial; King-peh told this to his mother, who said: "The people do not yet know the rules of behavior; there is no reason for severity." She called the woman to dine with them and the son to wait in the hall below; he repented within ten days and begged to return home. Ch'iao said, this is only shame in the face, not from the heart, and kept him longer; after twenty days he knocked his head on the ground, so that blood came out, and the mother begged with tears for permission to return. The son was afterwards obedient and got a name in filial piety. The emperor Wu of Liang went into a monastery as a bonze.

- 528 The dowager Hu of Wei poisoned the emperor, her son, who was fourteen years old; she was conscious of her lewd conduct, and wished to hold the reins in her hands, she placed therefore the three-year old child Chao 釗 on the throne. The governor Rh Chu-jung 爾朱榮 raised soldiers and marched to the capital, where he put an uncle of the poisoned emperor on the throne and drowned the dowager Hu, though she had already become a Buddhist-nun, with

the child-emperor, in the Yellow River. A palace lady, Rh Chu, was made empress. Rh Chu-jung killed 2,000 men, beginning with the royal family. A fugitive prince of Wei, Yüan Hao 元昊 was installed as king of Wei in Liang and an army placed at his disposal.

- 529 He assumed the title emperor and marched into the State of Wei, took several cities and the capital; the emperor (of Wei) Tsz Yu 子攸* escaped into Honan. When Rh Chu crossed the Yellow River, Hao fled and died. Tsz Yu then came back to Lo-yang, his capital.

The emperor Wu of Liang entered a monastery again, where he lived as a common monk. His ministers redeemed him, after begging three times, for 1,000 million cash.

- 530 The emperor of Wei attended diligently to the governmental business; he was advised to remove Rh Chu-jung. He called him to the capital and had him executed together with the prime minister. He received many congratulations for it. The son of Jung made his escape the same night with his father's troops and, joined with Chao 兆 the brother of Jung, proclaimed Yi 暉 as king of the East-sea. Chao then went to Lo-yang and carried away the reigning emperor, who was executed at some distance. Chao suffered a defeat from a brigand, but succeeded to crush him with the help of the officer Kao Huan 高歡 (G. 954), who was made governor of six important cities.

- 531 The minister dethroned Yi again and placed his uncle Kung 恭 (emperor Tsie-wen 節閔) on the throne. The crown prince T'ung 統 of Liang died (G. 717), a mild, even-tempered, literate, benevolent man, but without musical taste. His death was lamented at court and in the open country.

Kao Huan of Wei defeated the Rh Chu party under Chao and made Lang 朗 emperor (=An-ting-wang).

- 532 Kao Huan dethroned Lang again and raised Hiao Wu 孝武, who murdered the former emperors Kung, Lang and Yi. He made Kao Huan's daughter his empress. Huan had the leaders of the Rh Chu party executed together with Chao in the following year, 533.

- 534 Huan rose in rebellion, when Hiao Wu fled to the governor Yü Wen T'ai 宇文泰 (G. 2537), who had just defeated and executed a governor that had killed another governor. Huan entered Lo-yang and made the eleven-year old prince Shan-kien 善見 emperor

*=Chuang Ti of Wei (528-530).

- (Hiao-ting 孝靜) of **Eastern Wei**. Hiao Wu remained emperor of the **Western Wei** (G. 2549). T'ai poisoned the emperor Hiao Wu and placed emperor Wen 文 on the throne (in Western Wei).
- 537 Huan of Eastern Wei engaged in war with W. Wei, but was defeated by T'ai.
- 538 For obtaining some relics (nails, hair, and bones) of Tathagatagupta 如來, a great amnesty was proclaimed in Liang.
- 539 Pencil and paper was placed at one of the palace-gates of Wei, inviting suggestions.
- 541 T'ai of W. Wei, in order to increase the power of the State and the wealth of the people, gained the assistance of Su Cho 蘇綽. He diminished the number of officials, appointed two superintendents for the military colonies and prepared six memorials urging the necessity (1) of purity of mind, (2) the extension of education, (3) the development of all resources, (4) the engagement of those qualified for office, (5) that mercy should mitigate legal judgment, (6) of aiming at the equalization of duties in taxation and service. Those of the candidates that could not recite these six memos, were not advanced in office.
- 545 The emperor of Liang adopted the Buddhist mode of living; he ate coarse rice and soup, had common cloth for garments, wore a hat for three years and used one cover for two years. The ladies' dresses did not touch the ground, he had no inclination to wine, music was not performed except in religious services, he remained always in full dress and showed utmost politeness, even to small officials; he went to excess in his mildness to criminals, so that murder was committed even in open daylight.
- 546 The emperor lectured on the 三慧經 "San-hui-king" (a Buddhist book). A seven-storied pagoda caught fire, which the emperor said was caused by the devil; so he built one twelve stories high, but it was not finished because of Hou King's 侯景 rebellion (G. 665). The depreciation of money (paper?) was forbidden without success; what was nominally 100 went down to 35. E. Wei moved the stone-classics to Yieh 鄴, its capital.
- 547 Kao Huan (s. year 530), the minister of E. Wei, died. He was an energetic character, severe as leader of troops, decided in judicial cases and economical in habits.
- Wei abolished the punishment of castration. Hou King rebelled and joined W. Wei, but soon afterwards he joined Liang, and was made king of Honan and 30,000 soldiers were sent to

support him. The emperor of Liang became a Buddhist monk. The ruler of E. Wei was a strong man, a good archer and fond of learning. His general, Kao Ch'eng 高澄, envied him. Drinking together he challenged the king, who could not respond and got angry; Kao ordered a subaltern to box the king, who went out. He found an officer willing to assassinate Kao; but Kao heard of it, entered the palace, confined the king and had the would-be assassin boiled.

Liang blocked a river to flood a city of E. Wei (s. year 516).

548 E. Wei marched 500 iron chariots against Hou King, whose troops dispersed and he himself fled to Liang, where he was made the protector of a province. He soon rebelled. The governor Cheng Te 正德 (an adopted son of Wu, but no longer heir to the throne, because a son had been born to emperor Wu) joined him. They surrounded the capital; an army, sent to relieve it, was defeated and dispersed. Hou's army already suffered want, as Wu's generals had cut off his supplies.

549 He therefore entered into a deceitful peace negotiation. The emperor was deceived and concluded a treaty, but Hou did not raise the siege. When scarcity prevailed in the city, the emperor could get no more vegetables for his meals and had to eat hundreds of eggs. Hou keeping up his attack day and night, forced an entrance; surrounded by 500 soldiers in mail he met the emperor who, remaining perfectly calm and dignified, made so deep an impression on Hou that the perspiration was flowing down and he afterwards said he would not see him again. The emperor was kept so close and meanly that he got ill and died from anger at not getting what he wanted. Cheng Te asked the help of another governor against Hou King, but his letter was intercepted and he was strangled for it. An attempt made against the life of Hou by the son of a governor, failed, his bow breaking, and he was executed. Brigands killed Kao Ch'eng of E. Wei. His brother Yang 洋 took his office and altered some unpractical regulations.

Chang Ch'eng 張曠, a governor of Liang, was captured and brought before King, who wished to keep him alive, but Ch'eng, preferring death, refused to accept the pardon for one of his sons; this so enraged King that all of them were killed, also another high officer. The governor Cheng Pa-sien 陳霸先 raised troops to suppress Hou King.

550 太宗簡文帝 emperor Kien Wen, third son of Wu, reigned two years; was murdered in his forty-ninth year (G. 706).

- Kao Yang assumed the title emperor of Northern Ts'i 北齊 (canonised as Wen Hsüan 文宣). The E. Wei thus perished (G. 964 and 966). In Wei military instruction was given during the intervals of agricultural work; thus the first militia 府兵 was formed.
- 551 The lord of Wei died (G. 2537), the heir-son succeeded. Hou King (s. year 546) dethroned the emperor of Liang and killed the heir-prince. He placed Yu-chang, a grandson of Wu, on the throne. Soon after he murdered the dethroned emperor and set aside his new emperor, assuming the imperial reign himself. The new emperor of Ts'i also murdered the dethroned emperor of E. Wei.
- 552 世祖孝元帝 emperor Hiao Yüan, seventh son of Wu, reigned three years; was murdered in his forty-seventh year. One of his eyes was smaller than the other (G. 705).

The two high officers, Wang Seng-pien 王僧辯 (G. 2217) and Ch'en Pa-hsien 陳霸先 (G. 236) were sent against Hou King, who was defeated and fled to Wu (Suchou). There he was killed by his own general and his corpse eaten by the people, even the bones. His wife, a daughter of emperor Hien Wen, whom Hou had murdered, joined in the public demonstration. His five sons were killed in N. Ts'i. The emperor killed king Tung 棟 (his brother); before he ascended the throne.

Robbers carried the imperial seals from Liang to Ts'i.

- 554 The minister of Wei was dethroned and then murdered his ruler and raised the king Ts'i. The historian Wei Shou 魏收 of Ts'i wrote the history of Wei, in which he raised those he liked to heaven and disparaged those he disliked. He was censured by three officers. On his complaining to the king, the three were cast into prison, where two of them died.

The emperor of Liang discoursed on Lao Tsz. Wei sent three generals with 50,000 soldiers against Liang. The emperor still continued his lectures, till some traitors opened the West-gate to the beleaguering army. He then burned 140,000 volumes of books, saying he had read 10,000 volumes and yet he had been unable to avoid such a day of disaster! After his surrender he was first imprisoned in the camp and then executed together with his heir-son and followers. Ch'a 譽 of Wei with the title king of Liang, proclaimed himself emperor Hsüan 宣 of the Posterior Liang 後梁 (G. 697).

- 555 敬帝 emperor King, ninth son of emperor Yüan (s. 552), reigned two years; was dethroned and murdered in his sixteenth

year (G. 701). Ts'i had sent an uncle of Yüan, the count of Cheng-yang 貞陽 (G. 723), who was placed on the throne by Wang Seng-pien (s. year 552); Yüan's son was declared crown prince. Ts'i sent 1,800,000 men to build a wall over 900 li in length. The emperor of Ts'i wished to unite Taoists and Buddhists. After a discussion of scholars in his presence, from both sides, he decided for Buddhism and ordered the Taoists to shave their heads and become Buddhists; only four refused and were executed.

Ch'en Pa-hsien executed Wang Seng-pien and dethroned Cheng; emperor King (Hsiao Fang-chih) was established.

556 In Ts'i over 300,000 men were employed to build a palace. The ruler of Ts'i was at first attentive to the government-business, but soon was absorbed by pleasure. The minister Li Chi 李集 remonstrated personally and compared him to Kie and Chou. The ruler had him bound and put into flowing water; taken out after some time, the ruler asked whether he was like Kie and Chou; the answer was, there is not much difference. This was repeated four times with the same answer. The ruler laughing aloud said: such a fool lives in the empire! He set him free, but when he after a while returned to remonstrate again, he was beheaded.

The emperor abdicated the throne in favor of his powerful minister. This brought the dynasty to an end. The Liang dynasty had lasted fifty-four years under four rulers; Wei 149 years under fifteen rulers, when it divided into the Eastern and Western Wei; the Eastern lasted seventeen years under one ruler, the Western twenty-two years under three rulers.

The Ch'en Dynasty 陳 (557-588).

(Appended are the *N. Ts'i* and *N. Chou*.)

557 高祖武帝 emperor Wu (s. Ch'en Pa-hsien, 552). He caused emperor King to abdicate in his favor, reigned three years and died in his fifty-ninth of age (G. 236).

Western Wei ended when the duke of Chou began his reign as emperor Hiao Min 孝愍 of N. Chou 北周. An uncle, Yü-wen Hu 宇文護 (G. 2534), made himself commander-in-chief and premier; he murdered the ex-emperor; soon after he murdered his cousin

also, the reigning emperor, and a minister; he placed the emperor's half-brother on the throne as 世宗明帝 emperor Ming (G. 2538).

Coinage of money 四柱錢; one coin equal to *twenty cash*; smaller money was prohibited.

558 Wu had the ex-emperor of Liang executed. He then went into a Buddhist monastery taking the vows.

559 The ruler of Ts'i executed twenty-five families related to the royal house of Wei and had nineteen families imprisoned, but soon all relations of the Yüan 元 family were exterminated; on the whole 721 persons. Yüan-king-an 元景安, a magistrate, wished to exchange his family name for Kao 高; a relative of his for speaking against it was denounced to the ruler and executed. The family-name Kao was granted to King-an; he thus escaped from being slaughtered with all belonging to the Yüan family.

560 世祖文帝 emperor Wen, nephew of Wu, whose two sons were, at the time, absent as captives in N. Chou. He reigned seven years and died in his fifteenth year (G. 214).

The emperor of Chou was poisoned by his minister Hu, and emperor Wu 武, his brother, put in his place (G. 2538 and 2539). The uncle of the emperor Fei 廢 of Ts'i dethroned him and reigned instead as Hiao Chao emperor 孝昭帝; he had the ex-emperor soon murdered (G. 964 and 966).

561 Chou coined money, five cash a piece.

The ruler of Ts'i died from the effect of being thrown from his frightened horse; his younger brother succeeded him as emperor Wu-ch'eng 武成 (G. 946) of N. Ts'i.

562 Ch'a of the Posterior Liang (s. year 554) died, and his heir-son succeeded as Shih-tsung 世宗 (G. 707).

563 Chou entertained the old in the academy.

564 First use of the jade-tablet; every officer at audience had to hold one with his two hands before his nose. The ruler of Ts'i killed his brother's son.

565 He then abdicated in favor of the crown prince.

567 廢帝 emperor Fei (G. 241), son of Wen, reigned two years; was dethroned by his uncle and died in his nineteenth year.

569 高宗宣帝 emperor Hsüan (G. 225), younger brother of Wen, invested as king of An-ching 安成; he murdered the emperor's brother and degraded Fei. He reigned fourteen years and died when fifty-two years old.

A governor rose in rebellion, but was defeated and beheaded.

572 The chancellor Yü-wen-hu (s. year 557) was executed in Chou by order of Wu, the ruler there. The heir-prince took a consort and had intercourse with low persons, so that his father gave him a preceptor, which he did not like.

574 Emperor Wu of Chou fixed the order of precedence of the three religions—Confucianism, Taoism, and Buddhism. Later on he prohibited Taoism and Buddhism (G. 2539), had their scriptures and images destroyed, the priests had to return into the world, and all illegal temples and shrines were demolished. An edifice was dedicated to the unification of the religion of the sages.

576 The ruler of Ts'i indulged in pleasures, he played the guitar (Pi-pa) and composed a piece "Without grief." Chou invaded his territory; defeated, he fled from one place to another, till captured and executed in the year 577. Chou broke down the fine palaces and reduced the number of females in the harem to two of the 2nd, three of the 3rd, and four of the 4th class, etc.

578 Wu of Chou marched against the Ta-chüé 突厥, but returned ill, and died. His son succeeded as emperor Hsüan 宣, who ordered the death of his uncle by strangulation, being suspicious of his dignity and excessive power.

579 Chou adopted a penal code. Lo-yang was subdued by 40,000 soldiers, and the Classics, cut in stone, conveyed there. The lord of Chou abdicated in favor of his son, emperor Ching 靜 (G. 2539); he revived Taoist and Buddhist idolatry. Coins were cast; one equal to 1,000 cash.

580 Every person entering the market in Chou had to pay a tax of one mace. The governor of Sui 隋, Yang Kien 楊堅, brought himself into prominence, another governor marched against him, but was defeated and committed suicide. Kien called himself king and soon after emperor.

581 He deposed the emperor of Chou and exterminated the whole tribe of 宇文 Yü Wen. His counsellor Su Wei 蘇威 advised relief in taxes and in socage, also that the examinations for office should be only in the Canon of Filial Piety, which was all granted. The emperor was murdered at the command of his successor. The colour of garments was now legally fixed; the imperial yellow had its beginning from this law. New coins were cast of five grains 銖; the weight of 1,000 pieces being equal to four catties and two ounces. One of the high officers felt himself neglected, he engaged a Taoist,

to appeal for happiness to the Invisible. A slave-girl told the officer that she felt bewitched; he then separated from his mother. Impeached by an official, he lost his position; the emperor presenting a copy of the Canon of Filial Piety to him with the order to study it carefully, sent him back to live with his mother.

The emperor ordered Pei Cheng 裴政 to revise the penal code. The penalty of death was inflicted accordingly only by strangulation and decapitation; banishment was fixed to 2,000 or 3,000 *li*; deportation divided into five grades, from one to three years; punishment by the bamboo had five degrees, from sixty to 100 blows; the lighter whipping (rattan, etc.) was also in five degrees, ten to fifty stripes.

The people were permitted to leave their families and become Buddhists, to contribute money for the writing of sacred books and the making of images.

582 The emperor Hsüan of Ch'en (a. year 569) died; his second son headed a rebellion, but was crushed. The crown prince ascended the throne.

583 後主 Hou Chu (G. 246) reigned six years, when his State was conquered by the Sui; he died four years later, being fifty-two years old. Sui collected rare books; for every volume a roll of silk was given.

584 With regard to all documents it was required that they contained only truth. Ch'en had three pavilions built, each several tens of feet high, and with as many chambers, all of fragrant wood, adorned with gold and precious stones. Such splendor of screens, curtains, dresses, etc., was never seen before. An artificial hill was raised at the foot and water was conveyed into a pond, flowers and shrubs were planted over the ground. There the emperor met with some ten men of literary fame and several poetical ladies of the palace; they enjoyed drinking and singing through whole nights.

585 Sui erected public granaries to prepare against bad years, and built a wall of 700 *li* in Shensi.

587 Sui destroyed Liang 梁 (G. 716, 722).

588 Sui overran Ch'en with an army of 518,000 men and made an end of the State. Ch'en had existed for thirty-two years under five rulers.

The Sui Dynasty 隋 (589-619).

589 高祖文皇帝 Kao-tsu, emperor Wen. His father Chung served Wei and Chou, was raised to the dignity of duke of Sui; he then took the title of king, he usurped Chou, destroyed Ch'en and united again the South of China with the North. The capital of the united empire was Ch'ang-an. He reigned sixteen years and was assassinated by his eldest son in his sixty-fourth year (G. 2367).

His two generals had an easy march to the capital Kien-kang 建康 (Nanking). The emperor fled and hid himself with some palace ladies in a well; he was discovered and captured, with him his favorite Chang Li-hua 張麗華 and lady K'ung 孔, below the other in rank. The crown prince sent a messenger to the officer Kao Kang 高穎 to save the beauty Chang, but he decapitated her. The crown prince had five high officers of Ch'en executed in Kien-kang.

The ex-emperor was brought to Ch'ang-an and presented in the ancestral temple.

Hsin Kung-i 辛公義 was appointed censor 刺史 at Min-chou 岷 in Shensi. There the people were much afraid of infection by the plague; they shunned every person suffering from the disease, so that many died from want. Hsin had the patients brought on a carriage to his residence, where he filled all his halls and attended to them. "Life and death is determined by fate; how can illness be contagious," he said; "if it were so, I should have died long ago." They thanked him, feeling ashamed; the evil custom changed, they began to be charitable one to another.

590 A high officer, Li-kün-ts'ai 李君才, told the emperor that he favored Kao Kang too much, for which the emperor ordered him to be bamboosed; as no bamboo was there, he was beaten to death with a horse-whip. Soon after in another fit of anger he had several persons killed. A rebellion in Kiangnan was suppressed; many were put to death. A few years later the emperor passed a law, that no one should be put to death before the case had been reported to him three times. This increased crime to such an extent, that the emperor went into the other extreme and gave to the mandarins almost absolute power of life over those below them. This also had soon to be given up again.

594 New music was performed. When the musician Wan Pao-chang 萬寶常 heard it, he said in tears, "it is licentious and cruel, the

States will cease before long." He burned his books saying, "Of what use are they?" and died from hunger.

There was drought and famine west of the barrier (in Shensi). The emperor sent some attendants to find out what the people had to eat. They brought refuse of beans mixed with chaff. The emperor wept, showed the dregs to his ministers, confessed his faults, abstained from wine and meat and had the people brought to Lo-yang (*i. e.*, from Shensi to Honan) to be fed. The emperor was fond of prognostication 禮祥 and calculations 小數. A high officer, Wang-shao 王劼, acted as court-astrologer and wrote a work in thirty parts, which he presented to the emperor, who ordered to have it published and distributed throughout the empire.

- 595 The emperor went in person on a pilgrimage and sacrificed to the T'ai mountain. All military weapons were collected together, thus *disarming the people*. The emperor found at first the new palace too splendidly furnished, but after the empress had arrived, she expressed herself so well satisfied with the faithfulness of the officer who had superintended the building, that he gave him a present of one million of cash and 3,000 pieces of silk.
- 596 The regulation that no artisans or merchants should receive an office, was brought out the first time. Official honor should be conferred only on scholars and farmers.
- 600 The crown prince, who had raised a beautiful concubine after the mysterious death of his wife, was degraded to the common people, and the second son Kuang 廣 was raised to the honor of heir to the throne. An earthquake occurred that day. In his older days the emperor believed deeply in Buddhism, Taoism, and Shamanism. Those who injured an image were to be punished for a misbehavior; those who did harm to a priest, for a malice.
- 601 All the high-schools in the prefectural and district-cities were abolished. The emperor disapproved the coining of classical phrases; he wished a simple, natural style.
- 603 Wang Tung 王通 (G. 2239) of Lung-men (in Shansi) presented a book in twelve chapters on "Peace," which the emperor failed to accept. Wang then taught a school and gained many scholars. He was canonised as Wen-Chung Tsz 文中子, the author of 中說.

As the emperor wished to re-establish his first-born, the second son Kuang murdered both his father and elder brother and took the throne.

605 楊帝 emperor Yang (G. 2393), second son of Kao-tsu, reigned twelve years, and was murdered in his thirty-ninth year. His favorite's beauty satisfied hunger (G. 2323). The emperor employed 2,000,000 of workmen to build palaces; 1,000,000 to excavate a canal connecting the rivers Ts'i 濟 and Huai 淮. 200,000 men were engaged to connect the capital Ch'ang-an with Kiang-tu by a canal forty steps 步 broad, lined with a tracking-path, planted with willow trees. He owned over forty palaces, and boats of all kinds to the number of several myriads. The officers hurried the workmen on, so that of ten, four to five died. His park was 200 *li* in circumference, with a lake in it of ten *li*; therein he had three islands for the genii over 100 feet high. On the margin of the lake he had sixteen villas filled with ladies of the fourth rank and all luxury. When the leaves dropped from the trees, vegetables were cut and hung up and renewed as soon as they changed color. At moonlight the emperor roamed about, accompanied by several thousand ladies on horseback. His pleasure-boats were 200 feet long and forty-five high, in four stories; the upper contained the saloons, the second had 120 cabins, the lower were occupied by the attendants. Over 80,000 men moved the boats; the shore was lined with horsemen; every prefectural city and district city had to furnish provisions up to 100 cartloads full.

606 The doctor degree Tsin Sz 進士 was, as the third, added to the two degrees already conferred on successful candidates at the examinations.

607 Chiefs of barbarian tribes from the North and the West made their submission. Over a million workmen were employed to build a wall, 400 *li* long, in Shansi.

609 The people were forbidden to keep weapons.

[The population numbered 8,700,000 households in 1,255 districts (hien).*]

610 The emperor entertained the foreign ambassadors at Lo-yang with theatricals a whole month, from nightfall to the morning; 18,000 actors performing. The foreigners asked the privilege to trade in the market of the Fêng capital, which was granted. All the guests could eat and drink at pleasure without payment. The foreigners thought it strange that so much silk was wasted hanging about, when many persons could be seen in the place not able to cover their nakedness.

* Cp. E. H. Parker, *China, Her History, Diplomacy and Commerce*, p. 133.

- 611 As the king of Korea had not appeared at court, the emperor prepared for war (G. 1790). 300 ships were built in Shantung, at which the workmen worked day and night standing over the hip in water, so that of ten, three to four died. 50,000 war-chariots had also to be built and grain transported about 1,000 miles; several 100,000 people were employed in this, day and night, so that many died. The empire came into commotion. A mountain-slip occurred in Honan.
- 612 The emperor himself led his army into Liaotung. He had first some success, but then reverses. Of his army of 1,133,800 (another account says 305,000) men he brought only 2,700 men back.
- 613 A new expedition started against Korea. As Yang Hsüan Kan 楊玄感 (G. 2381), the duke of Ch'u 楚, rose in rebellion, the emperor had to lead his soldiers back. After the rebel-leader was defeated and killed, 30,000 of his adherents were massacred, mostly people that had accepted grain, when Yang distributed the contents of the imperial granaries.
- 614 The expedition against Korea was now successfully carried out. The Koreans asked for peace. After the emperor's return the minister Yü Chih 虞質 admonished him to allow the people time, three or four years, to attend, with all diligence, to agriculture. The emperor got angry, had the bold adviser imprisoned and executed (G. 2528).
- 615 The emperor made an excursion to the North, when suddenly the Khan Shih-pi 始畢 of the Ta-chüe 突厥 (Turcomans) made an inroad and surrounded the city, wherein the emperor was; he got, however, help and was liberated after one month.
- 616 There was a great fire in the palace. All the officers presented precious things to the emperor, Su Wei 蘇威 a copy of the Shu-king. Somebody slandered him for it, and said that he did it because of that chapter in which five sons bewailed their misery caused by the emperor, their father. The emperor got angry and asked Wei about attacking Korea; as Wei's answer was not satisfactory, he was degraded to the common people.

After his dragon-boats were finished, the emperor had three admonishers executed. Two rebel-leaders were defeated and killed. The high officer Yang Yi-ch'en 楊義臣 subdued several 100,000 rebels. As a court-officer suggested to the emperor that Yang had rather too many soldiers, Yang received an imperial order to

dismiss his army, which he did and the brigands collected again. A general was sent against the Ta-chüe 突厥.

617 The debauched living of the emperor caused rebellion everywhere with about a dozen leaders (G. 703). The emperor was murdered by a distant relative.

618 恭帝侑 Yu, emperor Kung, his grandson, third son of the late crown prince 昭, was placed on the throne by the duke of T'ang, Li Yüan 李淵 (G. 1239). He reigned one year, when he was degraded by Li Yüan to a duke and died fifteen years of age. The duke of Wei 魏 Li Mi 李密 (G. 1176), who had taken Lo-yang, was defeated by Sui 隋 and joined the T'ang. The murderer of the emperor Yang, Yü-wen Huai-chi 宇文化及 (G. 2535) murdered also Hao 浩, the emperor's son, whom he had proclaimed emperor. The duke of T'ang appointed his son Shih-ming 世民 king of Ts'in; he defeated the army of Ts'in, the former king surrendered and was decapitated in the market-place. Yao Kün-su 堯君素 defended Ho-tung 河東 for Sui against the T'ang. His wife was sent below the wall and she told him "that Sui was lost, why should he trouble himself any longer?" He answered, "the empire has a name for righteousness which a woman does not know," and, drawing his bow, he killed her on the spot. When the provisions were exhausted and it became known that the capital had been taken, his attendants murdered him and surrendered. Li Mi rebelled in Shantung, but was defeated and beheaded.

619 恭帝侗 Tung, emperor Kung, the second son of the crown prince Chao 昭. He was raised on the throne by Wang Shih-ch'ung 王世充, who soon after proclaimed himself emperor and had Tung poisoned; as the poison did not take effect, he was strangled with silk; though he begged permission to take leave of his mother the empress, he was not permitted to do so.

Hua-chi (s. year 618) was defeated and executed by the king of Hia 夏. T'ang divided his soldiers into twelve armies, each under a general and an assistant; the soldiers had both to till the soil and fight, and in this way men and horses were unequalled.

The T'ang 唐 Dynasty (620-907).

620 高祖神堯皇帝 emperor Kao Tsu (G. 1239), the sacrificial name given to Li Yüan (s. year 618). His grandfather Hu 虎 served the Posterior Chou and was installed as duke of T'ang, to which honor his father succeeded. He himself served the Sui, advancing to the dignity of king, then to the imperial throne. His capital was Ch'ang-an. He reigned nine years and died in his seventy-first year. His daughter was married to Ch'ai Shao 柴紹, a general, who gained distinction against the Turks (G. 17).

A temple was built to Lao Tsz.

621 The emperor's son Shih-min 世民 (G. 1196) broke the power of Sung. He conquered Cheng, the king of Hia, who came to relieve it, but was defeated and captured together with Wang Shih (s. year 619); both were then executed at Ch'ang-an. He entered Lo-yang, sighed over the imperial palace there and had parts of it destroyed.

The money had become very deteriorated at the end of the Sui, so that cash of leather and of paste-paper were in use; now coins were issued with the characters "T'ung Pao" 通寶 ("Scheidemünze,") kept in use ever since. A general of the executed king of Hia fought against the T'ang; being defeated, he joined a rebel leader in Shantung, who called himself king of Lu. Shih-min opened an academy and drew into it eighteen of the best scholars, he himself often taking part in discussions. The degree of Siu-ts'ai (B. A.) was established about this time, to be conferred at the prefectural examinations every third year.

The States of Liang and Wu were annexed, also Ch'u in the following year.

623 Hia's general, having caused much trouble, surrendered and was beheaded (G. 1954).

624 The emperor went to the high-school and offered a libation to Confucius; he then ordered all the sons of kings and dukes to be sent to school. The Ta-chüe 突厥 made an incursion for plundering, but Shih-min was sent to meet them, when they agreed to a treaty and went back.

626 The historiographer Fu Yih 傅奕 (G. 589) presented a memorial against Buddhism, counting over 100,000 monks. On this an investigation of the monks and nuns was held; the pure and earnest

were sent back to their monasteries, the coarse, etc., had to return into the world. Shih-min murdered the crown prince, his eldest brother Kien-ch'eng 建成 and his youngest brother 元吉, the king of Ts'i, because they conspired against his life. Their sons were also put to death. He was made crown prince and the emperor resigned the throne. Shih-min, on taking the throne, sent over 3,000 palace ladies home. Lady Chang-sun 長孫 was made queen; she loved learning, propriety and economy, but never replied to a question on politics. The emperor led the officers of the guard, several hundred men, out to a palace-building to practice archery. He collected books in another building over 200,000 volumes (parts, *küen* 卷). The best scholars superintended and lectured. K'ung Ying-tah 孔穎達 (G. 1055) gave the emperor good advice, not to be repulsive to admonitions, as this would lead to estrangement and ruin. The emperor promised to think over things thrice before saying a word in court, which was supported by the remark of another officer, that every word spoken publicly by the emperor was written down and thus not only efficacious in the present moment, but even more so in future times. The emperor said, "as Wu of Liang perished through his fondness of Buddhism and Yuan of Chou by teaching Taoism, he would take a warning and devote himself to Confucianism; it was as necessary as wings to a bird and water to a fish; they could not be without them or they must die." He refused to admit that those were upright ministers who kept to their views without compromise 執理不屈者直臣也, and those who agreed to the emperor's high will in fear of severe consequences were flatterers. "For the ruler is the spring of the water, the minister its flow; if the spring is impure, the flow cannot be pure; if the ruler is false, how can he urge his minister to honesty?"

In a consultation with his ministers about suppressing robbers, they recommended severe laws. The emperor said, "if I remove luxury, diminish expenses, alleviate service, lighten taxes, employ clean-handed officials, causing the people to have food and garments more than enough, they will not commit robbery on their own account, why should severe laws be employed?" He also said, "the ruler is depending on the State and the State on the people; to suppress the people in order to lift up the ruler, is as cutting one's flesh to fill one's stomach; when the stomach would be full of it, the body would die; when the ruler is rich, the State is ruined." To his attendants he said, "I heard of the Turfan merchant Hu, who

obtained a beautiful pearl and cut his body open to hide it; everybody laughed at him for loving a pearl more than his body, but officials that defy the law in receiving bribes and encourage the extravagant craving of monarchs to the ruin of the State, in what do they differ from that Hu?"

627 太宗文武皇帝 emperor **T'ai Tsung**. His name was Shih-min (s. year 621), second son of Kao Tsu. When eighteen years old he raised an army and conquered the empire for his father, who now resigned the throne in his favor. He was then thirty years of age and reigned twenty-three years. An official accepted presents of silk (G. 141), and the emperor had him in court publicly presented with some ten parcels of silk to make him ashamed, which he regarded severer than punishment. About his trusted adviser, s. G. 2529. The empress led the noble ladies of the palace and those outside personally to work in silk. Rent and taxes were remitted to Shantung during a drought.

628 Drought and famine within the pass; many people sold their children; the emperor had them redeemed from his treasury and returned to their parents; he also granted a general amnesty. Locusts appeared in the country; the emperor went to see them; he took some in his hand and said, "the life of the people depends on grain and you eat it, you had better eat my bowels." When about to swallow them, his attendants remonstrated that these evil things might cause him some illness. The emperor answered, "if I suffer for the people, what illness should I avoid?" He swallowed them and the locusts caused no calamity that year. As he regarded the tears of the numerous ladies in the seraglio the cause of these calamities, he sent another detachment of over 3,000 ladies from the palace to their paternal homes (s. year 626). He published a law, that slaves abusing their lords should be beheaded.

629 The emperor said to his attendants, "people say the emperor is the supreme being and has nothing to fear, it is not so with me; above I fear God's (皇天) inspection, below the observation of all the officials; I am in constant anxiety, fearing to disagree with God's intention or to disappoint men's hope." "This is in truth the essence of perfect government," said Wei Cheng 魏徵 (G. 2264), "I wish that he on the throne would be as heedful to the end as in the beginning; this would be a good thing."

Li Tsing 李靖 was sent with an army of over 100,000 men against the Ta-chüe 突厥. As many foreign nations brought

tribute, Yen Shih-ku 顏師古 (G. 2472) asked permission to draw up an account 王作會圖, which was granted.

- 630 The Ta-chüe were defeated, their Khan captured, over 10,000 persons joined the T'ang, the rest scattered. Whipping the back was abolished, because the emperor read in a work on acupuncture, that the five vital viscera are connected with the spine.

This was a year of abundance; many vagrant people returned to their homes, grain became cheap during the whole year; only twenty-nine persons were condemned to death.

- 631 Repair of the imperial palace at Lo-yang. The architect was dismissed for his fondness of ornamentation.

Those condemned to death were allowed to appeal. On the day of execution no music was performed and viands were lessened. The emperor said to his attendants, "state-government is similar to treating disease, though the disease is cured, care must be taken against a relapse, which is incurable. China is now enjoying peace; the barbarians on the four sides having all submitted, as it really seldom has been from ancient times, but I fear daily, it will not be so to the end. I am anxious therefore to hear the advice of the dignitaries." Wei Cheng (s. year 629) said, "Your servants are glad, not so much that there is peace within and without, but that the throne thinks of peril when living in peace" (s. G. 951).

- 632 The request of all the ministers for an imperial thank-offering 封禪 on the sacred T'ai mountain was not granted.

The emperor, angry from opposition in the court, said "this field-hut-fellow must be killed." The empress asked whom he meant. The emperor said, "Wei Cheng, who always disgraces me." The empress then retired and came again in full court-dress; she said, "I heard that Your Majesty demanded the minister to be truthful; that Wei Cheng speaks truthfully is in accordance with the demand from the throne; I dare not but congratulate." The emperor was pleased.

- 633 Over forty districts of Shantung were flooded, and officers were sent there to give relief. The emperor pitied a large number of prisoners condemned to death and allowed them to go to their homes during the harvest time under the promise to present themselves again in autumn for execution. They all returned, and the emperor pardoned 390 persons. When the queen's brother, Ch'ang-sun Wu-ki, 長孫無忌 (M. 39a, G. 142) wished to decline the office of minister of works, the emperor answered: "In appointing men for office, I

only consider their talents; if talents are absent, I do not employ even relations; if talents are unquestionable, I do not reject even opponents. Your appointment is not one of favor to a relative."

The crown prince was fond of unrestricted theatrical performances; K'ung Ying-ta 孔穎達 (s. year 626) and another dignitary protested against it several times. When the emperor heard of it he sent each a catty of gold and 500 pieces of silk. A president of the board of work was dismissed, because he tried the skill of workmen in making human figures of wood 傀儡, which the emperor regarded as illicit art 淫巧.

- 634 Li Tsing 李靖 (G. 1112) and others, thirteen men, were appointed investigators of all regions of the empire. They had to find out the grievances of the people and find relief for them, repair the embankments, etc., all as if the emperor himself saw the things. Floods occurred in Shantung and Honan.

635 Death of the ex-emperor.

- 636 The empress was charitable, economical and fond of studying books; the palace ladies loved her; she taught the children that economy was of first importance; she refused a petition of the nurse of the crown prince for more furniture, saying the prince should rather feel troubled about the failure of virtue and want of fame. During the illness of the empress, the crown prince petitioned her to pardon criminals (Buddhist meritorious work) and induce people to follow Taoism. The empress replied: "Life and death are destined and cannot be affected by wisdom or strength; pardon is the great function of the State and must not be trifled with; Taoism and Buddhism are heretic systems, gnawing at the State and infecting the people 蠹國病民, not practised by the emperor; how should I, a woman, cause the emperor to do such?" When her end approached, she asked that her burial should not be a burden to the people, but be as simple as possible; wishing the throne to keep superior men near and the mean at a distance, to accept good advice and be screened against flattery, to diminish compulsory service and stop hunting trips. She left a compilation in thirty books 女則 on women's accomplishments and failures from ancient times.

636 Nestorian missionaries were allowed to settle in the capital.

- 637 The waters of the Chüh and Lo 穀洛 flooded the city of Lo-yang, destroyed government buildings, monasteries and private houses

and drowned over 6,000 people. The fourteen years old beautiful daughter of a governor was taken into the imperial harem as 人才 (name of a female office).

- 639 The emperor wished to give one of his daughters to Yü*-chih King-te 尉遲敬德 (G. 2267) as wife; he declined, as he had lived with his wife for years in poverty, and the ancients said, when getting rich, the wife must not be changed.

A Buddhist priest from Turkestan pretended that he could by witchcraft make a person instantly die and revive him by another chant. The emperor wished to test him; Fu Yih 傅奕 (s. year 626, G. 589) spoke against it, when the emperor told the Buddhist to use his art against Fu Yih, who felt nothing; then the priest fell down dead. A Buddhist monk from the West said he had teeth of Buddha that could crush everything, and found a good market for them. Fu Yih said to his son, "I have heard that a diamond is so hard that nothing can injure it; only antelope's horn can break it; you go and try." The son did so with success, which stopped the show. Fu Yih was in his eighty-fifth year; before he died, he warned his son not to study Buddhism; he also collected all objections against Buddhism from the Wei and Tsin dynasties down to his time in ten books 高識傳, which became popular 行於世. Apotheosis of Ts'in-k'ung, G. 388.

- 640 The emperor reorganised the high school 國子監. K'ung Ying-tah (s. year 626) lectured on the Canon of Filial Piety; 1,200 rooms for scholars were added and the number of pupils increased to 3,260 (other reading 2,260). K'ung Ying-tah was appointed together with other Confucianists to fix the annotations 疏 to the five Classics called Correct Meaning 正義.

The State of Kao-chang 高昌 (in Turkestan) was conquered and made into a province 西州.

- 641 The professor Lü Tsai 呂才 was commanded to revise the works on Dualism.
- 643 Wei Cheng 魏徵 (G. 2264) died. The emperor had him buried with high honors, himself writing an epitaph, saying to his attendants: "Men use brass as mirrors to arrange their dress; they use the ancients to notice their progress, or regress, they use other persons as mirrors to learn their gain or loss; with the death of Wei Cheng I have lost a mirror."

* Giles in his Biogr. Dict. reads Wei, but compare No. 12,621 in his large Dictionary (God of blacksmiths, black guardian before the Yamén).

The emperor ordered the pictures of famous ministers to be made for a pavilion of the imperial palace.

The crown prince, who planned a rebellion, was degraded to the common people. The emperor appointed his ninth son as heir, whom he taught occasionally a lesson, for example, when eating rice: "If you know the toil of sowing and reaping, you will always have rice;" when going on horse-back: "If you know his power and not exhaust his strength, you may always ride him;" when going on board a boat: "The water carries a boat and upsets a boat, the people are as water and the ruler as a boat;" when resting under a tree: "A tree yielding to the line, becomes straight, a ruler yielding to advice becomes a sage."

He had the memorial-stone of Wei Cheng overthrown, because a person recommended by him committed a crime, so the emperor suspected party-spirit.

The Greek emperor Theodosius sent a mission to China.

- 644 Kai Su-wen 蓋蘇文 of Korea murdered his king and oppressed the people. Tai Tsung sent an army of 100,000 men and 500 junks.
- 645 Six cities were conquered, over 40,000 heads cut off, about 3,000 of his own men died in battle, of the horses seven to eight of every ten; but as he could not prevail against the city of An-shih 安市, the emperor said in regret, "if Wei Cheng had been alive, he would not have allowed this undertaking;" he sent a messenger to offer sacrifice to Wei Cheng and to re-erect his memorial-stone.

The Buddhist monk Hsüan Tsang 玄奘 (G. 801) returned from India with 657 books, many pictures and images and 150 relics. He presented the Record of the Western countries 西域記 in the following year.

- 646 An expedition against tribes of the Ugurs did not start, as they submitted. The emperor stopped festivities on his birthday, reflecting on the travail his parents had at his birth.
- 647 Two generals were sent against Korea, and one more in the following year, but without success. The emperor wrote a book in twelve chapters on Imperial duties for the use of the crown prince. He died the next year.
- 650 高宗皇帝 emperor Kao Tsung, ninth son of Tai Tsung, reigned thirty-four years and died in his fifty-sixth year (G. 1109).

[652 The number of households had gone down to 3,800,000.]

653 A high officer, Fang 房, son of the minister (M. 133), planned rebellion with the sister of the emperor; both were executed and also two brothers of the emperor, and another was banished.

654 An inferior palace lady Wu 武氏 (G. 2331) of the former emperor was raised to the rank of prime-favorite. She had already become a nun, when the empress Wang 王 favored the emperor's love to her, in order to destroy the influence of another favorite Hsiu 蕭.

A great rain suddenly flooded the imperial palace during a night and drowned over 3,000 persons; two months later the same occurred at a place in Chihli province, where over 5,000 persons were drowned. Lady Wu gave birth to a girl, which the empress wished to bring up, but when she had gone out, Wu secretly suffocated it; when the emperor came to see the child, it was intimated to him that the empress had just been there, so he believed that the empress had killed his girl, and he determined to degrade her.

655 This was carried out and lady Wu placed on the throne. The minister Ch'u 褚 (G. 494), who strenuously opposed this, was banished, his two sons were put to death. The ex-empress together with the favorite Hsiu, were cast into prison. The emperor, still feeling attachment, called out to her before the prison, when the ex-empress begged with tears to be removed to another place, where they could see the sun and moon. The emperor promised immediate response. When empress Wu heard this, she got angry, sent men and had the hands and feet of the two prisoners cut off and put into a wine-jar; the bodies died after several days and were then beheaded. There were, of course, many persons at court similar to the empress; for example, of Li Yi-fu 李義府 it is said, he had knives in his smiles 笑中有刀; he was also called the Li cat 李貓 (G. 1151).

657 The emperor began to attend to business on alternate days 隔日.

658 The capital of Korea was captured and the subjugation of the country completed by the general Li Chi 李勣 (G. 1102).

659 Wu-ki (s. year 633) was deprived of his honors and beheaded.

660 The emperor suffering from inflammation of the eyes, caused the empress to attend to the affairs of the government, which she did with ability.

661 An army was sent against Korea. Return of a victorious general from his expedition to the West, s. G. 2181.

662 Hsieh Jen-kwei 薛仁貴 (G. 737) distinguished himself in battle with the nine tribes of the T'ieh-leh 鐵勒, when he killed with

three arrows three men and struck down those that surrendered; over 100,000 were defeated at T'ien shan 天山.

- 664 The emperor, feeling the despotism of the empress Wu, consulted secretly with the prime-minister to remove her. Wu finding it out, had the minister executed under a false accusation and all his friends banished. Wu then attended to all state-business behind a screen and arranged everything; the emperor could fold his hands.
- 665 The emperor visited Chang Kung-i 張公藝 of Shantung, in whose house nine generations dwelled together; the emperor asked how this was possible, when Kung-i wrote the word "Forbearance" over a hundred times. The emperor, satisfied with it, made him a present of silk-cloth (G. 82).
- 666 He sacrificed to Confucius a sheep and gave him the title of "great teacher" 太師; he also visited the temple of Lao 老君, to whom he gave the title 太上玄元皇帝. The governor of Liao-tung received orders to march against Korea.
- 668 After Ping-yang 平壤 had been taken, the king of Korea, Tsang 藏, surrendered. Drought and famine in the capital, in Shantung, on the Yangtze and Wei rivers.
- 669 Sea-waves driven by a typhoon destroyed over 6,000 homes.
- 670 Drought inside the pass. A Chinese army was defeated by the Turfans (G. 737).
- 675 The empress employed the literati Yuan Wan-ching 元萬頃, Liu Yi 劉祿 and others to prepare works on "Famous Women," "Rules for Ministers," "New Regulations for Subordinates" and "Music," together over 1,000 parts (chüan). The crown prince Hung 弘 died or was poisoned by the empress, although he was her own son, now twenty-five years old.
- 677 Drought in North-Honan.
- 678 General Li King-hsüan 李敬玄 with 180,000 men was defeated by the Turfans 吐蕃.
- 680 The crown prince Hsien 賢 was degraded to the common people and Chih 哲 put in his place.
- 681 An official, who was a good economist 善營利, recommended to sell horse-manure, which would yield a yearly revenue of 200,000 strings of cash; a minister objected; though the profit would be great, it would not be a good report in the future for the house of T'ang to have been dealers in horse-manure. The economist made a maze 錢, the emperor went with the minister to see it, when the latter got frightened and ran out, saying in explana-

tion, that heaven had no two suns, but he saw in the four mirrors a number of emperors, which was a very bad omen; it was therefore broken up by imperial decree.

682 Inundation from the river Lo 洛, drought and famine within the pass. Locusts. The Ta-chüe (s. year 629) made again an inroad into the country east of the Ho; the general Hsieh Jen-kwei (s. year 662) defeated them thoroughly. Kao-tsung died in the year 683.

684 中宗皇帝 emperor Chung-tsung. His first name was Hsien 顯, afterwards altered into Chih 哲; put aside for twenty-one years by his mother, he came to power again for five years and was murdered in his fifty-fifth year of age (G. 1135).

After two months the empress-dowager Wu put aside the emperor and confined him in Fang-chou 房州 in the Hu province; she then reigned for twenty-one years to her eighty-first year. She had the ex-crownprince (s. year 680) murdered. In the seventh month were floods in several districts of Chekiang. As the empress-dowager changed the dynastic title, the colors and official names, the general of cavalry, Li King-yieh 李敬業, took up arms, but a general was sent against him with 300,000 men, who defeated Li twice and killed him.

Another rebellion by two brothers was also crushed, s. G. 770.

687 The dowager had Liu Yi (s. year 675), the prime-minister, executed.

688 She took the title "Holy mother, divine majesty" 聖母神皇. In Wu and Ch'u 吳楚 over 1,700 illegal places of worship were burnt; only four left—those of Hia Yü 禹, Wu T'ai-peh 吳太伯, Ki Cha 季札 and Wu Yüen 伍員. Two princes of the imperial house raised an army, but were defeated and died; the dowager had then many persons of the house of the T'ang executed. She built a large meeting-hall 明堂 and behind it the heavenly hall 天堂, where a large image was placed; the first she called "spirit's palace of 10,000 images," where she had grand feasts.

689 She had the premier executed and six high dignitaries. She altered the new year, taking the eleventh month as such; she also introduced new forms of twelve characters or rather antique forms of them.

690 She called the graduates to the assembly-hall 殿 at the capital, which was the beginning of the examination for the doctor-degree at the capital. She had other twelve high dignitaries, princes, etc., executed, also the two sons of the late crown prince; others she

banished to Canton. She now changed the dynastic title into Chou 周 on the petition of a minister supported by over 60,000 men. She married her daughter, princess T'ai-ping, to a gentleman whose wife she murdered for the purpose. About Ch'en Tzë-ang 陳子昂, one of her most intimate counsellors, s. G. 258.

- 691 The officer Chou Hing 周興 (G. 415) was accused, that he had conspired with an executed criminal. The dowager ordered Lai Chün Ch'en 來俊臣 (G. 1079) to examine the case. He invited the accused to dinner and asked how confession could be got from prisoners. The answer was: "Easily. Get a high jar heated by fire around it and order the prisoner to step in." Lai had then a jar made ready according to the advice and told Chou to step in, when he in fear confessed his guilt, and was banished to Canton, but was killed on the way thither by an enemy. The dowager made Ti Jen-kieh 狄仁傑 (M. 667) premier; asked whether he would like to know who slandered him, he answered, "if I had a fault, I would beg to change it; as I am fortunately conscious of none, I do not wish to know the name of the slanderer." The dowager deeply admired him. She ordered an officer, who proposed to make her nephew crown prince, to be beaten, which was carried out so cruelly that he died.

- 692 A flatterer had been censor; when his governor fell ill, he tasted his feces, saying, "if these are sweet, there is cause for sadness; now they are bitter, there will be no harm;" the governor hated him for it.

During drought and famine, the killing and capturing of living beings for food was prohibited. To a governor a son was born, whereupon he had a sheep killed; one of his guests betrayed him; asked by the dowager, he confessed his guilt, when the dowager said, that she had not included in her prohibition joyous and grievous events, but he should in future select his guests. The accuser was much ashamed and despised at court.

- 693 The dowager made Lou Shih-te 婁師德 (G. 1399) a high minister, who said to his brother, "many hate us for receiving so much favor; what is to be done?" The brother answered, "if people spit into my face, I simply wipe it off." Shih-te flushing said, "this is just what makes me sad; if people spit in your face, they are angry with you; if you wipe it off, you increase their anger; you should not wipe it off, but allow it to get dry and take it smilingly."

The crown prince was accused of having secret designs. The dowager ordered an officer to examine his attendants, when the

musician An Kin-ts'ang 安金藏 (G. 8) cried out he begged to cut out his heart in proof of the prince's innocence; he drew his sword and cut open his chest, so that the five intestines came out; the dowager hearing of it, had him brought on an imperial carriage to the palace; the bowels were sewn in with a thread of mulberry-bark and medicine applied. After a night's rest he revived. The dowager went in person and said with a sigh, "I have a son who cannot plead for himself, which caused you this." She stopped the proceedings and the prince escaped.

694 The dowager had in the year 688 built the hall of heaven by Hwai I 懷義 (G. 831, her favorite, a Buddhist monk), for which 10,000 men worked daily; the expense amounting to hundreds of thousands. Hwai had a bull killed and used the blood to paint a picture 200 feet high, pretending he did it with the blood of his knee. As now the palace physician came into favor, he secretly put fire to the building, which was consumed, and the picture he had hung outside was torn into several hundreds of pieces by the wind. The dowager took it quietly and ordered him to build another hall, at which he felt uneasy and used wild expressions. The dowager then had him murdered in a quiet way.

696 Chang Ch'ang-tsung 張昌宗 and Chang I-chih 張易之 (G. 22, 72), two handsome men, were recommended to the dowager in the year 690 by the princess T'ai-ping. They used cosmetics, dressed in embroidered silk and received presents without number; even the imperial princes strove to hold their horses' bridle, etc.

697 The minister Lai Chün-ch'en 來俊臣 (a. year 691), relying on his own power, was covetous and sensual; he took everywhere the beautiful wives and concubines of educated people. He also intended to bring a charge of high treason against the Wu family, when they combined against him; though the dowager attempted to save him, he was executed and his corpse thrown into the market, where his enemies struggled to swallow his flesh; the people congratulated one another that now they could take a quiet sleep.

700 Ti Jen-kieh (s. year 691) died. The dowager was very grieved, for she really venerated the old man more than anybody else. Once riding in the procession, his horse shied, when she sent the crown prince after him to take hold of the horse's bridle. When he asked permission to resign, she would not grant it. In audience she prevented his kneeling, as it made her own body painful.

702 The dowager created military graduates.

705 Chang Kien-chih 張柬之 (G. 30), who had been made premier the year before, at the age of eighty, raised soldiers and had the two favorites of the dowager (s. year 696) executed, when the dowager resigned and **Chung Tsung** took the throne again (s. year 684); his wife Wei 韋 (G. 2272) became empress again. During the time of his affliction he became fondly attached to his wife and promised her in time of fortune not to restrict her; so she now attended to all the business of State behind a curtain, as Wu had done.

Wu San-sz 武三思 (G. 2343), a nephew of the dowager, became minister of works and had private intercourse with Wan Erh 婉兒 (M. 793), the emperor's favorite. Lady Wan, combined with the Wu family, introduced San-sz to the empress. The emperor induced the empress to play games with San-sz, he himself superintending. San-sz then began private intercourse with the empress and the power of the Wus rose again.

An overflow of the river Lo 洛 destroyed over 2,000 homes. In autumn seventeen districts in N. Honan were flooded. Death of the dowager at eighty-one years of age.

[705-762 Li Po 李白, China's greatest poet.]

706 The Buddhist monk Wei-fan 慧範 and the Taoist Sze Ts'ung-en 史崇恩 were called to office and received the fifth rank of honor. The five newly-created kings, among them Chang Kien (s. year 705), were executed by the intrigue of San-sz.

707 The crown prince Chung-tsin 重俊 raised soldiers and slaughtered San-sz and his son. In a mutiny of his soldiers, he himself lost his life.

708 The wife of San-sz's son married her husband's brother, a fine looking man, good singer and dancer, whom she had visited before. The imperial academy was renewed and Lady Wan appointed to confer the honors.

710 Empress Wei murdered the emperor and placed the king of Wen 溫王 on the throne. Lung Ki 隆基, king of Lin-sz 臨淄, marched soldiers against the empress and killed her with her adherents. (To these belonged the princess An-lo, s. G. 10.) Her new emperor was allowed to resume his old position as king (royal prince) of Wen, and Lung-ki's father 睿宗, **Jui Tsung**, became emperor (G. 1207). He was a younger brother of Chung Tsung; he had been placed on the throne by the empress Wu in the year 684 for a short time, then made crown prince and also deposed, till his son's boldness raised him to the throne. He reigned two years.

711 The emperor called the Taoist Sze-ma Ch'eng-cheng 司馬承禎 (M. 654) from the T'ien Tai mountain (in Chekiang) to his court, but he begged permission to return to his solitude, which was granted.

712 The emperor resigned in favor of his son.

713 玄宗明皇帝 emperor Hsuan Tsung Ming. He was the third son of Jui Tsung; reigned forty-four years and died in his seventy-eighth year (G. 1172). Princess Tai Ping 太平 (G. 1863), daughter of empress Wu, planned rebellion (G. 1056), but was compelled to take her own life. The head-eunuch Kao Li-sze 高力士, who had killed the two confederates of the princess, was raised to high office and the *eunuchs* came into power from this time on; there were 3,000.

714 Refined and popular music were both under the director of music from ancient times; the latter was now taken under the emperor's personal management. He formed a dramatic college 教坊 with several hundred male and female performers (M. 382). He was very intimate with his brothers; slept with them in one bed (how often?) and dined together; their etiquette was familiar; when a younger brother fell ill, the emperor cooked medicine for him and burned his whiskers over it.

All the gold and silver vessels and ornaments he had melted for public use, precious stones, silks and embroideries burnt outside the hall; from the empress downward, no lady could get such to wear.

715 Swarms of locusts in Shantung in the fourth month. The people did not dare to kill them, but worshipped them. The premier sent an officer, who ordered the district-magistrate to catch and bury the locusts.

716 Another plague of locusts; the premier had them again collected and prevented famine. The district-magistrates were ordered to court and were examined in the management of the people. The ex-emperor died. An imperial officer kept purposely so poor, that his wife and children suffered from cold and hunger; his dwelling house was no protection against wind and rain; when he died, he left nothing, so that an old slave begged to be sold for the funeral expenses.

717 The emperor ordered a search for rare books, because the imperial library had become scattered and defective.

718 Prohibition of false coins (of lead and iron). Two officers threw some poems in the receiving box. The emperor pronounced their style Taoistic, not practicable except for Taoist priests.

- The rite of entertaining the old was practised this year in a district city (which shows that it had gone out of usage).
- 720 The two rivers Ch'an 瀋 and Ku 穀 in Honan overflowed and drowned 2,000 persons.
- 722 The floods of the rivers I 伊 and Yü 汝, also in Honan, drowned several thousands of families. The Yellow River broke through the dykes in Shantung. The eunuch Yang Sze-hsü 楊思勗 was sent to Annam to settle disorder. He enrolled soldiers, filling barracks, distinguishing between soldiers and farmers.
- 723 The Li-cheng college 麗正書院 was established, and it is the first time that this name for college is used. Scholars were employed to write books or to lecture; Chang Yüeh 張說 (M. 32, G. 134) became director; all employed were well paid.
- 724 Yang Sze-hsü (s. year 722) quelled a rising of the aborigines in Hunan and received the title generalissimo, the first eunuch who got it.
- 725 The emperor appointed eleven censors, changed the name of the "Assembled Genii's hall" into "Assembled Worthies' hall," as genii were empty imaginations. Horses were increased from 240,000 to 430,000. On his sacrificial tour to the T'ai mountain, several myriads followed him, arranged according to their color.
- 726 Great flood in N. Honan.
- 727 All the palace ladies were ordered to engage in the rearing of silkworms. The Yellow River flooded K'i Chou (in Chihli).
- 729 The number of doctor-degrees 進士 was fixed at 100 every year. The emperor invited the officers to a banquet in celebration of his birthday, when two ministers petitioned to have it celebrated throughout the empire as 1,000 autumn day 千秋節. The minister of works, Chang Kia-chen 張嘉貞, died. He never cared for wealth. His answer to one who advised him to buy fields and houses was, as minister he had no fear of cold and hunger, and the example of those at court, who collected wealth for their heirs to squander, he would not choose.
- 731 The emperor granted the Sheking and the Shuking to the Turfans 吐蕃.
- 733 Han Hiu 韓休 (G. 618), an upright man, became premier; when the emperor feasted or hunted or had any other weakness, he used to ask his attendants whether Han knew it, and the remonstrance arrived immediately. The attendants remarked that his majesty looked leaner since Han was premier; it would be better to dismiss

him. The emperor answered, "Though my appearance be lean, that of the empire is fat; I employ Han for the empire and not for my own person."

[The population numbered 7,800,000 households, *i. e.*, 45,400,000 persons.]

734 Earthquake in Ts'in-chou 秦州 in Shensi. The emperor planted wheat in the park and ordered his family, from the crown prince downwards, to cut it for offerings to the ancestors, for which personal exertion was desirable, and also to give them an idea of the toil of husbandry. He promoted the alchemist 方士 Chang-ko 張果 (M. 22). Chang Shou-kuei 張守珪 (M. 30, G. 108) broke the power of the Kitan 契丹 or Northern Tartars.

736 At the emperor's birthday, when other ministers presented precious mirrors, Chang Kiu-ling 張九齡 (M. 21, G. 38) presented a book in five chapters, "Golden Mirror for the Imperial Birthday" 千秋金鑑錄, showing fortune 吉 and calamity 凶, or success and failure, as man's own making in the light of history.

737 Three imperial princes, including the crown prince, were executed through the intrigue of Yang Chiung 楊炯.

738 The emperor caused the opening of schools in all cities and towns of the empire, and bestowed on Confucius the title of King 文宣王 in the year 739.

740 The empire had been divided into 1,573 districts; this year's census showed 8,412,800 families and 48,143,600 individuals; food and clothing were cheap at the capital cities, the people were rich and at peace.

741 The emperor dreamed of Lao Tsz and found his image according to the direction.

A flood, caused by the Lo river, drowned over 1,000 people.

742 The premier Li Lin-fu 李林甫 (G. 1170) disposed of every rival in office; about him was the saying, "honey in the mouth, but a sword in the belly" 口有蜜腹有劍.

743 An Lu-shan 安祿山 (M. 525, G. 11) became a great favorite of the emperor; he had admission at any time.

745 Lady Yang 楊 (G. 2394) was raised to the rank of *Kuei-fei* 貴妃. An Lu-shan defeated the Tartars 奚契丹.

746 The governor Wang Chung-sze 王忠嗣 defeated the Turfans in Gobi, also the whole tribe of Tu-ku-hun 吐谷渾. Lady Yang used her influence to bring those into office who gave her precious presents. The people put it in rhyme: "Be not glad at the birth

of a son or sad at a daughter's; the sovereign regards a woman as a door lintel" 生男勿喜女勿悲,君今看女作門楣 Lady Yang was fond of the Lichi fruit, and got them every year by special courier from Canton.

- 747 Another dignity was added to what Lu-shan (s. year 743) already enjoyed. He was very fat, his stomach overhanging his knees; he looked simple, but was crafty and ready for a reply before his Majesty. When the emperor pointed to his stomach and jokingly asked what he kept in there, he replied, "Nothing but a red heart." When seated with the emperor and Lady Yang, whom he had before begged to adopt him as her son, he first saluted the lady; when asked for the reason, he said it was foreign custom, the mother first and then the father; he himself being a Tu-chüe (Turk).

One year's revenue of the empire was granted to Li Lin-fu (s. year 742).

- 748 Kao Li-sze 高力士 (G. 956), a chief-eunuch and privy counsellor, was made a general; he was much respected; the crown prince called him brother; he was a faithful companion to the emperor from the year 713 to 756. Lu-shan received an iron-seal 券, by which his honors and emoluments became hereditary. The three sisters of Lady Yang were ennobled.
- 750 The provisions for the imperial household amounted to several thousand dishes, one dish costing as much as would have sufficed for ten families.
- 751 The emperor commanded officers to build for Lu-shan (s. year 743) a residence, adjoining the imperial palace, in the finest style, regardless of expense. The emperor ordered the premier and the imperial princes to attend Lu-shan's banqueting. On his birthday, the emperor and Lady Yang gave rich presents and the latter invited him into the palace three days after, when she wrapt him in an embroidered silk-mantel (like a baby) and made him drive in a carriage of different colors; the emperor came himself to look at the spectacle and added more presents. From this time Lu-shan frequented the inner palace without restraint and caused evil remarks, but the emperor had no suspicion.

The arsenal got on fire and 370,000 pieces of weapons were destroyed. A eunuch was sent as an envoy to the court of the king of Chipin in India, (s. G. 2338). The priest Wu-k'ung 悟空 had been an attaché; he remained behind on account of illness and joined Buddhism, studied Sanscrit and collected books, which he

brought to China after forty years of absence. He received the name Dharmadâtu.

752 The emperor gave himself up to the pleasures of his harem and left the government in the hands of Li Lin-fu (s. year 742); he was a vile creature, but had maintained his office as premier for nineteen years. He died during this year. His successor was Yang Kuo-chung 楊國忠, brother of Lady Yang (G. 2396), a man of the same bad character.

753 Kuo-chung employed men to accuse the deceased Li Lin-fu of intended high treason with a Tschüe chief; the emperor believed it, took away the honors of the accused, had his coffin cut open and exchanged for a small one and then buried with the ceremonies of the common people.

754 Kuo-chung also told the emperor of Lu-shan's rebellious designs, but the latter went into the palace and declared his innocence with tears, so that the emperor heaped more honors and treasures on him. Li Mi 李密 (G. 1176) attacked the barbarous State of Nan-chao 南詔 in the S. W., but lost his whole army. Kuo-chung concealed it from the emperor and sent a Chinese army for retribution. The total losses amounted to 200,000 men, which he did not dare to tell (cp. G. 980).

755 An Lu-shan (s. year 743) rose in rebellion, leading 150,000 men against the eastern capital, Lo-yang, which he took after defeating the general sent against him. His son had been executed already. The emperor wished to go himself to the field and to appoint the crown prince regent. His premier Yang and his four sisters, the harem ladies, prevented it (cp. G. 952). Lu-shan conquered Honan. Several governors raised troops to oppose him; collecting over 200,000 men, they held Hupeh.

[The population numbered 9,600,000 households, *i. e.*, 52,800,000 persons.]

756 An Lu-shan assumed the title of emperor. There were over 300 greater and smaller battles fought between the rebels and the imperialists; in one battle the latter cut off 40,000 heads and made over 1,000 prisoners. The rebels were driven backward through the pass of Tung 潼. The emperor, following the advice of his premier Yang, fled to Shuh 蜀 (Szechuan); when he reached Hanyang, provisions failed, and the soldiers became mutinous; they killed the premier and two of his sisters and asked the death of the famous favorite Yang-kuei-fei. The emperor ordered a eunuch to strangle

her.* The wife of the premier and the third of the sisters fled to a magistrate, but were executed. A rebel-general conquered Ch'ang-an, where several tens of imperial ladies and grandsons were killed. As the rebels gave themselves to plunder and sensuality, the emperor reached Szechuan unmolested and the crown prince could establish the imperial throne at Ling Wu 靈武, in Kansu (M. 400). He had at the time not even thirty officers, civil and military, around him. The emperor received the title 上皇帝. An imperial prince revolted at Nanking, but was soon defeated and slain (G. 1260). A rebel-leader invested Yung-chiu 雍邱 over forty days. The commander refused to surrender. When all arrows had been spent, they made mock-men of straw, over 1,000, and hung them over the wall in the night; the enemies shot against them and the defenders of the city got several hundred thousand arrows, so that they could defeat the beleaguering army during the following night.

Lu-shan removed the imperial musicians, rhinoceroses and elephants from Ch'ang-an to Lo-yang. The emperor, on the advice of Li Pi, moved to P'ang-yüan 彭原 in Shensi; there he played a game with his second lady Chang 張, the noise of which could be heard outside. Li Pi 李泌 (G. 1180) counselled the emperor against it, who then had balls made of soft wood, so that no noise could be heard; the lady disliked Pi on this account. The ex-emperor sent her seven precious saddles; Pi advised the emperor that in this time of strife the pearls and precious stones should be used to reward the heroes of battle, to which the emperor agreed. The premier Fang Kuan 房琯, who understood nothing of warfare, wished to imitate the ancients; he got 2,000 ox-cars and cavalry and infantry between them. The rebels beat their drums before the wind, so that the oxen got frightened and men and beasts ran into confusion. The rebels put fire to the cars and killed over 40,000 men. Li Pi saved the encampment. The Huei-ho 回紇, a tribe of Turks (?), joined the imperial general Kuo Tsz-i 郭子儀 (G. 1075) against the T'ung-lo 同羅, another tribe, that was defeated; 30,000 heads were cut off and 10,000 prisoners taken. The rebels suffered a severe defeat from Chang Hsün 張巡 (G. 63). The king of Kotan (於闐 Yü-tien) came with 5,000 men to give assistance. Some more details, s. G. 2467.

756 肅宗皇帝 emperor Su Tsung (G. 1216), oldest son of Hsüan-tsung, reigned seven years and died in his fifty-second year.

*Cp. the poem of Po Chü-i, Giles' History of Chinese Literature, p. 169-175.

757 An Lu-shan was murdered by his son Ch'ing-shü 慶緒 (G. 11), because he intended to give to the son of a favorite the preference as heir to his throne.

Li Fu-kuo 李輔國 (G. 1126) had secret communications with the favorite Lady Chang (s. year 756); an imperial prince brought death upon himself for repeated denunciation of it.

A rebel-leader with 130,000 men attacked Sui-yang 睢陽 in Honan; the commander sent to Chang Hsin (s. year 756) for immediate help. He arrived with 3,000 men; joined with those of the city he commanded 6,800 and had to fight sixteen days, perhaps twenty assaults a day, during which he seized over sixty commanders of the rebels and killed over 20,000 men. They then withdrew in the night, but returned again some time after, when over fifty rebel-officers and over 5,000 men were killed; their leader received an arrow in his left eye and was nearly captured, but escaped.

The emperor employed several hundred Buddhist monks for religious service in the palace 道場; the premier successfully opposed this. Sui-yang was attacked a third time by the same rebel-leader Yin Tsz-ki 尹子奇, when hunger was felt in the city; only 1,600 soldiers were left. Though the rebels were defeated near the Western capital (Ch'ang-an) and 60,000 heads taken, this brought no relief to Sui-yang. The people ate tea-leaves and paper, then horses, sparrows and rats; Chang Hsin then brought his beloved concubine out and killed her to feed the soldiers. Though death was before them, no revolt occurred; only 400 men remained, when the rebels stormed the city and took it. The two commanders Chang Hsin and Hsi-yüan 許遠 died gloriously 死節. Hsin had fought over 400 battles and killed 120,000 rebels.

The emperor re-entered the Western capital and the ex-emperor left Szechuan and went into the Eastern capital. One of the rebel-leaders begged to submit.

758 The emperor added Ti 帝 to his title 上皇 Shang-huang, but soon gave it up again. Lady Chang (s. year 756) was made empress.

759 Shih Sz-ming 史思明 (G. 1728), a rebel-leader, who had already submitted, rose again and assumed the title of king, then of emperor. He defeated 600,000 men led against him by nine governors, half of whom were killed or wounded; a storm increased the confusion; of 10,000 cavalry men only 3,000 remained; 100,000 heavily armed men (wearing 甲) were almost all annihilated; the other soldiers

were all scattered. He killed An Ch'ing-hsü (a. year 757); soon after he suffered a severe defeat by Li Kuang-pi 李光弼 (G. 1162) in Honan.

- 761 Shih Sz-ming and his younger son were murdered by his oldest son, because he had appointed the younger as heir.

The emperor arrayed the eunuchs as Buddhas and p'u-sahs on his birthday, and some military officers as diamond kings, Vadjrapams, and commanded the ministers to worship them.

- 762 The ex-emperor died in his seventy-eighth year. The emperor also died. Li Fu-kuo (a. year 757) murdered the empress, because she had planned to do away with him. The new emperor soon had him murdered. The Huei-ho 同 紇 entered into allegiance with the emperor. Sz-ming's son suffered a severe defeat, the imperialists regained the Eastern capital.

Li Po 李白 (G. 1181), the famous poet, was accidentally drowned while in a drunken state.

- 763 代宗皇帝 emperor Tai Tsung, son of Su, reigned seventeen years and died in his fifty-third year (G. 1235).

The rebel-leader (a. year 761) was murdered by one of his officers; the remainder of the rebels submitted to the imperialists. The Turfans 吐蕃 came marauding and entered Ch'ang-an; the emperor fled into Honan. Kuo Tsz-i (a. year 756) slew many of them, so that the rest withdrew. The emperor returned. He degraded the chief-eunuch and appointed another eunuch as chief of military affairs.

- 764 The general Pu-ku Huai-jen 僕固懷仁 (G. 1665) rebelled; when Kuo Tsz-i went against him, his adherents left him and killed his son. His mother attempted to cut his heart out to appease the army, when he fled to the Turfans, whom he induced to an incursion; but when the governor Kuo displayed his army, they withdrew.

- 765 Drought in the region of the capital; a tou 斗 of rice was sold for 1,000 cash. Two carriages with Buddhist scriptures went in procession to a monastery, where the emperor explained them (G. 2158). Pu-ku (a. year 764) returned as leader of Huei-ho and Turfans, but died on the way suddenly; Kuo Tsz-i went alone on horseback to the Huei-ho and came to an agreement with them; the Turfans then withdrew during the night.

- 766 The governors gave presents to the emperor on his birthday to the value of 240,000 strings of cash.

768 The eunuch Yü Chao-en 魚朝恩 had built a large Buddhist temple for the repose of the deceased mother of the emperor. The emperor went there and appointed 1,000 priests and nuns; he defrayed the expenses of a service for her soul, to be repeated every year (s. Eitel's handbook of Chinese Buddhism, s. v. "Ullambana").

[768-824 Han Yü 韓愈 or Han Wen Kung, a great scholar.]

770 Yü Chao-en was executed for his haughtiness towards those above and below him.

773 The Turfans made an incursion, but were repulsed.

775 A general of Shih Sz-ming (s. year 759) rebelled, was defeated and forgiven in the year 776.

777 Another head-eunuch was executed for his overbearing conduct. He had stores heaped up in his house, for instance 800 piculs 石 of pepper.

779 Death of the emperor. The crown prince ascended the throne. He forbade any presentation of tribute, also performances of theatrical plays. He refused a picture of the happy land 慶雲圖, saying that he enjoyed the blessing of the seasons, and regarded as his fortune to advance the best and make the faithful illustrious, but curiosities were of no profit to man and should no more be presented to him; elephants, panthers, fighting cocks, hunting hounds, etc., he had set free; he also dismissed several hundred ladies from the harem to the joy of the people.

Liu Yen 劉晏 (G. 1367) improved the salt-revenue, which had yielded 600,000 strings of cash per year, so that it increased ten times. The whole yearly revenue amounted to 12,000,000 strings, of which salt yielded the greater half.

780 德宗皇帝 emperor Teh Tsung, oldest son of Tai, reigned twenty-five years and died in his sixty-fourth year (G. 1158).

A soothsayer advised the emperor to fortify Fung-tien 奉天 in Shensi, as a place of refuge in the future; several thousands of men were sent for the purpose.

Yang Yen 楊炎 (G. 2417) introduced the semi-annual collection of money-tax 兩稅; the three existing forms—land-tax, statute labor and payment in kind—were to be abolished, but without success.

781 Lu K'i 盧杞 (G. 1403), the other minister, was of a repulsive appearance, but nevertheless the emperor liked his speech (logic). The general Kuo Tsz-i (s. year 756) died. He had in his family-home 3,000 persons; eight sons and seven sons-in-law were prominent officials; of grandchildren he had several tens.

- T'ien Yüe 田悅 (G. 1928), one of Shih Sz-ming's generals, attacked Lin-ming 臨洛 in Chihli for plunder; he had no success for more than a month. The provisions had been exhausted in the city, when the commander Chang P'ei 張恢 (G. 93) made his beloved daughter, in fine dress, come out to the soldiers, saying that he had nothing in his house to reward their toil, and he begged to sell this girl to give them one day's pay. They all shed tears and said they wished to hold out to death without a thought of reward. Then relief arrived and T'ien Yüe suffered a great defeat (G. 1483).
- 783 Several governors revolted in the year 782 and called themselves kings; now one of them, Chu Tsz 朱泚 (G. 473 cp., G. 2082), attacked the capital, so that the emperor fled to Fung-tien. After taking Ch'ang-an, Chu killed seventy-seven members of the imperial family and took the title of emperor. He marched against Fung-tien, when the imperial general Kao Chung-chieh 高重捷, fighting with Chu's general, fell into an ambush and had his head cut off. The emperor wept over the corpse and had it buried with an artificial head 結蒲爲首. Chu Tsz, seeing the head, wept over it saying he was a faithful minister, and had it buried with an artificial body to it.
- 784 T'ien Yüe and two other governors sued for pardon. But, as revolting was still going on, the emperor left Fung-tien and went deeper into Shensi. One of his generals, Li Sheng 李晟 (G. 1192), succeeded in retaking Ch'ang-an, when Chu Tsz fled and was killed by one of his underlings. This enabled the emperor to return to his capital, Ch'ang-an.
- 785 One rebel-leader was defeated and over 10,000 heads cut off; the leader committed suicide (G. 1483). The death of a faithful minister by another rebel, s. G. 2461.
- 786 The Turfans made an incursion and were defeated by Li Sheng (G. 883). About another rebellion s. G. 1133.
- 787 The Turfans broke a covenant, made an inroad the same year, and killed several hundred T'ang soldiers.
- The Huei-ho (s. year 762) asked for peace, which was granted.
- 788 They changed their tribal name into Huei-hu 回鶻. Their chief got the imperial princess Hien-an 咸安 in marriage (G. 2280, a different statement).
- 789 Li Pi 李泌, premier since the year 787, died. He had political judgment 謀略, but was fond of talking about demi-gods 神仙, wherefore the world disregarded him.

- 792 Over forty districts 州 of the empire were flooded and over 30,000 persons drowned.
- 793 First duty on tea, one-tenth, amounting to 400,000 strings of cash.
- 798 The governor of West Huai 淮西 revolted, but was pardoned in the year 800.
- 805 順宗皇帝 emperor Shun Tsung (G. 1206), eldest son of Teh Tsung, reigned eight months, resigned in favor of his eldest son; soon after he died in his forty-sixth year. As the emperor soon fell ill (paralysis of the tongue), his eldest son reigned for him. A princess presented fifty girls to him, which he refused to accept. A donation of two hairy tortoises he also declined, saying he regarded virtuous men as his precious things; strange animals were no longer permitted.

There was a flood in Lang-chou 朗州 (Hukuang) that devastated over 10,000 homes.

- 806 憲宗皇帝 emperor Hien Tsung, reigned fifteen years, was murdered by a eunuch in his forty-third year (G. 1202).

The ex-emperor died. The governor of Szechuan rose in rebellion, the general Kao Tsung-wen defeated and caught him; he was then executed at the capital. The Huei-hu (s. year 788) brought tribute; with them came monks, Moni 摩尼,* who built monasteries.

- 807 The commandant of Chen-hai 鎮海 rose in rebellion, but was caught and executed. The poet Peh Kū-yih 白居易 (M. 546) wrote over 100 songs 樂府; he received the degree of Hanlin.
- 808 The examination of graduates had to regard moral excellency, correctness, truthfulness and earnestness in remonstrance.
- 809 Officers were sent to relieve a famine in the South.
- 811 The emperor used to converse with his premier on demi-gods or genii; Li Fan 李藩 warned him against it, as Shih of the Ts'in and Wu of the Han had both contracted fatal illness from using the elixir. If the course is comprehensive, virtue equal, men at peace, the State in order, why be troubled not to reach the age of Yao and Shun?

This was a prosperous year; a tou 斗 of grain was sold for three cash.

- 815 A governor rebelled (s. year 798); the soldiers of sixteen districts were called against him.

* Sanscrit *mani*; the mystic pearl in the head of a dragon king; symbol for Buddha, s. Giles' Dictionary, 7969, Eitel, Hand-book on Buddhism sub *mani* and *Om mani padme hum* (thou jewel in the lotus, hum !).

The poet Liu Tsung-yüen 柳宗元 (M. 419) was banished to Kwangsi province, and the poet Liu Yü-si 劉禹錫 (M. 423) to Canton province.

The rebels burned a magazine containing over 300,000 pieces of silk and over 20,000 ho (1 ho=100 catties) of grain. The rebels killed the premier, and P'ei Tu 裴度 (G. 1632), being wounded in the head, was then made premier. Another governor sent an army to take possession of the eastern capital, but the commander, a Buddhist monk, was seized and executed.

816 Great flood in Kiangsi; 4,700 families drowned.

817 The armies had already been engaged four years in Huai-si 淮西 to restore order, so that all the ministers of the court thought best to withdraw the soldiers; only the premier P'ei Tu remained firm and received full power in the affair. The general Li So 李愬 caught the rebel-chief and sent him to the capital. When P'ei Tu arrived, So, who remained humble in his success, went to receive him and knelt on the wayside; when Tu was about to turn aside, So said he had done so to teach the citizens the difference between high and low, as they had been without it for several tens of years. Li So was ennobled, and P'ei Tu also, to the rank of duke.

818 After the pacification of Huai-si, two of the rebellious governors sent in their sons for service and presented their districts; one three, the other two. They were both pardoned. Against the first of them Li Sz-tao's 李師道 soldiers had soon to be sent, as he would not consent to a reduction of his territory.

The emperor was fond of demi-gods and ordered to search in the empire for adepts 方士. A hermit 山人, Liu Pi 柳泌, was recommended. Pi said there was plenty of supernatural herbage 靈草 on the T'ien-tai mountain (in Chekiang); he was created governor of that district in spite of the remonstrance of the high officials.

819 The emperor sent an officer to receive a Buddha relic (bone); he kept it in the palace for three days, then it passed in procession through all the Buddhist temples, high and low looking at it and offering presents. The minister of justice, Han Yü 韓愈 (G. 632), presented a remonstrance against it, which made the emperor so angry that he degraded Han and sent him as governor to Ch'ao-chou 潮州 in Canton province.

An underling of Li Sz-tao (s. year 818) seized him and his two sons and beheaded them. Liu Pi was not successful in his

search after the elixir of immortality, but he found a friend amongst the eunuchs of the palace, with whom he compounded a medicine, which they declared to be the elixir of immortality. The imperial architect P'ei Lin 起居舍人裴潏 remonstrated against the elixir, with the result that he was degraded to go to a smaller place at a distance.

820 The emperor under the influence of the elixir became furious and had a number of courtiers executed; he died in a fit, but the common belief was that a eunuch assassinated him. As soon as the crown prince occupied the throne, he had Liu Pi (s. year 818) executed. The calligrapher Liu Kung-ch'üan 柳公權 (M. 410) was made a member of the academy; when the emperor asked him how he could write in such a style, he answered, "By guiding the pencil with the heart; if the heart is correct, the pencil will be so." The emperor changed countenance, understanding that it was a hint.

821 穆宗皇帝 emperor **Muh Tsung**, oldest son of Hien, reigned four years and died from the elixir in his twenty-ninth year (G. 1130).

823 Han Yü (s. year 819) received high office as 兆尹 prefect in the capital; none dared to transgress the law, as Han had wished to burn the bone of Buddha.

824 The emperor died from a dose of immortality-medicine. His son ascended the throne; he played ball in one of the halls, and at out-door parties had music played and gave presents to the eunuch musicians.

825 敬宗皇帝 emperor **King Tsung** (G. 1093), eldest son of Muh, reigned two years.

A high officer presented a screen, six-folding, of red colors, each fold ornamented with hatches and admonitory inscriptions; the emperor was pleased with it. He ordered twelve travelling-boats to be built; the revenue of half a year should cover the expenses; after strong remonstrance on the part of the ministers, he reduced it to one-half of the amount (quarter of a year).

826 A party of eunuchs murdered the emperor in his room and installed the royal prince Wu 悟, his brother. Another party of eunuchs killed him and placed another brother on the throne. He changed the extravagance into economy and sent those of the harem-ladies without official duties away (they being over 3,000). He loved books and reduced music.

827 文宗皇帝 emperor **Wen Tsung**, second son of Muh, reigned thirteen years and died in his thirty-second year (1127).

- 829 The eunuchs were forbidden to wear silk.
- 833 He summoned the scholars and examined them in poetry 詩賦 to improve their learning.
- 835 He planned with Cheng Chu 鄭注, whose medicine in the year 833 had cured the emperor, and two other ministers to get rid of the eunuchs; the eunuchs, however, killed the three with over 1,600 of their followers.
- 837 The stone-text was completed in the high-school 國子監 at the capital.
- 838 Taoist talk of omens 祥瑞 was prohibited.
- 840 Death of the emperor. His younger brother murdered the emperor's son, the degraded crown prince, and took the throne.
- 841 武宗皇帝 emperor Wu Tsung, the fifth son of Muh, who was placed on the throne by the eunuchs, reigned six years and died in his thirty-third year (A. 1229). The emperor took a tally 法籙 from a Taoist priest Chao Kuei-chen 趙歸真.
- 843 The emperor outwardly honored the chief eunuch, who had enthroned him, but in his heart he regarded him with jealousy. The eunuch, perceiving it, begged to retire on account of age and infirmity. He instructed his colleagues, in departing, that they should not allow the emperor to come to himself, but please his eyes and ears with something new every day, and keep him from study and from orthodox intercourse, so that he should know nothing of the rise and fall of former dynasties.
- 844 The Taoist Chao (s. year 841) was made a prelate of the Taoists. Some eunuchs found, in the house of the former chief, several thousand pieces of armoury; the chief was stripped of his official titles and his property confiscated.
- 845 Imperial decree instigated by the Taoist Chao to destroy the Buddhist temples, and that monks as well as nuns should return into the world. Over 4,600 temples were broken up and 260,500 monks and nuns sent out of temples; over 2,000 priests of a similar sect 大秦穆護祆 had the same fate. Over 40,000 private shrines were also removed; of fields several tens of millions k'ing (one=100 mou) were confiscated, of slaves 150,000; all bronze images and bells were coined into cash. In the eastern capital two temples, each with thirty priests, were kept, and one in each prefecture, divided into three grades of twenty, ten, and five monks in each, respectively; and those in the temples of the capital were then reduced to twenty, those of twenty to ten, of ten to seven, of five to none.

A Taoist priest was appointed literary chancellor, but he preferred to withdraw into the mountains. The emperor became ensnared in the elixir by an adept and gradually succumbed to disease. The Taoist Chao (s. year 841) was executed with his associates. Eight Buddhist monasteries were ordered to be built in the capital, and monks and nuns were re-established. The new emperor received a tally from the Taoist priest who had retired.

847 **宣宗皇帝** emperor **Hsüan Tsung**, the thirteenth son of Hien. As Wu's son was too young, the eunuchs brought him forward; he reigned thirteen years and died in his fiftieth year (G. 1191).

He ordered the Buddhist temples to be rebuilt.

848 An Academician had to read to him the "Golden Mirror" 金鏡 left by Tai Tsung (s. year 627) and stopped after the two sentences: "Rebellion has always been the result of inadequate persons being in office; good government will always result, if loyal and excellent persons are in employ." The emperor had them written on a screen, and he read them with folded hands on all occasions.

852 To privately become a monk or a nun, was again prohibited.

857 The emperor, being fond of immortals, called for a Taoist priest and inquired whether everlasting life could be learned. The answer was: "Do away with desires and adore virtue, and it will be a natural result." This Taoist begged to retire into the mountains after several months. Then the emperor became ensnared with the elixir.

858 Great flood in Honan.

859 The emperor got ill from the elixir; a boil grew on his back and he died; the adept and helpers were executed.

860 **懿宗皇帝** emperor **I Tsung**, eldest son of Hsüan, reigned fourteen years and died in his thirty-first year (G. 1219).

A rebellion broke out in Chekiang, but its leader was captured and decapitated in the capital.

862 The emperor became attached to Buddhism and neglected the government. Monks and nuns were allowed in the inner palace, the emperor himself chanting the litany and writing Sanscrit texts; he also went several times into all the temples, giving extravagantly.

864 A rebellion in Annam (s. G. 958).

868 A great rebellion in Kwangsi was suppressed in the following year. A chieftain of the Sha-t'o 沙陀 (at the Balkash lake, branch of the Tuchüe) was presented with the imperial surname Li 李 and the name Kuo-ch'ang 國昌 (s. M. 354).

- 871 The emperor presented to one of the temples 寺 two pulpits of fragrant wood, twenty feet high; he also established vegetarian repasts for 10,000 persons. He also sent officers to receive a relic of Buddha, in spite of all remonstrance. Great flood east of the pass and Honan.
- 874 僖宗皇帝 emperor **Hsi Tsung**, youngest son of I, appointed by the eunuchs, reigned fifteen years and died in his twenty-seventh year (G. 1230). East of the pass, drought and famine. Rebellion in Shantung; many people joined it, because distressed by heavy taxation. The rebels increased in the year 875 to several myriads. Locusts left only barren ground where they passed.
- 876 Earthquake in Shensi; the ground burst and water spouted up, destroying the prefectural city; all the public and private houses disappeared.
- 880 All these years battles were fought with the rebels, but only one of their leaders was killed; the other, Huang Ch'ao 黃巢 (G. 847), took Ch'ang-an, the capital, and exterminated all the relations of the imperial house remaining there; the emperor had fled to Shensi, from where he went to Chengtu (s. G. 1920, the eunuch T'ien Ling-tsz).
- 881 Another rebellion broke out in Kiang-nan.
- 882 Huang's general Chu Wen 朱溫 (G. 475), seeing the rebels becoming disorganized, surrendered to the imperialists and received a commission. He then changed his name into Chu Ts'üan-chung 朱全忠. Li K'o-yung 李克用 (G. 1155), son of Li K'o-chuang (s. year 868), joined him with 40,000 soldiers clad in black, ridiculed as crows by the enemy.
- 883 Li crushed the rebels and re-took Ch'ang-an. He was only twenty-eight years old, the youngest general, but of superior military genius; feared by all. One of his eyes was very small, so that he was called the one-eyed dragon 獨眼龍.
- 884 After another defeat by Li, Ch'ao's general turned against his leader and almost annihilated his followers; his nephew then murdered Ch'ao, his brothers, their wives and children, and took their heads; the Sha-t'o army took them from him and cut his head off.
- 885 The rebels got formidable again under a new leader. The favorite eunuch had a grudge against a high officer and sent two commanders to overpower him; Li K'o-yung (s. year 882) came to his rescue and then marched on to the capital, so that the emperor fled.

- 886 Li asked the emperor to return to his palace and have the chief-eunuch executed, but the latter took possession of the emperor and brought him in safety, pursued by Chu Mei 朱玫, who set up a new emperor. A governor beheaded Chu Mei; the new emperor fled, but was killed at the place of his refuge.
- 888 The emperor returned to Ch'ang-an and died.
- 889 昭宗皇帝 emperor Chao Tsung, seventh son of I, placed on the throne by the eunuchs, reigned sixteen years and was murdered in his thirty-eighth year (G. 1107).
- 890 The prime-minister received permission to humble Li K'o-yung (s. year 882), but was repulsed and his troops scattered; the matter ended in Li's full restoration to all honors, and in the minister's censure (s. G. 611).
- 894 The chief-eunuch, who attempted rebellion in the year 891 and lived in defiance, was executed with all his associates (G. 1920).
- 900 A eunuch imprisoned the emperor, had the door barred and food passed in through a hole in the wall; he appointed a crown prince.
- 901 A general executed the eunuch; the emperor retook the throne, and the crown prince received another appointment, but lost his prospect to the throne. The prime-minister induced Chu Ts'üan-chung (s. year 882) to assist in removing the eunuchs, who were several myriads in number. But before Chu could reach the capital, the chief eunuch captured the emperor and brought him into a safe place. Chu then returned.
- 902 Chu besieged the city where the emperor was kept.
- 903 An officer killed the chief-eunuch and over 160 of his faction. The emperor returned to the capital Ch'ang-an and had all the eunuchs executed, except thirty young ones to sweep the ground.
- 904 Chu Ts'üan-chung, who had been appointed king of Liang 梁王 the year before, murdered the prime-minister and then compelled the emperor to remove his capital with all its inhabitants, from Ch'ang-an (Si-ngan-fu) to his own residence at Lo-yang. There he assassinated him.
- 905 昭宣帝 emperor Chao Hsüan. Chu placed this boy on the throne. He was the ninth son of Chao; reigned three years; was forced to abdicate and then murdered in his seventeenth year. He received the posthumous title, Emperor Ai 哀帝 (G. 1117).
- Chu also murdered all the emperor's brothers, nine princes, and threw their corpses into the Ho. He then killed the prime-

minister and over thirty of his faction. As the minister used to say that he was of pure descent 清流, they were thrown into the Yellow River to be of muddy descent 濁流. Chu also murdered lady Ho 何氏, the empress-dowager.

The T'ang dynasty had lasted 289 years, under twenty-one emperors.

*The Five Dynasties 五代, 907-960.**

*After Liang 梁, After T'ang 唐, After Tsin 晉,
After Han 漢, After Chou 周.*

1. The After Liang 後梁, 907-923.

907 太祖皇帝 emperor T'ai Tsu, Chu Ts'üan-chung (s. year 882), reigned six years, and was murdered by his son in his sixty-first year.

The Liao dynasty also began in this year (s. G. 2445).

The ruler of Huai-nan 淮南 (in Kiangsu and Ngan-wei) used to play ball by torchlight, or to ride out alone, nobody knowing whither; two of his ministers remonstrated under tears, which roused his anger; the two ministers then rose in rebellion. T'ang sent the imperial insignia to Ts'üan-chung of Liang. He changed his name into Kwang 晃 and took the title of emperor. The former T'ang emperor received the title king; he was removed to another city and kept under guard. The emperor conferred the title of king of Chu 楚王 on the governor of Kiang-nan, the title of king of Wu-yüe 吳越 to another (G. 361). The kings of K'i 岐 in Shensi and of 蜀 Shuh in Szechuan made themselves independent.

908 The two ministers in Huai-nan murdered their chief; one of them then killed his rival.

909 The emperor moved his capital to Lo-yang. He made the governor of Min 閩 king of that region. Victorious war with K'i; some territory was gained.

910 Yang Lung-yen 楊隆演 (G. 2398), brother of the murdered chief of Huai-nan, who had been established by the rebellious minister (in the year 908) now called himself king of Wu 吳, changing the name of his dominion (G. 2416).

* Cp. Appendix B.

- 911 The King of Yen 燕 in Chihli (G. 1352) called himself emperor. Yen was absorbed in the year 913 by Ts'in, and the reigning family Liu 劉 exterminated.
- 912 The emperor had illicit intercourse with the wives of his eight sons and intended to make an adopted son, the husband of his most beloved lady, crown prince. The first-born then murdered his father, but was in turn murdered by his younger brother, who ascended the throne.
- 913 梁主貞 Chen,* Lord of *Liang* (G. 477), the third son of Tai Tsu, reigned ten years and committed suicide, when the T'ang troops entered his capital, in his twenty-eighth year.
- 914 A brother of the emperor rebelled and was executed.
- 916 O-pao-ki 阿保機, chief of the K'i-tan 契丹 Tartars, took the title of emperor and started a new chronology (era) 改元.
- 917 A governor made himself sovereign and called his State Yüe 越 and changed it to Han 漢 in the year 918.
- 918 Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勖 (G. 1220) of Tsin 晉 began a great war with Liang, the army of which he defeated (G. 424).
- 919 The king of Wu (s. year 910) strengthened his State and altered the chronology. The king of Wu-yüeh attacked Wu, but was defeated. Of this king it is said that he slept little, took a piece of wood as his pillow and kept writing-materials near him. In Wu it was prohibited to keep weapons privately, but as brigands increased, a sort of militia was drilled in order to protect themselves.
- 921 The imperial insignia which had been lost in the year 880, were found and brought to the king of Tsin (s. year 918).

(2). *The After Tang Dynasty 後唐 (923-936).*

- 923 莊宗皇帝 emperor Chuang Tsung (G. 1220). His name was Li Ts'un-hsü (s. year 918). He made an end of the Liang, reigned three years and was murdered in his thirty-fifth year. When the T'ang took the capital of Liang, the emperor committed suicide. He is known in history as Mo ti 末帝 (G. 477). T'ang moved the capital to Lo-yang.

The emperor was a good musician; he blackened himself sometimes and played on the stage to please his lady Liu 劉夫人.

*He changed his name into 瑒 T'ien.

- 924 The lord of T'ang used to wrestle with Li Ts'un-hsien 李存賢 (an adopted son of Li K'o-yung), who did not use all his strength; but when the lord said, if you can overcome me, you shall be governor, he brought him to the ground and received his appointment.
- 925 An army of 60,000 men was sent against the State of Shuh, which was subdued within seventy days; its ruler surrendering.

In Yieh 鄴, the capital of T'ang in Chibli, disorder arose. When Li Sz-yüan 李嗣源, another adopted son of Li K'o-yung, was sent to restore order, he was forced to join the rebels and marched against and took Ta Liang 大梁 (K'ai-fêng-fu). One of T'ang's eunuchs (musicians) murdered his lord, then Sz-yüan entered Lo-yang, lived in a private house, prevented burning and plundering, got Chuang Tsung's corpse from a lime-kiln and buried it. He first declined the title of emperor, accepted the title regent, but soon he ascended the throne. He caused the empress-dowager and her three sons, the imperial princes, to be killed. He had no knowledge of books; State-papers had to be read to him.

- 926 明宗皇帝 emperor Ming Tsung. He was originally a foreigner, but adopted by Li K'o-yung. He was raised to the throne by the officers of the State; reigned eight years and died in his sixty-seventh year (G. 1205).

The murderer of Chuang was executed with all his family.

- 927 The king of Wu 吳 took the title of emperor (G. 2402). The year was one of abundance. Revolt in Hukuang (G. 948).
- 928 T'ang raised a tax on yeast (G. 1173).
- 929 Another fruitful year. The emperor asked one of the ministers whether the farmers were not pleased; he answered, the farmers die in bad years and suffer in good years, because the grain has no value. Your servant remembers a piece of poetry by Nieh Yi-chung 聶夷中, that says:

In the second month selling the new silk,
In the fifth month selling the new grain,
Is healing the sore before the eye
With flesh torn from the heart.

- The emperor had the verses written and used often to recite them. About the faithful minister An Ch'ung-hui 安重誨 s. G. 9.
- 932 The nine Classics were the first time *cut in wood*, printed and sold; the whole of them was completed in the year 953.
- 933 The king of Min 閩 took the title of emperor. The king of Ts'in revolted and was executed.

934 閔帝 emperor Min, third son of Ming, reigned four months, when he was murdered (G. 1222). The lord of Shuh took the title of emperor (G. 1517). The king of Lu 潞, an adopted son of Ming, rebelled against his step-brother; he defeated the troops sent against him; the commanders surrendering. The emperor fled, but was overtaken; all his followers were killed and he himself captured, dethroned, and then murdered. One of the commanders who had surrendered was also executed with all his family.

A remission of debts was granted to the amount of 3,380,000 (not stated which coin); the poor were much pleased.

廢帝 emperor Fei, the adopted son of Ming, reigned two years; he burned himself in his forty-fifth year (G. 1223).

936 Shih King-t'ang 石敬瑭 (G. 1706), brother-in-law to the emperor, was appointed from his government east of the Ho to another province, which order he did not obey. When troops were sent against him, he asked the K'i-tan Tartars to help him. Their chief Te-kwang 德光 came with 50,000 horse-men, and the T'ang army was badly beaten. The Tartars established Shih King-t'ang as emperor of Tsin; he gave them in return sixteen districts (in Chihli) and a yearly tribute of 300,000 pieces of silk. The T'ang emperor burned himself, when the Tsin emperor entered Lo-yang.

The T'ang had four emperors in thirteen years.

(3). *The After Tsin 後晉, 936-946.*

936 高祖皇帝 emperor Kao Tsu was originally a western barbarian 西夷; the emperor Ming made him his son-in-law and governor. He reigned seven years and died in his fifty-first year (G. 1706).

937 The minister Hsü Chih-kao 徐知誥 of Wu (G. 767) established the State of Tsi 齊, which he soon called *Southern T'ang* 南唐, taking the title of emperor. A general of Tsin rebelled, but submitted again in the following year.

The K'i-tan, changed their name into Liao 遼 and employed Chinese as their officers of government.

939 The king of Southern T'ang took his original family-name Li 李 again; he had been carried away in war in the year 895 and presented to an officer, Hsü, as son (G. 767). In Min 閩 the king was murdered by his uncle, who took the throne and called himself

a vassal of Tsin 晉. In Tsin the building of Buddhist temples was prohibited.

941 Death of the second prince of Wu and Yüeh, caused by the shock received through a second fire in his palace (s. G. 374).

943 出帝 emperor Chuh, son of Kao-tsu's elder brother, reigned three years, when Tsin perished (G. 1710).

The ruler of S. T'ang (s. year 937) became interested in the elixir; in his eagerness of experimenting he got an abscess on the back and died. His son succeeded him (G. 1113). The ruler of Min took the title of emperor and gave his State the name Yin 殷; being small, poor and exhausted by military exactions, his minister Yang 楊 increased the taxes on land and added such on fishing, salt, vegetables, and fruit; the people called him therefore the skinner Yang.

944 The K'i-tan made an inroad, when the emperor himself went at the head of his army and put them to flight.

945 Repulse of a second incursion. The name of the State of Yin (s. year 943) was changed into Min 閩. T'ang destroyed Min.

946 The general of Tsin surrendered with his soldiers to the Tartars; they entered Ta-liang and carried the emperor away as prisoner. The After Tsin had existed for eleven years under two emperors.

(4). *The After Han 後漢, 947-950.*

947 高祖皇帝 emperor Kao Tsu. He was originally a Sha-t'o 沙陀 man (M. 600), Liu Chih-yüan 劉知遠 (G. 1288). He reigned two years and died in his fifty-fourth year. The K'i-tan ravaged the capital and the country around for several hundred li, taking away all the money, so that everybody desired their expulsion. When Liu entered the capital, every town soon submitted to him. He adopted then the name Han for his State. In order to reward his soldiers, the empress Li 李 advised him not to tax the people, but divide the treasures of the palace among them, which he did. He died in the year 948.

949 隱帝 emperor Yin, second son of Kao Tsu, reigned two years; was killed in his twentieth year (Liu Ch'eng-yu, s. G. 1288).

The K'i-tan invaded the North of the Ho; the general Kuo Wei 郭威 was sent against them. Three towns that refused submission to the young emperor, were also subdued.

950 The young emperor had three ministers executed and sent a messenger to kill Kuo Wei, who then marched with his soldiers to the capital. The emperor went with his army to meet him, but was assassinated by his own officers. Kuo wished to place the emperor's brother on the throne, but the soldiers urged him to take the throne himself. Kuo drove the Tartars back on request of the empress-dowager and gave the throne-candidate a position of dignity, but had him murdered soon after that. Thus ended the After Han, having had a duration of only four years under two emperors.

(5). *The After Chou* 後周, 951-960.

951 太祖皇帝 emperor Tai Tsu reigned three years and died in his fifty-third year (G. 1076). Feng Tao 馮道, the inventor of *printing*, entered his service (G. 573).

Ch'ung 崇, a brother of Kao Tsu, made himself independent in Shansi and founded the State of *Northern Han* 北漢 (G. 1331).

The emperor had all the precious things, found in the palace of Han, brought out in the court and there broken to pieces as useless for an emperor; he stopped the tribute of delicacies, ordering the officials to attend to the advancement of the State and the welfare of the people.

952 On an expedition against a rebellious governor, the emperor visited the grave of Confucius and worshipped there.

953 The printing of the Nine Classics, begun in the year 932, was completed and presented to the emperor. The officer Mu Chao-i 毋昭裔 of the State After Shuh 蜀 spent a million to have a school built and the classics printed in his country, and so he introduced learning there.

954 世宗皇帝 emperor Shih Tsung, the son of the brother of the empress 柴, adopted by the emperor because he had no son. He reigned six years and died in his thirty-ninth year (G. 1066).

Ch'ung (s. year 951) of N. Han, hearing of the emperor's death, asked the help of the K'i-tan and attacked Chou at the head of 30,000 men. The young emperor led his army to battle; his right wing got in disorder and over 1,000 men, infantry, surrendered to the Han. The emperor seeing the danger, advanced with his bodyguards and gained a brilliant victory. The commanders and high officers of the right wing, over seventy, he had executed.

[Feng Tao 馮道, the inventor of block-printing, died (born in the year 881).]

- 955 Coin had become rare, because the people had used the metal to make vessels and Buddhas; a proclamation was issued, commanding the people to deliver all metal vessels and idols within fifty days, at penalty of death if after that time five pounds or more were found in anybody's house.

Victorious war with T'ang 唐.

- 956 The emperor went himself against T'ang and gained a great victory. In another battle the T'ang lost 5,000 killed and many drowned. The general of the imperial troops had, after battle, several tens of officers beheaded for not exerting themselves.

Chou had the taxes collected twice, in the sixth and tenth months.

The emperor summoned the recluse Ch'en Tuan 陳搏 (G. 257) and asked about the method of making gold and ascending to Heaven in 100 days; he answered: the emperor should be anxious about the government of the empire and not about such things. The emperor sent him back to his mountain and had the district-magistrate inquire after him.

- 957 The emperor's father killed a person in a quarrel; the magistrate did not dare to deal with the case and the emperor, though knowing of it, did not ask about it.

- 958 The T'ang, being defeated again, yielded the country North of the Yangtse, gave up the title of emperor and acknowledged the sovereignty of Chou (G. 1113). The emperor stimulated husbandry; he had wooden sculptures of a farmer and of a silk mistress made and placed in the courts. He also appointed thirty-four officers to adjust the ground-rent.

- 960 恭帝 emperor Kung, the fourth son of Shih Tsung, was in his seventh year when his father died; he reigned only six months.

Shih Tsung returned ill from a war against the K'i-tan. After his death they invaded the country, pillaging. The general Chao K'uang-yin 趙匡胤 (G. 168) was sent against them; his soldiers put a yellow robe over him, when asleep, and proclaimed him emperor. Thus ended the After Chou dynasty.

*The Sung Dynasty, 宋 960-1127.**

- 960 太祖神德皇帝 emperor Tai Tsu Shen-ta. He reigned sixteen years and died in his fiftieth year (G. 168). The emperor had the temple of Confucius repaired, his portrait and the portraits of all those of his school that shared his honor painted; the emperor himself wrote a eulogy on Confucius and on Yen, the one next to him in honor; the other eulogiums he divided among the high officers to be written by them. He also expressed his desire that both civil and military officers should pass through a course of study. The emperor quelled two rebellions, instigated by governors of Chou, and had several hundred implicated persons executed.
- 962 The emperor told the premier that during the Five dynasties the law had been broken by not submitting every sentence of death to the court; as human life was of the utmost importance, such cases should, in future, be presented to the emperor in writing and be subjected to a scrutiny by the criminal board. Chao P'u 趙普 (G. 178) was placed on the Privy Council, and he helped in the reforms.
- 964 The emperor issued a criminal code. He went on an expedition against the Southern Han, conquered a place and captured a high officer, who confessed that in Han the punishments of roasting, flaying, knife-hill, and sword-tree were in use, also fighting with tigers and elephants; that the taxes were heavy, and every person entering the city had to pay a cash. The emperor became startled and wished to liberate the people, when the united forces of Shuh 蜀 and Northern Han 北漢 invaded Sung. The emperor sent an army of 60,000 men, infantry and cavalry, under the general Wang Ch'üan-pin 王全斌 (G. 2009) against Shuh, which was defeated and two districts conquered.
- 965 General Wang conquered five districts and entered the capital of Shuh, when its king surrendered (G. 1514). The whole campaign was finished in sixty-six days. The general devoted himself with his officers to feasting, and his soldiers became disorderly, carried women away, and took goods by force. The emperor wanted the soldiers of Shuh to be sent to his capital and that Wang should pay

*Also called *Northern Sung*.

them, but he subtracted so much from their pay that over 100,000 revolted. Wang had to restrict himself to the defence of the capital of Shuh. When the emperor saw the chamber-utensils of the king of Shuh adorned with gems, he had them broken to pieces, saying, if these are made so precious, what is to be done with dinner services?

966 The two provinces (the whole) of Shuh were incorporated into Sung and pacified. The Ta-tas 鞑靼 brought tribute.

967 General Wang and his friends were recalled and for their evil behavior lowered in rank.

968 Sung went against the State of Northern Han, which was saved by the K'i-tan. A minister of N. Han murdered his king and placed the king's brother on the throne (G. 1280).

969 The K'i-tan murdered their chief; Yeltichien 耶律賢 took his place. The K'i-tan were defeated, when again helping N. Han against Sung.

970 The emperor called a private scholar, Wang Chao-su 王昭素, to be professor at the school of nobles, he was over seventy years of age. The emperor asked him about the government of the State and keeping the body in health; the answer was: love the people and diminish your lusts. The emperor liked these words and wrote them on a screen. The salary of the provincial, prefectural, and district magistrates was increased. A general was sent against South Han (G. 1273), whose ruler surrendered in the year 971. T'ang took the name Kiang-nan 江南 and sent an ambassador to the imperial court.

972 Great rain burst the embankments of the Ho. The emperor dismissed from the 380 and more inmates of his harem one hundred with rich presents.

973 First examination of candidates in the palace 殿試. The general ritual (etiquette) was revised by imperial order in 200 parts or chapters 卷.

974 A general, Ts'ao Pin 曹彬 (G. 2009), was sent with 100,000 men against Kiang-nan (G. 1236). He defeated the troops of that State and surrounded its capital, Nanking. Suddenly he became ill; when his high officers visited him, he told them that his illness could not be cured by medicine, but by an oath from everyone of them, not indiscriminately to kill one person after entering Nanking. They consented and burned incense as a pledge of the oath. Ts'ao was declared well the following day and the city fell the day after; the king surrendered.

976 The emperor gave Ts'ao a donation of 500,000 cash and a place as governor. The king of the State of Wu-yüeh appeared at court (G. 365). All the districts of Kiangnan surrendered except one, where an officer killed his superior and fortifying himself held out for four months, when he made a vigorous sally, was caught and beheaded. The victorious soldiers then took possession of the valuables and butchered the people. The troops of N. Han were defeated, but rescued by the K'i-tan. The emperor lived in tender friendship with his younger brother Kwang-yi 光義, attended to him personally in illness and burned moxa for him when he suffered from pain.

977 太宗皇帝 emperor T'ai Tsung (G. 160), brother of T'ai Tsu, who left his appointment, at his death, in charge of the empress. He reigned twenty-two years and died in his fifty-ninth year.

Lü Meng-cheng 呂蒙正 (G. 1453), a doctor of the board of rites, and others were presented with private residences 及第. First tribute of pearls from Yung-chou 容州, 100 catties. Duty on spirits. Death of Kuo Chin (G. 1058).

978 A college was built 崇文院 and a library placed there, containing 80,000 volumes 卷.

The king of Wu-yüeh 吳越 submitted with his territory and received an appointment as a king.

979 The emperor led in person an army against N. Han, whose king surrendered, when his capital Tai-yüen 太原 was beleaguered (G. 1285). The emperor then turned against the K'i-tan, whose chief, Yeluyuko 耶律休哥, fought him in a great battle; the emperor was defeated and returned. The eldest son of T'ai Tsu claimed a reward for his merits against N. Han; being refused, he committed suicide.

980 The K'i-tan made an inroad with 100,000 men. Yang Yieh 楊業 with several hundred of his horse-men slew them, killed their general and the Tartars suffered a great defeat.

They returned again to plunder, when the emperor himself opposed them, so that they withdrew. Chang Yung 張詠 (G. 136) beheaded a servant for having stolen one cash.

981 The vice-president of the ministers took the elixir 丹砂, got poisoned and died. The Nü-cheng 女貞 sent an embassy with tribute.

982 The emperor's younger brother wanted to be his successor, but he was degraded and kept under a guard.

Li Chi-fung 李繼捧 appeared at court; his brother Chi Chien 繼遷 rebelled, went to the N. W., where he showed the picture of his grandfather to the Jung people 戎; his followers increased daily; thus began the trouble of the State of Hia 夏.

983 Yao T'an 姚坦 was made attendant to the emperor's fifth son, who was fond of making artificial hills, on which he drank wine with his friends. T'an would not join; when urged, he said, those hills were blood-hills; because he had seen among the people fathers, sons and brothers beaten by the tax-collectors till the blood flowed and covered their bodies. When the emperor heard of this saying, he had the artificial hills levelled. The emperor made Lü Wen-chung 呂文仲 an academician, and his reader, Wang Chu 王著, his secretary. He studied every day from about ten o'clock in the forenoon to four or five in the afternoon, when he closed his books. The historian, who was in charge of the revision of the encyclopaedia Tai-ping-yü-lan 太平御覽 had to bring forward three chapters 卷 every day; the whole being in 1,000 chapters.

984 As the books in the library (s. year 978) were not complete, rewards were offered, for 300 kien and upwards an office, and other gifts for less.

985 Li Chi-chien (s. year 982) beguiled and killed a governor and took possession of a district in Shensi; troops were sent against him. A famine occurred in Kiang-nan and officers were sent to give relief. An ambassador was sent to Korea to form an alliance against the K'i-tan.

986 Li Chi-chien united with the K'i-tan. The Chinese generals sent against them were defeated and three provinces ransacked in consequence, till the commander of Tai Chou 代州 defeated them, beheaded several hundred Tartars, caught 2,000 horses and a large quantity of arms.

988 Li Chi-fung (s. year 982) received an appointment as governor of a district; the imperial family-name of Chao 趙 was granted to him, and he was told that his brother Li Chi-chien would be received into office, if he would return.

989 The K'i-tan continued their incursions; they even carried the people away to the N. E. of Chihli. No rain fell from the third to the fifth month; a pagoda was built 360 feet high at an expense of several hundreds of thousands and took eight years to be built. Some relics of Buddha were deposited there. Great drought; there was no rain from autumn to the winter. The K'i-tan chieftain (s. year 979)

suffered a severe defeat at the hands of the Sung officer Yin Chih-lun 尹繼倫.

- 990 In Kiang-chou (Kiukiang) in the family of Chen King 陳競 the members lived together for fourteen generations, numbering now 1,200; as their provisions were not quite sufficient, they received a governmental grant of 2,000 piculs yearly.

The K'i-tan installed Li Chi-chien as king of Hia (s. year 982).

- 991 Great drought and locusts. As the prayer for rain was ineffective, the emperor told his chancellor that he intended to immolate himself to respond to heaven's reprimand. The following day a great rain fell and all locusts died. Li Chi-chien surrendered and received an appointment in Shensi, also the imperial family-name of Chao. His brother (s. year 988) now rebelled and joined the K'i-tan, who made him king of Ping-si 平西.

The Nü-cheng (s. year 981) discontinued their tribute and joined the K'i-tan, because the emperor had refused them permission to attack the K'i-tan.

- 993 Wang Siao-po 王小波, a subject of Szechuan, became incensed against the inequality between rich and poor, he started a rebellion, took two districts, killed a magistrate, whose belly he filled with money in hatred of his insatiability. His followers increased, but he was soon afterwards killed in battle, when Li Shun 李順 became the leader of the communists. There was a flood in autumn, and the Ho burst its northern bank in winter.

- 994 Li Shun took possession of the capital of Szechuan, Ch'eng-tu. The eunuch Wang Chi-en 王繼恩 was appointed commander of the two Chuen (E. and W.); he retook the capital and captured Li Shun, whom he executed. Chang Yü 張餘, Li's successor in the command of the communists, took two other districts, but he was captured in the following year and the movement brought to an end. The two Chao, former Li's (s. year 991), caused further trouble; one was taken prisoner, but Chi-chien fled, and the general, sent after him in the year 996, returned unsuccessful. Earthquake in the Ts'in and Tsin prefectures. It was a plenteous year.

- 997 After the emperor's death Li Chi-chien tendered his submission, received an appointment, and his (imperial) name, which had been cancelled in the year 994, was restored.

- 998 眞宗皇帝 emperor Chen Tsung (G. 153), the third son of T'ai Tsung, reigned twenty-five years and died in his fifty-fifth year. There was some trouble to place him on the throne, s. G.

1459. He struck off debts to the crown to over ten millions and released over 3,000 prisoners.

999 Drought. The emperor appointed a commission of scholars, Ying Ping 邢昺 among them, to revise the commentaries to the Chou Li, I-li, Kung-yang, Kuh-liang, Hiao-king, Lung-yü, and Erh-ya.

The K'i-tan under Lung-hsi 隆緒 made an incursion. The emperor led his troops against them.

1000 The K'i-tan turned, but an imperial general pursued and beat them.

1001 Copies of the Nine Classics were given to the prefectural and district-schools. Chao Pao-chieh (s. year 997) rebelled again and caused much trouble during the following years.

1004 Earthquake at the capital. The K'i-tan chief (s. year 999) and his mother, lady Hsiao 蕭, made an incursion with a great crowd of people. K'ou Chun 寇準 (G. 985) advised the emperor to take the command against them. He crossed the Yellow River to Shan-chou 檀, where the Chinese were victorious in an engagement with several thousand Tartar horse-men, of whom they beheaded the greater half; but the emperor accepted a treaty, by which he granted a yearly payment of 100,000 taels silver and 200,000 pieces silk.

1005 For graduation, *six standards* were fixed: (1) persons *honest* in conduct and counsel, (2) persons well versed in *political* and *educational* matters, (3) of theoretical and practical superiority, (4) of administrative ability, (5) well acquainted with the theory of war, (6) skilled in military affairs.

Those that had passed the preliminary examination, were reported to the emperor and inspected by him in person.

1006 Chao Pao-chieh (s. year 1001), who died in the year 1003, was succeeded by his son Chao Te-ming 德明; he begged to submit and received an appointment as governor.

1008 Wang Chin-joh 王欽若 (M. 802) fabricated a book of silk, twenty feet long, which he made appear as having come down from heaven 天書 (G. 1816), so that the emperor bowed twice in receiving it; he also built a Taoist terrace for reception of spiritual gifts. Another minister, Ch'en Yao-sao 陳堯叟, opened and read the book, which was in the style of the Hung-fan 洪範 (s. Shu-king) and the Tao-te-king, praising the peaceful government and excellency of the emperor. They induced the emperor to offer sacrifice on the T'ai mountain 封禪, which he did, assisted by Wang-tan 王旦 (M. 821). He built a special palace for the Heavenly book.

In passing the birthplace of Confucius, he granted the title of king 王 to the sage.

- 1009 The adept 方士 Wang Chung-cheng 王中正 was made commander of the body guard. Great fire at Nanking. Drought and locusts in Shensi.
- 1010 Drought and locusts in autumn. Famine in Shensi.
- 1011 The emperor sacrificed to the Great Earth 后土 in Shansi and granted a great amnesty.
- 1012 Lin Pu 林逋 studied diligently the best lyrics and pursued no other aim, but remained poor; he built a hut on the Kwu hill 孤山 of the Western lake at Hangchou; the emperor gave him an allowance of millet and silk. A temple was built for sacrificing to the five sacred mountains 嶽. He also built a temple for the worship of his ancestor Chao Hsian-ming 趙玄明. He therefore stripped the title of Confucius of the character 玄 hstian.
- 1013 Duty on agricultural implements was abolished. An officer presented 37,000 mushrooms 芝草.
- 1014 The emperor visited the temple of Lao Tsz, built by him at Po-chou 亳 and gave to the sage the title of emperor. Advice against it by Sun Shih 孫奭 (M. 633) had no effect.
- 1016 Locusts in the imperial ground. The prefect Ts'ao Wei 曹瑋 defeated the Tufan 吐蕃 and decapitated over 1,000; this broke their power.

Great assembly of Taoists and Buddhists in the Great Peace hall 大安殿, total 13,086 men, because the great white star had appeared in daytime; they erected a platform and prayed for luck.

[1019-1086 Sz Ma-kuang 司馬光, author of the T'ung Chien, Mirror of History.]

- 1022 Death of the emperor. His successor was only thirteen years old. The empress-dowager Liu 劉, a clever woman of low birth, who since 1012 had interfered more and more, attended to the government. The chief eunuch and the prime-minister were denounced as having dangerous designs; the eunuch was executed, the prime-minister escaped. 100 mou of field were granted to the college at Yin-chou 兗州 in Shantung, the first instance of such a grant. Sun Shih (s. year 1014) and others lectured on the Confucian Analects 論語.

仁宗皇帝 emperor Jen Tsung (G. 144), sixth son of Chen Tsung, reigned forty-two years and died in his fifty-fourth year.

- 1024 The emperor went to the High-school and paid his respects to Confucius. A descendant of Confucius distinguished himself about this time (G. 1054).
- 1026 It rained so much around the capital that the water stood several feet over the level ground. The huts of the people were destroyed and several hundred persons killed. The flood extended north of the Ho and south of the Kiang and Huai. The emperor reduced his viands, extended pardon, remitted the people's rent and supported the vagrant population.
- 1028 Chao Te-ming (s. year 1006) caused his son Yüan-hao 元昊 to take possession of two districts, then he appointed him crown prince. He was a character of ability with rich resources, a painter, an inventor of things; he understood Buddhism and both foreign and Chinese literature. This caused the increase of power of Western Hia. A great flood occurred in autumn.
- 1029 Famine among the K'i-tan; some came over the border; fields and food were granted them.
Earthquake at the capital.
- 1032 Fire in the imperial palace, extending to eight buildings.
The king of Hia (s. year 1028) died, and his son Yüan-hao (G. 195) succeeded him on the throne.
- [1032-1085 Ch'eng Hao 程顥; 1033-1107 Ch'eng I 程頤, two brothers famous for their scholarship.*]
- 1033 The empress-dowager died and the emperor took now the reins of the government. He stopped the building and repairing of Buddhist and Taoist temples; he also removed adventurers from office to the delight of all. Drought and locusts appeared in autumn. The empress, lady Kuo 郭, was degraded, because she slapped the face of one of the court-ladies Shang 尙; the emperor, going to her rescue, received some slaps on his neck. Two ministers, Fan (s. year 1036) and K'ung, who pleaded for the empress, were lowered in rank.
- 1034 Chao Yüan-hao (s. year 1032) rose against the Sung.
- 1036 The K'i-tan had, for the first time, an examination for doctors of law 進士. Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹 (G. 535) and Ou Yang-hsiu 歐陽修 (G. 1592) were lowered in rank with others, to warn the officers against speaking about matters outside their official duties. This was in accordance with the suggestion of the prime-minister Lü I-kien 呂夷簡 (G. 1446).

*Tutors of Chu Hsi.

- 1037 Earthquake in the capital and country around; many houses fell; over 22,000 persons were killed and 5,600 received injury.
- 1038 Earthquake at the capital.
- 1039 Chao Yüan-hao 趙元昊 (G. 195), calling himself emperor of Hia, caused trouble. Wang-te-yung 王德用 begged to get the command of troops against him, but as he looked similar to the imperial ancestor and was liked in the army, the emperor declined and kept him from office. Chao was stripped of all his honors and his marauding soldiers were defeated by Ti Ts'ing 狄青 (M. 668),
- 1040 Fighting with the Hia troops. Han K'i 韓琦 (G. 610) pacified Shensi; his sub-general relieved Szechuan with 7,000 men after a forced march of seventy *li* in one night. The officer Chung Shih-heng 种世衡 fortified a city against the Hia. For water, a well had to be dug; when 150 feet deep, the workmen struck a rock, but no water, and stopped their work; Chung had the rock pierced and got water. He had farms laid out in connection with the military camps and encouraged trade, so that the city became wealthy. Money was coined in value of ten cash a piece.
- 1041 Yüan-hao made an incursion for plunder; the sub-general sent against him found on the road-side several boxes with silver outside, well closed, but something was heard inside. When opened, over 100 *pigeons* flew up above the army. The Hia then came forward from four sides; the general was killed and 10,300 of his soldiers; this caused trembling in the East of the pass.
- 1042 The K'i-tan wanted ten districts. The statesman Fu Pi 富弼 (M. 143, G. 597) arranged the peace for the increase of the yearly tribute (s. year 1004) of 100,000 taels of silver and so many pieces of silk. Yüan-hao invaded again Wei-chou 渭 (in Shensi); the general sent against him, was defeated and killed. The measures of Han K'i (s. year 1040) and Fan Chung-yen (s. year 1036) made them retire. The retired scholar Sun Fu 孫復, for writing a work on the Spring-Autumn, was recommended to the emperor.
- 1043 Yüan-hao asked for peace. Ou Yang-hsiu, being appointed censor, forwarded his paper on Factions 朋黨. Earthquake to the East of the Ho.
- 1044 Schools were ordered in every prefecture and district. A high-school was established with 200 pupils in the highest department. The emperor paid then his respects to Confucius. He promoted all his relatives. Yüan-ho was acknowledged as king of the State of Hia (which continued until the year 1227).

- 1045 Fan (s. year 1036), Fu (s. year 1042), Han (s. year 1040) and others were lowered in rank because of envy.
- 1047 Great drought. A soldier of Chihli, Wang Tsé 王則, rose in rebellion, taking a city.
- 1048 The officer Wen Yen-po 文彥博 (G. 2309) had the rebel seized and executed at the capital; he was made minister. Yüan-hao died and his son Liang-tsu 諒祚, not quite one year of age, succeeded and received imperial recognition. Great flood N. of the Ho, East of the capital.
- 1049 In consequence of the flood the people wandered about for food. Fu Pi (s. year 1042), who was governor in a prefecture of Shantung, opened the granaries and got private help, so that he could save over 500,000 persons, lodging them in over 100,000 private and public houses. Among them were about 10,000 soldiers. He declined a reward from the emperor, as he had only done his duty. The emperor also found that Fu had wheat in his garden instead of flowers, to become acquainted with the *difficulties of agriculture*. The Annamese Nung Chih-kao 儂智高 rebelled and invaded Kuangsi.
- 1052 Ti Ts'ing 狄青 received the command against Nung, who had occupied three prefectures. Ti had the former incompetent general beheaded, which overawed the other officers.
- 1053 Ti defeated Nung by a night-attack; several thousand heads were cut off, over 500 prisoners taken; the killed amounted to about 10,000. Nung fled to Yünnan and peace was restored in the South.
- 1054 Cholera 疫 at the capital.
- 1055 The title of Confucius' descendant, forty-seventh generation, was changed into 衍聖公 Yen Shen K'ung.
- 1056 By a great flood the altar of the god of land and grain was ruined. Pao Ch'eng 包拯 (G. 1621) became prefect. He was much feared for his integrity. His smile was compared to the clear water of the Yellow River (*i. e.*, he smiled very seldom); even women and children knew his fame.
- 1057 The scholars of the time acquired a most artificial style. The literary chancellor Ou Yang-hsiu (s. year 1036) discouraged it and a reform commenced.
- 1059 About 500 palace ladies were set free.
- 1060 Ou Yang presented the New History of the T'ang, on which he and Sung K'i 宋祁 (G. 1828) had worked for seventeen years. Wen Yen-po (s. year 1048) and Ou Yang recommended Wang An-shih 王安石

(G. 2134), who presented a volume in 10,000 sentences on reform to the emperor. Chao Pien 趙抃 (G. 176) was an opponent.

1061 *Sze-ma Kwang* 司馬光 (G. 1756) came into office.

1064 **英宗皇帝** emperor **Ying Tsung**, adopted son of Jen Tsung, who had no heir, reigned four years and died in his thirty-sixth year (G. 184). During his illness, the empress-dowager Ts'ao 曹 was regent, but withdrew from the intrigues of the eunuchs, when he was well again (G. 1998).

1065 Great flood at the capital, destroying an incalculable amount of buildings, men, beasts and goods.

1066 The K'i-tan altered the name of their State again into Liao 遼. The Hia caused trouble at the border.

1067 Death of the emperor. Earthquake at the capital. Wang An-shih became literary chancellor.

1068 **神宗皇帝** emperor **Shen Tsung** (G. 157), eldest son of Ying Tsung, reigned eighteen years and died in his thirty-eighth year. Earthquakes at the capital, six times from the seventh to the eleventh month. A great earthquake also occurred in Ho-peì.

1069 Wang An-shih got an opportunity to put his new plans into practice. The Ho dried up. Earthquake and drought. A commission of eight, with Ch'eng Hao 程顥 (M. 107, G. 278) as chief, was appointed to investigate the economical condition of the empire. The salt monopoly was established. Six ministers, who opposed Wang's measures, were dismissed. The law of equal taxation 均輸 was put in practice. Su Chê 蘇轍 (G. 1773), who disagreed with Wang, was dismissed. The law of advancing money to farmers in spring 青苗 on two per cent. interest per month, payable in the fall, was put in force. Lü Huei-ch'ing 呂惠卿, an adherent of Wang, was appointed imperial lecturer, in spite of Sze-ma Kwang's opposition.

1070 Han K'i (a. year 1040) and two other high officers, asking to have the law of advancing money repealed, were degraded. Su Shih 蘇軾 (G. 1785) was turned out of office for criticising the new laws; the same fate happened to Sze-ma Kwang and other dignitaries. The law of mutual responsibility 保甲法 was adopted. The law of paying money for socage was put in practice. Sze-ma Kwang spoke against it, and said, that farmers got too little money in good years, as goods became cheap, and in bad years they had to cut down their useful trees, kill their cattle and sell their fields to get the money.

1071 All the public fields kept for charitable purposes were sold and the money used as the capital, from which advances were made, 青苗本錢. For examinations he abolished the writing of verses; one of the Classics, Yi, Shu, Shih, Chou-li, Li-ki and in addition Analects and Mencius were required. The essay was in form of a general *discourse* 論 and a *résumé* 策. Fu Pi (s. year 1042) was lowered in rank and Ou Yang (s. year 1060) deprived of all honors for their opposition. A high school was opened with three classes, the lowest containing 700 pupils, the middle 300 and the highest 100. Examinations were held every month. Each pupil could select one of the Classics.

1072 New market regulation. What people could not sell of their goods, they had to give to the official for a fixed price, or exchange goods from him.

One or two horses were given to a family, the neighbourhood being held responsible; yearly inspection was held and dead or sick animals had to be paid for, and replaced. Ou Yang died after finishing his new history of the Five Dynasties, but he could not present it. Tang K'iuang 唐炯 impeached Wang in sixty paragraphs, which he read in the emperor's hearing, with a loud voice, to the end, though several times told to stop. He was transferred to a small post in Canton province. The Shao-hua mountain 少華山 slipped, the ground split, engulfing several hundreds of families (in Shensi, Si-ngan).

1073 A lecture-hall was opened for explaining the meaning of the Shih, Shu and Chou-li. Wang An-shih presided; the emperor wished to call Ch'eng Hao (s. year 1069), which Wang prevented. Wen Yen-po (s. year 1048) was dismissed for his opposition to the market-law. A law-school was opened, where all candidates for the government had to study. Chou Tun-i 周敦頤 (G. 425), the famous originator of the *Sung philosophy*, died. He was a good manager of prisons. Great plague of locusts. Military graduates were first required to write *résumés* 策. The Turfan made an incursion, plundering, but were repelled by Wang Shao 王韶, four of their cities were taken. The barbarians south of the Yangtze were pacified and a new prefecture organised in Hukwang.

1074 The Liao sent an embassy about border regulation. No rain fell from the seventh month to the fourth. An officer, Cheng Hsieh 鄭俠 (G. 273), presented a sketch of the homeless people and charged Wang An-shih as the cause of the drought, begging to forfeit his

head, if it would not rain within ten days after the dismissal of him. The emperor sighed repeatedly, when looking over the sketch; he could not sleep all night and abolished the new laws the following day. The people rejoiced and congratulated one another and a plenteous rain fell the same day. Cheng, however, was slandered by the host of his opponents and imprisoned; the new laws were also revived. The empress-dowager complained, with tears, that Wang An-shih confused the empire; this made the emperor suspect him. Wang An-shih also felt uneasy and begged to resign. His friend Lü Huei-ch'ing (s. year 1069) caused all friends to petition for the retention of An-shih under false names. An-shih in recognition proposed Han Chiang 韓絳 as his successor and Huei-ch'ing as his assistant, to which the emperor consented. The two ministers upheld the new laws in the language of the time, Chiang like a preaching monk and Ch'ing like a protecting god.

First duty on Szechuan tea (Shuh). The self-valuation law 手實法 was put in force. It included all property down to chickens and pigs; only the daily food and table utensils excepted. He, who pointed out any fraud, received one-third of the forfeit.

- 1075 Cheng Hsieh (s. year 1074) sent a paper to the throne against Lü Huei-ch'ing, who counteracted by asking Cheng's death. The emperor declined this, but sent Cheng into exile to the Canton province. Wang An-shih's brother An-kuo 安國 (G. 2133) disliked the new laws and often remonstrated with his brother; he called Huei-ch'ing a sycophant 佞人, who hated him for it. An-shih in power again. He introduced his new explanation of the Shih, Shu and Chou-li into the high-school as the standard, to make an end of the differences among the students. The Spring-Autumn Classic he disallowed as a textbook. He published a kind of dictionary 字說 in twenty-four chapters with Buddhist and Taoist coloring. The frontier negotiation with Liao was not successful, An-shih recommended to give what afterwards could be easily retaken; thus a strip of land 700 li wide was given up, the cause of another war. The law of self-valuation was suspended.

The Cochinchinese invaded and plundered two prefectures of Canton province.

- 1076 When the city of Yung-chou 雍州 fell in their hands, the governor, Su Chien 蘇緘, first ordered the members of his family, thirty-six persons, to die, whom he buried; then he burned himself to death.

The inhabitants, inspired by this example, did not submit to the enemy and were all butchered; over 58,000 persons.

An-shih retired from office because of his health. The commander, Kuo Kwei 郭逵, defeated the Cochinchinese and recovered the land.

- 1077 The Ho burst its banks and flooded a district of Chihli. The famous Honan philosopher, Shao Yung 邵雍 (M. 594), died, and another philosopher, Chang Tsai 張載 (G. 117), of equal fame, met the same fate; both were masters of the *Sung school*.
- 1078 The emperor brought Buddhist and Taoist questions before Lü Kung-chu 呂公著; he asked whether Yao and Shun knew about these; the emperor answered, certainly! Though it is so, said Lü, they were Yao and Shun, because they realised the difficulty of knowing men and giving peace to the people. The emperor became silent.
- 1079 The governor Su Shih (s. year 1070) was degraded and sent to a smaller post for writing some satirical pieces of poetry against the politics of the time.
- 1081 The embankment of the Yellow River was renewed between Ta-ming 大名 in Chihli and Ying-chou 瀛州 in Honan. A general of the Hia advised his king, Ping Chang 秉常, to submit to China; the king's mother hearing of it, had the general executed and the king confined. China appointed the eunuch Li Hsien 李憲 to lead an army against Hia. The army assembled, but Li remained absent, so that the troops dispersed.
- 1082 The Hia took Yung-loh 永樂, killed there several hundreds of officers and over 200,000 men.
- 1083 The Hia ravaged another prefecture. Li Hsien was dismissed. In the fourth month (summer) a great snow fell in Liao, over ten feet deep on level ground; horses died six to seven in every ten.
- 1084 Sze-ma Kwang (s. year 1061) presented his *History of China* 資治通鑑, in 354 chapters 卷, to the emperor. He had completed it in nineteen years.
- 1085 Death of the emperor. The crown prince, ten years old, succeeded. The empress-dowager reigned for him. She sent away the workmen engaged in beautifying the capital, stopped the making of war materials, prohibited the extension of industrial art, dismissed the most objectionable of attendants and interdicted all high-hand dealings of the employees. Ch'eng Hao (s. year 1069) was called to be minister of cultus, but he died before arriving at the capital.

Sü chi 徐積 received an imperial grant of millet and silk for his filial piety. As his father's name was "stone" 石, he never used stone-vessels all his life, and meeting a stone, he did not even step on it, but took a turn. Sze-ma Kwang was appointed premier and Lü Kung-chu (s. year 1078) his associate. The two were of the same mind and worked for the welfare of the people to the delight of the latter. Wang An shih's laws were abolished.

1086 哲宗皇帝 emperor Ch'eh Tsung (G. 158), the sixth son of Shen Tsung, reigned fifteen years and died in his twenty-fifth year.

The remnants of An-shih's innovations, self-valuation and pay for socage. Ch'eng I 程頤 (G. 280) was called in his brother's place (s. year 1085). The aged Wen Yen-po (s. year 1048), eighty-one years old, was raised to the ministry. Professors of the Spring-Autumn Classic were appointed. Lü Huei-ch'ing (s. year 1069) and his friends were dismissed. Wang An-shih died (s. G. 2134).

Following Sze-ma Kwang's advice, ten branches of public examination and kinds of graduates were fixed by law: (1) Unwavering in righteous conduct, for model teachers; (2) Honesty without a blame, for the office of treasurer; (3) Bravery unequalled, for commanders; (4) Public spirited and wise, for superintendents; (5) A clear understanding of the Classics, for lecturers; (6) Extensive learning, for counsellors; (7) A fine style, for secretaries; (8) Good in hearing litigations, for judges; (9) Good in managing finances, for public and private officials; (10) Well versed in the laws and regulations, for deciding legal questions.

Sze-ma Kwang died in his sixty-eighth year of age.

1087 Wang An-shih's explanation of the Classics, etc. (s. year 1075), was abandoned at examinations. Ch'eng I (s. year 1076) was dismissed from office owing to Su Shih's (s. year 1070) envy. There were three 黨 factions against one another: that of Lo 洛 in Honan with Ch'eng I as head; that of Shuh 蜀 (Szechuan) with Su Shih as leader; and that of Shuo 朔 in Chihli with Liu Chih 劉摯 as head.

1090 The Hia returned 149 men they had taken from Yung-loh (s. year 1082) and received some districts in exchange, which made them proud.

1091 Great flood; at Hangchou, in Chekiang, 500,000 persons died; in Soochou 300,000. A million piculs of rice were distributed and 200,000 strings of cash (each 1,000).

1092 Earthquake at Shensi. Lady Meng 孟 was made empress.

- 1093 Great flood at the capital east and west, in the North of Honan and in the South of Wei. The empress-dowager Kao 高 died. She had conducted the government for nine years in such an excellent way that the people called her the Yao and Shun among women.

The emperor took the government into his own hands. He recalled Lü Huei-ch'ing (s. year 1069) and friends and dismissed Liu An-shih 劉安世 (G. 1270) for speaking against it. Narrow-minded people filled the offices and the new laws were all revived.

- 1094 Chang Tun 章惇 (G. 123) got into power. Su Chê (s. year 1069) and friends, five men, were dismissed. The posthumous titles of Sze-ma Kwang and Lü Kung-chu (s. year 1078) were taken away, their memorial-stones overturned. The record 實錄 of Shen Tsung was revised again.

- 1096 Hsi Yüen 襲原, a pupil of Wang An-shih, was made director of the school of nobles; he introduced again An-shih's lexicon 字說, his explanation of the Hung-fan 洪範 (part of the Shu) and Wang Fang's (An-shih's son) meaning of the Analects and Mencius, which were cut on blocks for the students.

- 1097 The deceased Sze-ma Kwang, Lü Kung-chu and partisans were deprived of their official rank (in the other world). The Spring-Autumn study was again prohibited. Five officers were banished to Canton and thirty dismissed. Several scholars were commanded to summarise Sze-ma Kwang's official papers and to preserve them in the archives, as a warning to after generations. A petition was made to destroy Kwang's historical work, but refused on the advice of a great scholar.

- 1098 Earthquake at the capital.

- 1099 A court was established to re-examine old cases of political criminals from twenty to thirty years ago, and 830 families were found guilty. The empress Meng 孟 had been degraded in the year 1096; the emperor now made the palace lady Liu 劉 empress.

- 1100 Death of the emperor. The empress-dowager assisted his successor in the government. On the advice of the new prime minister the offices were restored to thirty-three dead dignitaries (s. year 1097). The empress-dowager then withdrew. The prime-minister of the late emperor was dismissed on account of the cruel punishments against political offenders, as nailing their feet, flaying, decapitation, the tearing out of the tongue.

- 1101 徽宗皇帝 emperor Hui Tsung, eleventh son of Shen Tsung, adopted by Chêh Tsung, who had no son; he reigned twenty-five

years, was carried away by the Kin Tartars and died in their city in his fifty-fourth year (G. 145).

Ts'eng Pu 曾布 became premier, he called Ts'ai King 蔡京 (G. 1971) to his assistance.

- 1102 Earthquake in Ho-tung (east), felt in eleven districts 郡. The eunuch T'ung Kuan 童貫 (G. 2108) received orders to superintend the fabrication of all kinds of things for the palace. He took up his residence at Hangchou and Suchou, where several thousand workmen were engaged daily; the people had to furnish the materials and felt it a heavy burden. Sze-ma Kwang and forty-four friends were again degraded, and twenty-one of their pupils were prohibited from office at the capital; Su Chê (s. year 1069) and over fifty of his friends suffered the same disfavor. A stone pillar was erected before the palace-gate with 120 names engraved on it (increased to 309 in the year 1104), Sze-ma Kwang heading them, as a clique of traitors 奸黨. The censor Ch'en Kuan 陳攢 and sixteen of his friends were sent away to a distance. Those who had sent papers to the emperor between the year 1098 and his death, were divided into forty-one correct 正 and over 500 at fault 邪; the latter were all dismissed.
- 1103 Still more officers were removed. Order was given to destroy Sze-ma Kwang's portrait. The traitors' pillar was ordered for every prefecture and every district. The stone-cutter An Min 安民 first refused; when threatened with punishment, he begged under tears not to cut his name in the corner for fear to offend future generations.
- 1104 An adept 方士 was directed to settle the musical scale and cast nine vases. An order was issued that all the gold and silver from the mines in the empire should be sent to the imperial treasury. The portraits of Wang An-shih and friends were placed in the palace pavilion, and Wang also as associate into Confucius' temple; his place was next to Mencius.
- Great plague of locusts. A school of calligraphy, painting and mathematics was established.
- 1106 Because of some phenomena among the stars, the emperor listened to a counsellor, pardoned those 500 who had sent remonstrations (s. year 1102) and sent a eunuch at midnight to break the pillar containing the 309 proscribed names. Ts'ai King (s. year 1101) was dismissed.
- 1107 Ts'ai King became premier again. Ch'eng I (s. year 1086) died in his seventy-fifth year. He took the Four books as his basis and the

Sages as his teachers, wrote on the Yi and the Spring-Autumn, and taught without fatigue; many famous scholars came from his school.

The Yellow River became clear at a distance of 800 *li* for some days and nights.

- 1109 A high official impeached T'ung Kuan (s. year 1102); the emperor would not listen, but rose, when the officer caught hold of his coat and begged him to listen to the end; the coat got torn, when the emperor exclaimed, "You tear my coat!" "I do not mind the coat," the official said; "do I mind my head in order to protect the throne?" When the courtiers asked the emperor to change his coat, he answered, he would keep it as a token of a truthful minister. Next day T'ung succeeded in his defence, so that his accuser was sent away to a low office in the custom-service.
- 1111 T'ung Kuan had plans against Liao; he invited Li Lang-tsz 李良嗣 from there, who presented a programme; the emperor accepted it and conferred the family name of Chao 趙 on him and an office.
- 1113 Two Taoist adepts received titles, which gave an impetus to Taoism. Books on immortals 仙經 were collected. Aguda 阿骨打 (G. 6) of the Nü-chen 女真 Tartars styled himself Tupu-chilie 都勃極烈, chief ruler, and defeated the Liao in the year 1114.
- 1115 Aguda took the title emperor of the Great Kin.
- Ts'ai King (s. year 1107) presented glass-ware from Arabia to the crown prince, who said: The emperor and great ministers should instruct one another in truth and righteousness 道義; these (foreign) things only detract the mind. He ordered the attendants to break them to pieces.
- 1116 A title was granted to the Taoist Lin Ling-su 林靈素 and a Taoist college established according to his plans. The idol Yü Huang 玉皇 received a high eulogic title.
- 1117 The emperor went to the Taoist College founded by him, to listen to Lin's lectures. There no etiquette of ruler and subject was observed, which was ridiculed by some; the emperor was entered on the list of Taoists. An artificial hill was raised to the East of the college, called imperial hill 萬歲山.
- 1118 A precious stone, over two feet, was presented from Khotan 于闐. An ambassador was sent to the Kin 金 to negotiate against the K'i-tan 契丹 or Liao 遼.* A fire broke out in the neighbourhood of the palace; over 5,000 buildings were burnt and many persons

* See Appendix B. (end).

lost their lives. Great famine among the Liao; cannibalism in consequence.

1119 Great flood at the capital. The emperor went often privately from his palace; a dignitary, who remonstrated, was transferred to the Hu province, and Yang Shih 楊時 (1053-1135, G. 2405), a pupil of the two Ch'eng* and celebrated as scholar and statesman, received the office.

1120 The *Kin* 金 received an annual allowance of 300,000 taels and 300,000 pieces of silk. Fang Lah 方臘 of Chekiang began a rebellion, because an officer was so oppressive that he even took the best flowers and stones 花石 from the people. Fang had six grades among his followers, distinguished by the colour of cloth 巾. No weapons were used but spiritual powers 鬼神 and mystic books; they burned the dwellings, carried off gold, silks, sons and daughters, forcing the best people to be soldiers; they increased in force to several myriads. T'ung Kuan (s. year 1102) raised 150,000 men against them.

1121 A brigand-leader ransacked with thirty-six men ten cities east of the capital, before he was put down. Fang Lah took several prefectures and Hangchou; when he was defeated by T'ung Kuan, over 700,000 of his followers were killed, he himself was soon after captured and executed. He had devastated six prefectures, including fifty-two counties, slaughtered 2,000,000 peaceful people and carried away countless females.

T'ung Kuan received the title of duke.

1122 The *Kin* conquered the central capital of the Liao 永平 Yung-ping in Chihli and then their western capital. T'ung Kuan, leading 150,000 men, defeated also the Liao. A general of the Liao surrendered with two prefectures; he attacked the Yen capital (Peking), but his troops were defeated; the capital was afterwards conquered by the *Kin*.

1123 In the negotiations about the spoil, Chao (originally Li 李) Liang-tsz 趙良嗣, the premier of Sung, granted the *Kin*, in addition to 400,000 taels and 400,000 pieces of silk yearly (s. year 1120), 1,000,000 strings of cash (each 1,000 copper coins) and 200,000 piculs of grain. Sung received Yen and six prefectures; but the *Kin* carried all inhabitants and goods of any value away with them, so that the Sung only got seven empty cities. The *Kin* captured the chief of the Liao with his family and followers and carried them along, when chief

* Ch'eng Hao, 1032-1085 and Ch'eng I, 1033-1107, s. G. 278 and 280.

Ye-lü-yin-hsi 耶律延禧 escaped to the Hia 夏, but was delivered to the Kin for a piece of land. A governor of the Kin, formerly a Liao, went over to the Sung with his prefecture. The Kin demanded him as a traitor. A dignitary of the Sung had a man beheaded who looked like the desired officer, but the Kin were not deceived and threatened with war; thereupon the traitor was decapitated after he had strangled himself; his head was salted and sent with his two sons to the Kin. The officers and soldiers that had come with him, said weepingly: If then the Kin demand us, we shall also be delivered to them, and they all left their ranks.

1124 Earthquake at Hoo-tung, Shensi and the capital. Rebellions broke out in several places; in Shantung one leader had 100,000 followers, another 50,000; in Hopeh one is said to have led 300,000 men, and other leaders with 20 to 30,000 were innumerable. The daughter of a wine-merchant at the capital suddenly grew a moustache 髭, seven to eight inches long; she looked very much like a gentleman; she was made a Taoist priest by imperial rescript. It is also said that a male person, a seller of fruit, gave birth to a child.

1125 The Kin made the ruler of Liao (s. year 1123) king of the sea-shore; he soon called himself emperor and founded the *Western Liao*. The Kin came plundering over the border. A high officer, Fu Cha 傅察, was sent as imperial envoy. At the frontier he met the soldiers of the invading general, to whom he refused to bow; though they used force, he rather suffered injury. The two most famous generals of the Kin were Nien Mu-ho 粘沒喝 and Wa Li-pu 斡离不; they took possession of several prefectures. The emperor allowed full liberty for advice and abdicated in consequence in favor of his son (G. 1153). Various rebels, s. G. 2412.

1126 欽宗皇帝 emperor Ch'in Tsung (G. 159), eldest son of Hui, reigned two years; ruined by the Kin, he fled to the North and died in the year 1160.

A eunuch had to guard the Ho, but his soldiers dispersed; the Kin crossed and said laughing: China has no soldiers, for one or two thousand could have made our crossing impossible. The ex-emperor fled to Chinkiang; the minister Li Kang 李綱 (G. 1153) defended valiantly the capital Pien 汴 (K'ai-fengfu). In the peace negotiations the Kin demanded five million taels of gold, fifty million taels of silver, 10,000 heads of cattle and horses, one million pieces of best silk, the emperor of the Kin should be addressed as uncle 伯父, three districts of land and, as pledges, an imperial

prince and a high minister had to be given. The emperor accepted these conditions, but could bring together only 200,000 taels of gold and 400,000 taels of silver. As several generals still fought with the Kin, they returned and besieged the capital; the emperor begged to surrender. The Kin demanded 100 million taels of gold, 200 million taels of silver, ten million pieces of silk and the country to the north and to the east of the Ho, but the people would not submit. The State of some of the officials, s. G. 466.

- 1127 The Kin wanted the money immediately and asked the emperor to come to their camp. He did so, accompanied by the courtier Li Joh-shui 李若水, who cursed the Kin as robbers; though his lips were crushed that the blood ran out, he continued cursing; then his throat was split and the tongue cut out, so that he died. The Kin carried away the ex-emperor, the empress and ladies of the court, the heir and all imperial family-relations, over 3,000 persons, and all the treasures. On their way to the North, commander Chang Shuh-yeh 張叔夜 (M. 31, G. 109) refused to take of the drink offered by the Kin, but only took water and committed suicide, when reaching the frontier.

The Southern Sung Dynasty 南宋 (1127-1279).

- 1127 高宗皇帝 emperor Kao Tsung (G. 166), ninth son of Hui, ascended the throne in the southern capital (Kwei-te 歸德 in Honan) and removed his capital to Lin-ngan 臨安 (Hangchow), reigned thirty-six years, then resigned in favor of his adopted son. He died twenty-five years afterwards in his eighty-first year of age.

The officer Chang Pang-ch'ang 張邦昌 (G. 92), who had been placed on the throne of the Sung by the Kin, found his position untenable. This opened the way for Kao. Li Kang (s. year 1126) was made premier, but succumbed to intrigues after seventy-seven days.

- 1128 The Kin caused much trouble; they burned the western capital Lo-yang 洛陽. The faithful commander Tsung Chè 宗澤 died broken-hearted, because he had sent over twenty appeals to the emperor to return to the capital, which had been frustrated by two opponents. The governor of Tsi-nan 濟南 rebelled and joined the Kin. Some Kin soldiers intended to open the grave of Confucius;

the leader of the Kin, Nien Mu-ho (s. year 1125), when he heard that Confucius had been a great sage, killed the soldiers.

- 1129 He marched to Yang-chou and burned it; the emperor had gone to Hangchou. Two high officers rebelled and killed several dignitaries. They were defeated by the general Chang Hsün 張浚 (G. 64) and another general. The emperor regained the throne and went to the southern capital. The two generals entered Hangchou. The general Han Shih-chung 韓世忠 (G. 625) caught the two rebels and had them executed in front of the emperor's residence. The emperor gave the two words "loyal" and "valiant" 忠勇 on the general's flag. The school-director Lin Hsün 林勳 from Canton presented to the emperor a book on government in thirteen chapters, in which the military art and agriculture were treated exhaustively. Another writer, Hu Yin 胡寅, presented seven articles on military reform, including the removal of the two capitals to Hukuang. The premier Lü I-hao 呂頤浩 was strongly against it and had the author banished. The emperor went to Hangchou and the Kin took Kwei-te (in Honan), where he had resided. They forbade the people to wear Chinese dress and ordered shaving at penalty of death. Most of Kiangsi was conquered by the Kin. The general Chao Lih 趙立 had a victorious engagement with the Kin; though he received an arrow through both cheeks, he beckoned his troops to advance and only pulled the arrow out after success was certain. The Kin took Nanking, where the commander surrendered. They then took Lin-ngan 臨安, crossed the river of Hangchou and pursued the emperor, who went to sea. The general Yo Fei 岳飛 (G. 2501) checked their progress by six victorious engagements; he captured a general and over forty officers. The general Chang Hsün (s. above) was also successful near Ningpo.
- 1130 The Kin took Mingchou 明州, near Ningpo, and butchered all the inhabitants. The same fate is recorded of the people of Shen-chou 陝 in Honan, where the commander 李彥仙 was repeatedly successful, then succumbed to the stratagem of the Kin general and drowned himself in the Ho; not one of the inhabitants would submit to the Kin, so they were all killed. The Kin entered the eastern capital Pien. General Han Shih-chung (s. year 1129) defeated the Kin general Wu Shu 兀朮 (G. 2501) on the Yangtze, but was defeated during a calm, when the big ships could not pass the small boats of the enemy; he fled to Chinkiang alone, having

opposed with his 8,000 men the 100,000 of Wa Shuh for forty-eight days. The general Yo Fei defeated the Kin, but Chang Hsün with an army of 400,000 infantry and 700,000 cavalry suffered a defeat by the Kin general Lou Shih 婁室. The Kin allowed Ts'in Kwei 秦檜 (M. 783, G. 392), a captive, with the emperor Ch'in Tsung to return to Sung with secret designs in favor of the Kin. He soon became minister.

1131 A rebellious officer, Li Ch'eng 李成, who had already in possession ten prefectures, was defeated and his followers dispersed. Wa Shuh suffered a severe defeat, in which he was wounded by two arrows; he removed his beard to effect his escape. The Kin had proclaimed Liu Yü 劉豫 (G. 1378) emperor of Ts'i 齊; they now gave him the country of Shensi.

1132 One rebel burned himself, when his stronghold was taken; another lost a battle, and 30,000 of his men surrendered in consequence; soon the head with the remaining 80,000 men tendered his submission. A fine stanza of the poet Huang T'ing-kien 黃庭堅 (G. 873, A. D. 1050-1110) was cut in stone in every district:

"Your office, your emolument, the people's marrow, the people's fat, the lower people can easily be oppressed; Heaven above to deceive is difficult." Hu Ngan-kuo 胡安國 (G. 812) was dismissed for his connection with Ts'in Kwei. Hu was for a time in favor; he had presented a work on the government of the time in twenty-one chapters, and his deep knowledge of the Spring-Autumn Classic was also appreciated. Ts'o's work was despised by Hu. Ts'in Kwei was dismissed for ever.

1133 More fighting with the Kin and with rebels in Kiangsi and Kwangtung. Li Ch'eng took the six prefectures to the West of Pien.

1135 The ex-emperor died among the Kin. Great battle with the rebel Yang T'ai 楊太, who died in the water of the Tungting lake; over 200,000 of his followers surrendered. Chang Hsün (s. year 1129) brought forward forty-one chapters of "A Survey of Developing China," which the emperor put with a sigh in a corner of his throne. The Kin began war with the *Mongols*.

Kan T'ien Hou 感天后, the female ruler of the Western Liao dynasty, s. G. 936.

1136 Liu Yü (s. year 1131) suffered a defeat; his two sons with 300,000 men were also beaten. On the recommendation of Ch'en Kung-fu 陳公輔 the teaching of Ch'eng I (s. year 1086), also called 伊川, was proclaimed authorised orthodoxy.

- 1138 Hu Ngan-kuoh (s. year 1132) presented his commentary on the Spring-Autumn Classic. The emperor chose Lin-ngan 臨安 as capital. Ts'in Kwei became premier, he recommended peace.
- 1139 Peace with the Kin; general amnesty. Death of Wu Chieh 吳玠 (G. 2324), commander in Szechuan, which province he guarded against the Kin; the people built a temple to sacrifice to his manes. He had been fond of reading history; his military tactics he derived from Sun and Wu 孫吳 (M. 635, 866). His plans were far reaching, not seeking little advantages at once; he ruled his subordinates with strictness and had also compassion, so that the soldiers would cheerfully die for him. The Mongols defeated the Kin by surprise at Hai-ling 海嶺.
- 1140 The Kin came again in two armies and ravaged Honan and Shensi. Wu Lin 吳玠 (G. 2339), younger brother of Wu Chieh, defeated them in Shensi, and Yo Fei (s. year 1129) reconquered Honan, but Ts'in Kwei (s. year 1130) succeeded in stopping him in his victories and recalled him to the capital. The Kin then took possession again of Honan; they also slaughtered the inhabitants of a city in Kiangnan.

The Kin ennobled the head of Confucius' descendants as Yen-shen Kung (s. year 1055). They established military colonies 屯田軍 in the plain of Honan 中原.

- 1141 The ruler of the Kin sacrificed in person to Confucius. The high officer Wang Kū-cheng 王居正 was dismissed, because he disagreed with Ts'in Kwei and vehemently criticised Wang An-shih, father and son. Kū Cheng's learning had its root in the six classics. Yang Shih (s. year 1119) had entrusted him with the writing out of his sketch on the Shih, Shu and Chou-li. Kū Cheng spent ten years on it and published it together with his researches 辨學 in thirty-nine chapters. The two works had universal circulation.

Ts'in Kwei had Yo Fei and his son imprisoned and murdered in the prison. Yo Fei was only thirty-nine years old; he was very filial towards his parents, had no secondary women in his house, was strict on duty, but compassionate. Asked when China would have peace, he answered: *When the mandarins do not love money and the military officers do not shrink from death.* His secret in the use of soldiers was charity, faith, wisdom, courage and strictness; it would not do, he said, to miss one of these qualities (G. 2501).

Peace was concluded with the Kin; the emperor had to style himself their servant 臣, give up four prefectures and pay a yearly tribute of 250,000 taels of silver and so many pieces of silk. Chao Ting 趙鼎 strongly opposed the peace, even when banished (G. 185).

1142 General amnesty on account of the empress-dowager Wei's 章 return from the Kin.

1143 The envoy Hung Hao 洪皓 (G. 889) returned from the Kin, where he had been retained since the year 1129, but resisted all temptations. The emperor compared him with Su Wu 蘇武 (M. 628) and rewarded him with 300 taels of gold, 500 pieces of silk and quantities of ivory, incense, cotton, wine and tea.

The Kin adopted a code of penal law in over 1,000 paragraphs. There were some differences from the Chinese, for example if a wife was beaten to death by her husband and it was not done with an instrument or sword, there was no punishment; banishment ranged from one to five years; bastonade from 120 to 200 strokes with a rod on the upper thigh; fornication of a Buddhist priest or nun, robbery with violence, no matter whether successful or not, were punished with death.

Six Classics were cut in stone.

1144 Great flood in Fukien and Chekiang. The dignitary Ho-joh 何若 denounced the work of Ch'eng I (s. year 1086) and Chang Tsai (s. year 1077) as partial 專門曲學; they should be rigorously prohibited. Ts'in Kwei followed the advice.

1147 The Kin concluded peace with the Mongols, because their general Wa Shuh (s. year 1130) had struggled against them for a year without success; they handed over twenty-seven fortified places, paid a yearly tribute of cattle, sheep, grain and beans. The Mongol chief Aolo-puchilie 熬羅勃極烈 styled himself emperor.

1148 The miscellaneous taxes were alleviated in all cities.

1149 The premier of the Kin murdered his lord Tan 璽 and usurped the throne.

1150 When Ts'in Kwei (s. year 1130) went to the court, one of the guards attempted to pierce him, but was captured; he confessed, he wished to kill Kwei for his friendship to the Kin. He was torn to pieces in the market-place and Kwei had afterwards fifty soldiers as body-guard. The new ruler of the Kin, Wan Yen Liang 完顏亮, killed over 150 of his relations, also his adjutant and the whole family of the same. He made the plans for a palace at Yen 燕, which he chose as his capital, he built a hall at the expense

of hundreds of thousands and had it torn down again, when finished, to build a better one.

1153 The Kin transferred their capital to Yen.

1154 Earthquake.

1155 Ts'in Kwei died; he had been premier for nineteen years, had great influence over the emperor, which was disastrous to the country; he received bribes and treasures from foreign countries; some arrived even after his death. Chang Hsün (s. year 1129) and friends, twenty-nine men, were now recalled to office (s. G. 37).

1156 The ex-emperor Ch'in Tsung (s. year 1126) died among the Kin.

1159 The Kin registered all able men between twenty and fifty years for the army and got everything ready to fight the Sung.

Chu Hsi 朱熹 (M. 79, G. 446) had a small post at the temple of the Southern sacred mountain 南嶽; he received a call from the emperor, but did not accept it.

1161 The Kin moved their capital to Pien; over 130 persons belonging to the royal families of Sung and Liao were executed by order of the king Liang (s. year 1150). He raised an army of 600,000 men, divided into thirty-two brigades, to invade Sung, because a Sung general, Wei Sheng 魏勝 (G. 2289), had reconquered Hai-chou 海, which he besieged; but he was defeated by Sheng and his confederate Li Pao 李寶. The emperor went in person, and his general, Yü Yün-wen 虞允文 (M. 955), defeated the Kin again at Ts'ai Shih 采石 near Nanking. The Kin withdrew and Liang was murdered by his underlings. The emperor went to Nanking and from there in the year 1162 to Lin-ngan 臨安, where he resigned in favor of the crown prince.

1163 孝宗皇帝 emperor Hsiao Tsung, descendant of T'ai Tsu (s. year 960) in the sixth generation, was adopted by Kao Tsung, who had no son. He reigned twenty-seven years and then resigned; he died in his sixty-eighth year (G. 180).

Wu Lin (s. year 1140), who took thirteen prefectures from the Kin, was recalled, when the Kin availed themselves of the opportunity and killed 33,000 men of his army and retook the thirteen prefectures. The premier Chang Hsün (s. year 1129) sent two generals against the Kin; one gained an advantage but had to draw back, not being supported by the other because of jealousy; the soldiers left many weapons behind.

1164 Death of Chang Hsün; he had inspected the troops of the Kiang and Wei a short time before. His successor T'ang Sze-tui imme-

diately opened peace negotiations; before a conclusion, the Kin came in conflict with Wei Sheng (s. year 1161), who was defeated and killed. T'ang was blamed for the misfortune and sent to a provincial office.

1166 Wei Chi 魏杞 became premier. He had been to the Kin as envoy and maintained the use of "Great" before Sung, which the Kin wished to be dropped.

1167 Death of Wu Lin (s. year 1140); he held Shuh (Szechuan) for twenty years and was much feared.

1170 Yü Yün-wen (s. year 1161) had become minister a year ago and favored men of talents. Wang Ying-shen 汪應辰, president of the interior 吏部, was very outspoken against many evils at the court. The ex-emperor had made a basin of stone, filled with mercury, in which golden birds and fish floated; the emperor went to see it, when the ex-emperor pointed out, that the mercury was deficient, because Wang's family had bought it. This made the emperor angry, soon he had a dissent with Wang and sent him to an office away from the capital.

1171 The emperor was struck by the idea expressed in the Shu (wu yi 無逸 chapter), that *reverence* was the basis of a permanent government. He wrote all sentences on this subject, which he found in the Classics, together in two sketches. The minister Yü said, "if Your Majesty will really practise it, there will be a most brilliant result" 明效大驗.

1176 The Kin began to establish colleges at the capital and prefectural cities to train scholars.

1180 Death of Chang Ch'ò 張栻 (M. 8), a faithful counsellor; even on his deathbed, he advised the emperor to befriend superior men and keep small minds afar. He published works on the Analects, Mencius, Evolution, on Ethics and a Biography of Chu-ko 諸葛. He died in his forty-eighth year.

1181 Death of Lü Tsu-k'ien 呂祖謙 (M. 466). He was the descendant in the fifth generation of I-kien 夷簡 (M. 460), studied at Kwan 關, i. e., the philosopher Chang Tsai 張載 (G. 117) and at Lo 洛, i. e., the two philosophers Ch'eng 二程 (G. 278, 280). He was of a quiet disposition, in words and actions a pattern to coming generations; he died in his forty-fifth year. He published several works (see Watter's "Essays on the Chinese Language").

Famine in the East of Chekiang. The minister Wang Huai 王淮 recommended Chu Hsi (s. year 1159); called to an audience,

he spoke of the cause of calamities, of cultivating virtue, of employment in office and came to the defects of the government of the time (seven points). The emperor was profoundly impressed, and made Chu superintendent of grain, tea and salt in Chekiang. Before Chu went, he sent a notification to the grain-merchants in the city, remitting their taxes; when he arrived, there was already grain in abundance. He inquired personally into the circumstances of the people and removed what was inconvenient in the administration. Chu Hsi reported the case of the magistrate of T'ai-chou (台), who was accused by the people, to the throne. As the accused was related by marriage to Wang Huai, he shelved the case at first, but had to take notice after it was reported the sixth time; the promotion of the magistrate was withdrawn and offered to Chu, who declined it.

- 1183 Wang Huai hated Chu in consequence and made Ch'en Kia 陳賈 censor, who asked that the metaphysics 道學 (of Chu, etc.) be prohibited, to which the emperor gave his assent.
- 1186 The retired scholar Kwoh Yung 郭雍 of the school of Ch'eng I became known to the emperor and received an honorary epithet in his eighty-third year.
- 1187 Death of the ex-emperor. The emperor in order to keep full mourning for three years, ordered the crown prince to attend to all the common government business.
- 1188 Chu Hsi threw a paper in the box (before the palace) on important imperial business in six chapters: (1) provision (or help) for the crown prince; (2) election of great (dignitaries) ministers; (3) improving of moral duties; (4) transformation of names; (5) tender feeding the people's strength; (6) reform of military administration. The night was already advanced and the emperor asleep, when the document arrived; the emperor quickly arose and read it through at torchlight; in the morning he promoted Chu Hsi to be crown counsellor, but he declined.
- 1189 Yung 雍, ruler of the Kin, died; he was the best of all the Kin rulers, being called their Yao and Shun; he kept peace with the Sung; his officers attended to their duties, the people lived at ease, the high board of justice decided on punishment by death, about seventeen cases a year. The emperor resigned his throne to the crown prince.
- 1190 光宗皇帝 emperor Kuang Tsung, third son of Hiao, reigned five years and died in his forty-fourth year (G. 190). Lady Li 李 was empress (G. 1147). New emperor of the Kin, s. G. 2126.

To ridicule metaphysics was prohibited.

1191 The empress being of a violent temper, had no piety, and the emperor was persuaded to keep the ex-emperor away from the court. The emperor once washing his hands in the palace, fell in love with the white hands of a lady; the empress sent him his dinner the next day; when the emperor opened the box, he found the two hands of the lady in it. The empress also murdered a favorite lady during the night, when the emperor spent the night in the abstinence chamber, preparing himself for a sacrifice to his ancestors.

1192 All the roads were flooded.

1193 Jen-hiao 仁孝 of the Hia 夏 died after a reign of fifty-five years; he promoted education in his State and raised Confucius to the rank of emperor 文宣帝; yet powerful ministers weakened the State, military administration decayed.

1194 The Kin bought up rare books. Death of the ex-emperor. The emperor could not appear on account of illness. The minister Chao Ju-yü 趙汝愚 (G. 2459) advised the empress-dowager to place the crown prince on the throne. Lady Han 韓 became empress; T'o-chou 佖胄 (G. 628), the younger brother of her father, came into prominence. He succeeded in prejudicing the emperor against Chu Hsi, so that the latter was degraded.

1195 寧宗皇帝 emperor Ning Tsung, third son of Kuang, reigned thirty years and died in his fifty-seventh year (G. 170).

The minister Chao (s. year 1194) and other five high officers were degraded and sent to a distance beyond 500 li.

1196 The school of false learning 偽學 (metaphysics) was interdicted; Chu Hsi 朱熹 (G. 446) was deprived of his office; his friend Ts'ai Yüan-ting 蔡元定 (M. 754a) was sent to a distance. Ts'ai published renowned works on the Hung-fan 洪範, Calculation 大衍, Musical Notes 律呂, etc.

1197 All culprits of the interdicted metaphysical school were registered; fifty-nine names; Chao Ju-yü and Chu Hsi standing at the head.

1199 Great flood in all prefectures.

1200 Death of Chu Hsi in his seventy-first year. He is famous as commentator, critic and historian. The ex-emperor died in his fifty-fourth year of age.

1201 Great fire in Lin-ngan 臨安, which lasted four days and burned 52,000 dwelling-houses.

King Chih-lu-ku 直魯古 of the West Liao, who went out hunting, was caught in an ambush by the Khan of Nai-man 乃蠻 (s. G. 283), who also took possession of the throne of Liao, i.e. ended the independence of Liao.

1202 The law against the metaphysicians was repealed and the dismissed officials returned into office.

Great swarms of locusts.

1203 War-ships were built and the cavalry increased.

1204 Han T'o-chou (s. year 1194) planned war against the Kin (G. 2459); he had the title of king given to the deceased Yoh Fei 岳飛 to give an impetus to the generals. Great fire again in Linnan.

1206 Wu Hsi 吳曦, vice-governor of Szechuan, rebelled and joined the Kin, who proclaimed him king of Shuh. The Sung army was defeated and dispersed by the Kin. The emperor sent an envoy to make peace. The *Mongol* Ki-wu-wen T'ie-mu-chen took the title of emperor (Genghis Khan). The Mongols made an end of Nai-man (s. year 1201) (G. 283, 605).

1207 Wu Hsi was murdered by his soldiers and his head sent to Linnan. Swarms of locusts darkened the sun; they consumed all the beans and the grain in western Chekiang; the people received imperial relief. The emperor caused Han T'o-chou (s. year 1204) to be murdered and made his guilt publicly known; it consisted principally in the usurpation of power, so that the emperor remained a mere puppet.

1208 The heads of Han and of Su, another minister, who had advised the war against the Kin, were sent to the Kin. Another fire at Linnan of four days' duration; over ten imperial offices and 58,000 family-houses were burnt, many lives lost, seven-tenths of the city were destroyed; many officers went to live in boats, and the people were kept in fear by vagabonds.

Peace was concluded with the Kin; the emperor styled himself "nephew" increasing the yearly tribute by 300,000 pieces of silk and 3,000,000 strings of cash.

1209 The Mongols entered Ling-chou (in Shensi). An-ch'ian 安全, ruler of Hia, surrendered. Wei-wu-rh 畏吾兒, a State of Turkestan, also surrendered to them.

1210 The Mongols invaded the N. W. of the Kin country.

1211 Another fire at Linnan, the archives and the great ancestral temple, also over 2,000 family houses, were burnt.

The Kin proposed peace to the Mongols, which was refused; the western capital of the Kin (Tatung 大同 in Shansi) was conquered and all the N. W. of Kin surrendered to the Mongols.

1213 Yeltü Liuko 耶律留哥, a former Liao man, took possession of the eastern prefectures of Liao, and took the title king of Liao.

1214 The yearly tribute to the Kin was discontinued.

1215 Chen Teh-siu 眞德秀 (G. 208), a celebrated disciple of Chu Hsi, received a high office and gave warning on five points: (1) not to be forgetful of the present disgrace by the Kin, (2) not to think light of the neighbours (Tartars and rebels in Shantung), (3) not to trust in the seeming peace, (4) not to listen to pleasing words, (5) not to push away the most righteous discourses.

The Mongols entered the Yen capital of Kin (Peking).

1216 Great earthquake in the two parts of Szechuan.

The king of Liao (s. year 1213) surrendered to the Mongols.

1217 The Kin invaded the country plundering, but were defeated by Chao Fang 趙方; some of the Kin, led by Li Ch'üan 李全, surrendered.

1218 The Kin, pressed by the Mongols, asked China for peace; refused, they collected for plundering. The Mongols seized all prefectures of the Kin east of the Ho (s. G. 2125).

1219 Chao Fang defeated the Kin again and led 60,000 men in three armies into their possessions.

1220 The Sung army, allied with the Hia, made an unsuccessful attack on the Kin.

1222 *Genghis Khan*, Temuchin 鐵木眞 (G. 605), went to the West, defeated and killed the Sha of Khorassan 蔑里, butchered all inhabitants of his city and destroyed the Mohammedan State. He had reached Herat (Ye-li 也里) and devastated the country.

1225 理宗皇帝 emperor Li Tsung, descendant of T'ai Tsu in the tenth generation. The minister Shih Mi-yüan 史彌遠 (G. 1722) put aside the crown prince and raised Li Tsung on the throne; he reigned forty years and died in his sixty-second year (G. 199).

As there was a plot and rising at Huchou 湖州 in favor of the deposed crown prince, Mi-yüan had the latter executed. Li ch'üan (s. year 1217) revolted. Wei Liao-weng 魏了翁 was degraded to a lower office. He was famous as a scholar, so that students came to him from a distance of 1,000 li. He published a compendium on the nine Classics in 100 parts. Chen Teh-siu (s. year 1215) was dismissed. He went home and wrote a work on study 讀書記.

1227 The emperor read Chu Hsi's works and bestowed a title of nobility on the dead author. Li Ch'üan, who had been surrounded by Mongols for some time, surrendered to them. The Mongols exterminated the State of Hia. While the officers quarrelled over the spoil, Yelü Ch'u-ts'ai 耶律楚材 (G. 2446) only took some books and two camel-loads of rhubarb; when the soldiers afterwards suffered from an epidemic (cholera?) 疫, he saved 10,000 persons with rhubarb.

Genghis Khan died in his sixty-sixth year of age after a reign of twenty-two years. Ogotai Khan succeeded him (G. 1590). The Mongols conquered a city in Shensi; the prefect had fought night and day in defence of it; when he saw it lost, he told his wife to care for herself, but she would die with her husband and took poison at once; her two sons and their wives died at her side; the prefect burned their bodies, threw himself on his sword and died; twenty-eight of his guests did the same.

1228 8,000 Mongols were defeated by 400 horsemen of the Kin.

1232 The emperor allied himself with the Mongols against the Kin.

1233 A general revolted at Pien, the Kin capital, and handed it over to the Mongols, also a brother of the Kin emperor, the empress and the harem-ladies; the prince was executed and the ladies carried off to the North. The Kin came and asked for provisions, which were refused.

1234 A *Sung* general with the *help* of a *Mongol* army made an end of the Kin State. Then some disagreement arose between the two allies. The Mongols went plundering over the borders; they overran Turkestan and attacked Korea in the following year (1235). Chen Teh-siu (s. year 1215) received the degree of "member of the academy." He presented his work, "Expansion of the Great Learning," to the emperor.

Tribute arrived from Annam.

(NOTE: About the *Liao* or *K'i-tan*, see:

G. 2445 O-pao-chi, the founder	...	907
G. 2453 the second emperor	...	926
G. 2456 the third	" ...	947
G. 2450 the fourth	" ...	951
G. 2448 the fifth	" ...	968
G. 2451 the sixth	" ...	983
G. 2454 the seventh	" ...	1031
G. 2449 the eighth	" ...	1055

G. 2455 the ninth emperor ... 1101, driven from Peking 1122 by the Ntichen Tartars, was captured and died 1125.

About the *Western Liao* see:

- | | | |
|--|-----|------------|
| G. 2452 Yelü Tashih, first emperor | ... | 1125 |
| G. 936 his wife, second ruler | ... | 1135 |
| G. 283 Jen Tsung, her son, third emperor | | 1142-1153. |

Ch'eng-t'ien Tai-hou, daughter of Yelü Tashih, regent for Jen Tsung's son Chiluku (or Mo Chu); the latter captured by Goutchlouc, son of the Khan of Naiman (s. years 1201, 1213, 1216).

About the emperors of the *Kin* see:

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------|-------------|
| G. 6, Aguda the founder | ... | 1114 |
| G. 2129 the second emperor | ... | 1123 |
| G. 2131 the third | „ ... | 1134 |
| G. 2127 the fourth | „ ... | 1149 |
| G. 2128 the fifth | „ ... | 1161 |
| G. 2126 the sixth | „ ... | 1190 |
| G. 2132 the seventh | „ ... | 1209 |
| G. 2125 the eighth | „ ... | 1213 |
| G. 2130 the ninth | „ ... | 1224-1234). |

1236 The prefect of Wen 文 chou (Shensi) resisted the Mongols to the utmost; when the city was taken, his family poisoned themselves; he and his two sons cut their throats; the Mongols slaughtered soldiers and people, several ten thousands.

1237 A professor was called to lecture on Chu Hsi's History of China. Great fire in Lin-ngan; in about eight hours 530,000 dwellings of the people were burnt. The Mongols opened literary examinations in the interpretation of the Classics, poetry and essays. 4,038 passed; one-fourth of them were slaves who had been captured; they had to be set free under penalty of death. Yelü Ch'u-ts'ai (a. year 1227, G. 2446) originated this; he also asked for one weight and measure, issued paper-money, equalized taxation, etc., to the comfort of the people. The metaphysics of Chou (M. 73, G. 425, died in the year 1073) were taught in the capital of the Mongols (Peking).

1240 Famine at Lin-ngan; people tore away food from one another on the road and killed persons in the market to sell their flesh. The Mongols came over the border in several companies for plundering. Meng Kung 孟珙, who had re-conquered two prefectures the year before, re-organised the military colonies as governor of Szechuan.

- 1241 Chou (G. 425), Chang (G. 117), the two Ch'eng (G. 278, 280) and Chu were admitted into the temple of Confucius. Wang An-shih was rejected, because of his teaching that divine destination was not worth fearing, ancestors not adapted as patterns, human sayings not worth consideration. Rare books were sought. The commander of the capital of Szechuan revolted and surrendered to the Mongols; a neighbouring city was taken and all its inhabitants put to the sword. The Mongolian envoys, who were sent to negotiate peace, were imprisoned.

[The Mongols were repulsed at Liegnitz in Germany.]

- 1242 Yao Chū 姚樞, a Mongolian high official, withdrew from his office and the capital, retiring into the Su-men mountain (in Honan), where he built a family temple and a hall with the images of Confucius and five of the Sung philosophers (but not Chu Hsi); he had the primer, the Four books, the Classics with their commentaries cut in blocks for the help of students.

The Mongols crossed the Huai 淮, took possession of several prefectures and slaughtered the inhabitants of Tung 通 chou.

- 1243 The Mongol premier Yelü Ch'u-tsai (s. year 1227) died. He was premier for twenty years; instead of treasures, some ten musical instruments and several thousand volumes of books were found in his possession. He used to say, to remove one damage is better than to advance one gain, to settle a business better than to create one.
- 1244 Tu Fan 杜範, entering the office as premier, made five proposals: (1) to amend the constitution 正治本; (2) strict palace regulations; (3) election of men of ability; (4) regard for official honor (not favoritism) 惜名器; (5) economy.
- 1246 Death of Meng Hung (s. year 1240); he was loyal to his king, loved his country, kept free from avarice and sensuality, but was profound in the study of the Book of Changes.

The throne of the Mongols in the hands of Kuyak, his mother and his wife, s. G. 1078.

- 1251 The Khan of the Mongols (Mangu 蒙古 G. 1498) decreed to his younger brother Hupilie 忽必烈 (*Kublai Khan*) the government of the Southern Gobi. He called Yao Chū (s. year 1242) and treated him with the etiquette of a guest. Chū wrote a book in several thousand sentences on governmental affairs; the eight chapters treated: (1) personal culture; (2) diligent study; (3) honor to the excellent; (4) affection to relations; (5) fear of Heaven; (6) kindness to the people; (7) love for what is good; (8) keeping flatterers

at a distance. Then followed thirty points how to remedy the evils of the times. The Khan was much impressed with Chü's learning and consulted him on every transaction. The Turkistan Buddhist Namo 那摩 received the title Teacher of the State from the Mongols.

1252 Great flood in Fukien and Chekiang.

1254 The Khan called Lien Hsi-hsien 廉希憲 as tranquillizer of the region within the pass. At an interview with the Khan he spoke of man's nature as good, of right as against profit, charity as against cruelty; he received the name Lien Mencius. He gave great peace to the country.

1255 Hsü Heng 許衡, received the office of literary chancellor at the Mongol capital. He was an extraordinary man. When entering school at seven years of age, he asked the teacher about the aim of study; when told that it was to get a degree, he asked, "Is that all?" He studied with ability and soon got hold of the writings of the Ch'eng and of Chu. As educator he was against the old method of dividing into chapters and sentences, burned the patterns of style 簡帙 and began with the study of characters, etc., respecting philology 小學. Earthquake in Szechuan. Flood in Fukien and Chekiang.

1256 A censor, Chu I 朱熠, pointed out that during the reign of Chen Tsung and Jen Tsung (998-1063) with the revenue of over 320 prefectures, over 10,000 officers of the government were maintained, now over 24,000 with the revenue of over 100 prefectures, and that therefore a reduction of the number of officials was required to relieve the people. The emperor endorsed it without taking action.

1259 Mangu, the Mongol Khan, died at Ho-chou 合, when besieging the city after having made progress in Szechuan. His successor *Kublai Khan* advanced and crossed the Huai. The Chinese general Chia Ss-tao 賈似道 (G. 326) made a peace disgraceful to China; territory was granted so that Kiangnan became the boundary; 200,000 taels of silver and as many pieces of silk, yearly tribute, were fixed, and the emperor had to call himself subject (minister 臣) of the Khan.

1260 Chia deceived the emperor about the treaty and was, with honors for his merits, called to the court. The emperor, being without a son, made his nephew crown prince, who received a strict education, having to appear before the emperor at first cock-crow and then to learn and repeat his lesson.

The Mongols sent Ho Ching 郝經 on a friendly mission to China, but he was confined by Chia Sz-tao, who feared the nature of his treaty would become known.

A Buddhist from Tibet, Ba-sh-pa 八思巴, received the title Prince of the Holy Land from the Mongols (G. 1596).

1261 Liu Cheng 劉整, a governor of Szechuan, joined the Mongols with fifteen prefectural cities and 300,000 families.

1262 The Mongols repaired the temple of Confucius. Famine at Lingnan. Li T'an 李壇, the son of Li Ch'üan (a year 1217, his revolt in the year 1235), joined China again with the country east of the capital and received the office and the titles of his father; but the Mongols surrounded him and he died when the city fell.

1263 An order was issued to convert private land-property into public fields; officials were appointed to manage them.

1265 度宗皇帝 emperor Tu Tsung (G. 147), son of Li's brother, adopted by the emperor, reigned ten years and died in his fifty-third year. The minister Chia (a year 1259) rose still higher in favor.

1266 Chia threatened the emperor with resignation, who begged him earnestly to remain. A minister, who denounced this as improper, was dismissed.

1267 Chia begged to resign in order to attend to his health. The emperor several times sent messengers to him to induce him to remain. Ho gave him a residence at the West-lake, from where Chia came in a boat, once in five days, to the court.

1268 The Mongols were aggressive again, Liu (a. year 1261) advised O-shu 阿朮 to get a navy equal to that of Sung. Fifty ships were built and men trained in all kinds of weather, so that soon 70,000 were ready to fight.

1269 The Mongols concentrated all their soldiers to the siege of Siang-yang 襄陽, and were determined to take it.

The Buddhist Ba-sh-pa (a. year 1260) was ordered to prepare a new kind of writing; it comprised over 1,000 characters (?) following the sounds. Ba was honored with the title "King of the great precious law."

1270 The Khan ordered Lien Hsi-hsien (a. year 1254) to accept the creed 戒 of Ba-sh-pa; Lien answered, "I have already accepted the creed of Confucius." On the question, "Has your Confucius also a creed?" he answered, "Yes, for ministers it is to be loyal, for sons to be filial; this is the whole creed."

Chia was called to appear every tenth day at court, but he lived so much in pleasure with his favorite lady and other fair women, having music and gambling, that he did not appear for several months. The emperor inquired about the siege of Siang-yang, which Chia denied; he found out who had told it to the emperor, and the unfortunate person was executed under another accusation. Nobody dared to say anything against him from this time.

- 1271 Great famine in Huai 淮, Chekiang and Kiangsi. The Mongols changed the name of their State into Yüan 元 (G. 1343) and established a high-school at Peking by Hsü Heng (s. year 1255); he called twelve scholars to act as his assistants. Hsü was an excellent director, who treated the pupils as grown men, loved them as children, and accustomed them to strict etiquette.

Kublai Khan obtained Alaowating 阿老瓦丁 from Turkestan, skilled in building mangonels. He died in the year 1312, loaded with honors (G. 2; 909).

- 1272 An attempted relief of Siangyang failed. This city had been five years besieged; there was fortunately a supply of grain in the city, but a scarcity of salt, fuel and cloth.

Chia sent a harem-lady into a monastery and dismissed her brother from office, because they had invited the emperor without Chia's knowledge.

- 1273 The Mongols took the Fan 樊 city, after having besieged it for four years, with the help of new machines 炮法, which they got from a Kurdistan (G. 909). The commander of Siangyang also surrendered the city.

- 1274 Great rain. The T'ien-mu 天目 mountain fell. Several districts near Hangchow were flooded and many people drowned. 200,000 Mongols crossed the borders, ravaging the country. All men were called out to fight for their new emperor.

The minister Yao Shu 姚樞 (G. 2439) caused whipping, branding and other excessive punishments to be abolished.

- 1275 恭宗皇帝 emperor Kung Tsung, second son of Tu, only four years old, reigned one year; then he was captured by the Yüan (G. 156). The son-in-law of Chia revolted and joined the Yüan. Chia led 130,000 men against the Yüan; he asked for peace, which was refused by the Mongol General Ba-yan (G. 1663, Po-yen 伯顏). Chia's soldiers dispersed, and he fled to Yang-chou, presenting a memorial to the emperor to surrender the capital. The Yüan sent an envoy to inquire after Ho Ching (s. year 1260); he was sent

back ceremoniously, but died when he reached Peking. Ho was a superior character; bent on useful knowledge, he studied the history of the After Han, the Book of Changes, Spring-Autumn and other works during his imprisonment. Chia was found guilty and dismissed; all his unpopular measures were abolished, the public fields (s. year 1263) were returned to their original owners; those who had rented them were enlisted as soldiers, and the banished were recalled. General Bayan relieved the people to the East of the Kiang, where an epidemic prevailed, through distribution of rice and by medical aid, so that they were much pleased. A large Chinese fleet, over 10,000 vessels, was burnt by the Mongols and 700 ships captured.

Chia was killed by a small official, who revenged his father. As Ch'ang 常 chou would not surrender, Bayan got the people outside the city to carry mud for a wall and had those that arrived with mud, buried in it for the wall; he had people fried to get their fat "to grease the mangonels (Mcg. 431)." The attack was continued day and night; when the city fell, all inhabitants were slaughtered.

1276 When Tan 潭 chou (the present Chang-sha in Hunan) was taken, its commander Li Fei 李芾 said to a subordinate: "It is my duty to die, and my family must not survive in disgrace; you kill them all and then me." The subordinate had to be twice commanded before he consented; he intoxicated them with wine and did his work and burned the corpses; he then killed his own family and threw their bodies into the fire; then he killed himself. Many of the inhabitants also committed suicide, excited by the example. All wells were filled with corpses and many were hanging upon the trees. All Hunan then came under the sway of the Yüan.

Lin-ngan, the capital, was taken by Bayan and the empress-dowager handed over the imperial seals; she and the young emperor and one imperial prince were taken as prisoners to the North.

The general Chang Shih-kieh 張世傑 (G. 104) withdrew with some soldiers to Tinghai (near Ningpo). A messenger from the Mongols, who asked him to submit, had his tongue torn out and his body cut to pieces. Two of the emperor's brothers escaped to Wen 溫 chou, where some adherents rallied.

1276 端宗 Tuan Tsung (G. 182), eldest son of Tu, brother of Kung, reigned three years, and perished when eleven years old.

The general Chang took the emperor on board a ship at Fuchou; there was still an army of 170,000 men and 300,000 armed

men of the people, also 10,000 soldiers of Huai 淮. They sailed to Chao-chou in Canton province and from there to Huei 惠 chou. The Mongols took possession of the Kwangsi province.

1277 The Yüan ordered the Taoist Chang Tsung-yen 張宗演 to control Taoism in Kiangnan, and the western bonze Yang 楊 to be the head of the Buddhists. All cities in Canton province were taken by the Mongols.

1278 Death of the emperor. The minister Lu Siu-fu 陸秀夫 (G. 1413) proclaimed the other son of Tu to be emperor. The Buddhist Yang had the mausoleums and graves of ministers at Shao-hing 紹興 (in Chekiang) opened, altogether 101, for the valuables contained therein.

1279 昚帝 emperor Ping (G. 177), youngest son of Tu, brother of Tuan, reigned one year, and was drowned in his ninth year.

When the Mongol general Chang Hung-fan 張弘範 (G. 68) heard that the Chinese emperor was on the island Ai-shan 崖山 (on the Canton coast), he directed his troops there. Chang Shih-kieh (s. year 1276) submersed vessels filled with stones; behind these he drew up over 1,000 warships in one line, fastened together by ropes; behind those were the State ships with the emperor and attendants. An attempt to burn the ships was frustrated. But the Chinese soldiers suffered from want of water; taking sea-water, they got ill and dispersed when a battle was fought. Lu Siu-fu taking the emperor on his back 負 drowned himself in the sea; many attendants followed the example. The enemy got the rest of the fleet, still 800 boats; over 100,000 corpses were floating around. The general Chang Shih-kieh, with the soldiers still remaining, suffered death by ship-wreck at Hai-ling-shan 海陵山. A noble martyr of the Sung, s. G. 2306.

End of the Sung dynasty.

The Yüan Dynasty 元 (1280-1367).

1280 世祖文武皇帝 emperor Shih Tsu, named Wen and Wu (G. 1012). His name was Hu Pi-lieh or Kublai, fourth son of Tu-li, 拖雷 who was the fourth son of Genghis Khan. He was born in the year 1214, reigned over the Mongols since the year 1260, and died eighty years old in the year 1294. His empress was Hung-chi-la, s. G. 884.

- 1281 An expedition to Japan failed; the leader died and the fleet perished. The emperor listening to Buddhistic temptations, ordered all Taoist books to be burnt, except Lao-tse's Tao-te-king.
- 1282 The Kù-lan 俱藍 State sent tribute and a black monkey. Envoys were sent to Yünnan for its gold (metal) and to fix the revenue; *gold being the standard*. Transports were first conveyed by sea.
- 1283 The Korean king was directed to send an expedition with a Yüan general against Japan.

The taking away of girls from the people (for the imperial harem) was stopped. Increase of salary to all officials.

- 1284 Earthquake at the capital.
- 1285 Death of the crown prince, aged forty-three years; he was a polite, benevolent man, who enjoyed to relieve the people. Once the inhabitants of Kiangnan had collected 470,000 strings of cash in surplus of their annual duty, which he refused to accept, as the happiness of the people was more than money. 40,000 Buddhists were united into a society (congregation?).
- 1286 The emperor sent an official to Kiangnan to find some talented men; he recommended Chao Meng-t'iao 趙孟頫 and other relations of the house of Sung, twenty men; all of them received employment.
- 1287 Confucian schools were established in all districts of Kiangnan and two instructors given to each. The magistrates of all cities had to learn about sacrifices, money and measures.
- 1288 The captive Kung Tsung (s. year 1276) was sent to the Turfan to become a Buddhist.
- 1289 All Buddhist sacred books were collected and deposited in the large monastery in the capital 大聖萬壽安寺 and the monks had annually to chant them at imperial expense.
- 1290 Great plague of locusts in seventeen prefectures in the North. Great earthquake. Great flood; over 450,000 persons became vagrant, they received 580,000 piculs of grain.
- 1291 The Buddhist Yang (s. year 1278) opened the graves of the Sung emperors and of the great ministers, taking the valuables away. He also tried to excuse 23,000 families for not paying their taxes and received pretty girls and jewels for it, accumulating wives, children and landed property. The ministers considered him guilty of death, but the emperor commanded to set him free and return the goods to him.
- 1292 An expedition of 20,000 soldiers and 500 ships was sent against Kua-wa 瓜哇 (Java), s. G. 1726.

1293 A son of the Buddhist Yang had to be dismissed from a high office, because the people deeply hated his father.

1294 The minister Bayan (a. year 1275) died; he had been deep and concise in counsel and prompt in decision; as high commander of 200,000 men against the Sung, he acted as if commanding one man, inspiring supernatural awe; returning to court, he never mentioned his merit.

1295 成宗皇帝 emperor Ch'eng Tsung (Timur Khan), grandson of Shih-tsu (Kublai), third son of the late crown prince, reigned thirteen years and died in his forty-second year (G. 1929).

Annam brought tribute. Earthquake. The Yellow River became clear over 300 li above and below Lanchou for three days. Drought and famine in Shensi.

1297 The empress went to a Buddhist temple to worship. The imperial princes and sons-in-law were prohibited taking away fields from the people.

1298 The yearly taxes were fixed at 3.3 per cent of the value of land (G. 1929; Fries says, p. 243: he remitted three-tenths of the ground-rent, cp. McG., p. 445).

1299 Officers were sent out to inquire about the people's grievances. A commission was appointed to *revise the laws*; they chose 280 paragraphs and reported thereon.

1301 As it was a bad year, the making of spirits, etc., was forbidden and the prohibition of hills and marshes abolished, allowing the people to hunt and fish.

1302 The emperor summoned a cabinet minister and inquired about rich persons in Kiangnan who acquired the fields of the poor, so that they became vagrants. When corroborated that this was done and that the magistrates could not refuse to stamp the deeds, he commanded that the deeds should be returned in three days.

1303 All the supernumerous officials were removed, inspectors were sent everywhere, who found corrupt officials and clerks to the number of 18,473 and 5,176 law cases. Death of Kin Li-hsiang 金履祥, author of the earlier period of the Mirror of History 通鑑前編 and of commentaries on the Classics.

Earthquakes in Shansi; villages were moved away, the ground burst, 10,800 houses were ruined, people without number were killed.

1304 Earthquake.

1305 Earthquake in another district of Shansi. With a noise like thunder over 5,000 official and private houses were ruined and over

2,000 persons killed by an earthquake. A merchant of Turkestan offered a pearl for the price of 600,000 ting 錠 (about ten taels each); a high official was asked about it and said, "The price was not too high, but what was the use of it?" "Kept in the mouth, no thirst was felt; held on the cheek, the eyes became bright." "But it could be only one man's property; grain was more useful to many people."

- 1307 Death of the emperor. There was an intrigue to make the empress the ruler and an imperial prince her assistant, but minister Harahassan sent for the absent crown prince Kaisun and his brother, who came and killed the empress and those conspirators. After taking the throne, he proclaimed a great amnesty and made his brother crown prince. Confucius received an addition to his title and the Canon of Filial Piety was honored as the standard for high and low; it was cut in blocks and printed copies were distributed.

- 1308 武宗皇帝 emperor Wu Tsung (Kaisun), a nephew of Ch'eng (Timur); he reigned four years and died in his thirtieth year (G. 933).

Ashapuhua 阿沙不花, observing that the emperor looked worse from day to day, remarked, that not controlling the appetite in eating and drinking and the love of the harem-ladies was like cutting a solitary tree with axes, it was sure to fall. The emperor made him his minister of the right, but continued to love wine and women as before.

Great earthquake in Shensi and Yünnan. The roads were flooded in the N. E., drought in Kiangnan and Chekiang, locusts. A Buddhist from the West was made a Hanlin and imperial counsellor. Officials were appointed to redeem the children sold by their parents during the famine.

- 1310 An imperial prince planned rebellion and was banished to Korea. Great flood at King and Siang 荆襄 (Han river), a mountain fell.
- 1311 The ground split at Ning Hia 甯夏 N. W. The number of pupils in the high-school for nobles was raised to 300.
- 1312 仁宗皇帝 emperor Jen Tsung (Ayuli Palpata, G. 13), younger brother of Wu, who, passing his own son over, made him crown prince; he reigned nine years and died in his thirty-sixth year.
- 1313 Earthquake at the capital. Public examinations were first carried out in three divisions—Mongols, Han and Southern scholars—each with different themes.

Great drought and epidemic at the capital.

- 1314 Earthquake. It was decreed that subaltern officers, guilty of embezzlement, should have their faces branded.

- 1317 Earthquake for three days N. of the Ling (Kiangsi).
 1318 The Buddhist scriptures were written in golden letters.
 1319 Great fire at Yang 揚 chou; over 23,300 official and private houses were burnt. All the roads in Shantung and Huainan were flooded.
 1320 Famine in Honan. Civil war, because of Achakpa, s. G. 4.
 1321 **英宗皇帝** emperor **Ying Tsung**, son of Jen Tsung, reigned three years, and was murdered in his twenty-first year (G. 1744).
 The censor Kuan Yin-pao 觀音保 and others, who objected strongly against building a Buddhist temple, were executed.
 1322 A small official was appointed to relieve the poor and needy of Confucius' descendants. Earthquake at the capital.
 1323 The Tripitaka was written in gold letters by imperial decree. A storm uprooted trees. The high official Tie Shih 鐵失 assassinated the emperor and the premier. He was executed.
 1324 **泰定皇帝** emperor **Tai Ting**, oldest son of Hien 顯, the eldest brother of Ch'eng (s. year 1295), reigned four years and died in his thirty-sixth year (G. 2484).

The princes and sons of ministers had to attend to the lectures on Confucian literature. Storms and earthquake.

- 1327 Drought, locusts, famine, mountain-slip, earthquake.
 1328 After the emperor's death the minister Yen-tie-mu-erh 燕鐵木兒 refused to recognise the emperor's son and sent for the younger son of Wu Tsung, as the eldest was absent in Yünnan; he succeeded against Tai Ting's son, who made his escape and died, nobody knows how and where.
 1329 **明宗皇帝** emperor **Ming Tsung** (Hosila), eldest son of Wu, reigned eight months, and was assassinated by his brother (G. 663).
 He appointed his younger brother Tu 圖 tie-mu, who had reigned for him nine months, crown prince. He visited the emperor, his brother, who then died a sudden death. Tu took the throne again and proclaimed a general amnesty. He appointed a western Buddhist imperial preceptor; when he arrived, the highest ministers had to receive him at the precincts of the capital and to offer him a cup of wine to drink.
 1330 **文宗皇帝** emperor **Wen Tsung**, second son of Wu (Kaisun), reigned three years and died in his twenty-ninth year (Tup Timur, G. 2110).

He placed the parents of Confucius in his temple and added some more scholars to share the sacrifices. About two famous ministers s. G. 942 and 943.

- 1331 Wu Ch'eng 吳澄 (M. 859) died. He had retired as Hanlin professor to his home in Kiangsi and several hundred pupils flocked to him. He published a number of works on the Classics and other subjects.
- 1332 Earthquake at the capital and Lungshsi (Kansu). Death of the emperor. Ile Chepe (G. 915), the second son of Ming, had been appointed, and ascended the throne when seven years old, but he died after two months, known as Ning Tsung 寧宗. The empress dowager then sent for
- 1333 順帝 Shun Ti, emperor Shun (Toban Timur), eldest son of Ming, elder brother of Ning; he reigned thirty-five years and perished with the dynasty (G. 1953).
- Earthquake at the capital; in Shensi a mountain fell and the ground split.
- 1334 At Pien-liang 汴梁 (Honan) it rained blood, so that people's dresses became red. At Chang-te 彰德 (Honan) it rained wool like threads of green colour. Then came flood, drought, epidemic, famine. Earthquake at the capital. A mountain split and became a ditch, 100 li square; many people died.
- 1335 The brother of the empress rebelled and was executed; the empress was assassinated. Examinations stopped.
- 1337 Earthquakes at the capital several times, also in the years 1338 and 1342.
- 1343 Decree to edit the history of the Liao, Kin and Sung (G. 1944).
- 1344 Earthquake at Wenchou 溫 (Chekiang) and overflow of the sea 海溢.
- 1346 Thieves stole the ancestral tablets from the Great (imperial) temple.
- 1347 Earthquake in Shantung. Soldiers rebelled along the Yangtse.
- 1348 The emperor went to the college of the sons of nobles and presented a silver seal for advancement.
- Fang Kuo-chen 方國珍 began rebellion at T'aichou 台.
- 1349 A woman in Hukuang gave birth to a son, whom she nursed for a year, when he was over four feet in length.
- 1351 Three more rebel-leaders rose in different parts of the empire (s. G. 620 and 791).
- 1352 In Anhui Kuo Tsz-hing 郭子興 (G. 1074) began his rising. Earthquake at Lungsi (Shensi) over 100 days; the city and suburbs tumbled over, hills and valleys were changed. Some successful

fighting against rebels. Slip of the southern Sacred Mountain (Heng in Hunan).

- 1353 Chang Shih-ch'eng 張士誠 (M. 28, G. 103) raised rebellion in the Yangchow prefecture. Two Buddhists instructed the emperor in the arts behind the curtain; each of the monks took three or four women, under pretence of maintaining them. They used to tell the emperor, human life is short, why not enjoy these secret pleasures of entrancement 禪定? The emperor followed them, taking more females and delighting in indecent plays, with his ten brothers, even having males and females naked together. The bonzes had free access to the forbidden city and the filth was spoken of abroad. The crown prince was thoroughly disgusted with the two Buddhists and wished to do away with them, but could not.
- 1354 The emperor made a pleasure-boat in form of a dragon, 120 feet long and twenty broad; twenty-four sailors dressed in gold and purple attended it; when in motion, the head, eyes, mouth, claws and tail of the dragon moved. The emperor also had a water-clock made, six to seven feet high, with a pavilion and moving figures, sounding bells by day and drums at night, sun and moon, etc., exhibiting extraordinary skill.
- 1355 At Chi chou 蘄 (Chihli) it rained blood. *Chu Yüan-chang* 朱元璋 (M. 84), the founder of the *Ming*, raised soldiers and was joined by the valiant Ch'ang Yü-ch'un 常遇春 (G. 143).
- 1356 They took Nanking. The plums at Changte (Hunan) were like cucumbers. There was an old street-song, if plums are cucumbers, people get lost in numbers. Stars fell at Ta-shih (Chihli) and turned into stones (meteors).

The rebel Fang (see the year 1348) submitted to the Yüan.

- 1357 The Ming troops conquered several districts, but the rebel Chang (s. year 1353) submitted to the Yüan (cp. G. 2517).
- 1358 Pien-liang (s. year 1334) was conquered by a general of Han Lin-erh 韓林兒. Han established himself there (called Sung emperor in the year 1355) s. G. 620.

The ground burst in Shantung. Chu took Wuchou 婺 in Chekiang; he commanded the prefect to re-establish schools. Sung-lien 宋濂 (M. 639a) and others were employed as professors. Calling his generals to conquer the east of Chekiang, he told them, though it had to be done by the sword, they should pacify the people by charity and keep in mind not to kill; the task would be accomplished without difficulty and great merit gained.

- 1359 Fang (s. year 1356) joined the Ming with three prefectures; he also sent a present of gold and jade ornaments and cutlery, offering also grain, clothes, etc., for the use of the army.
- 1360 The general of a rebel-leader in Honan (G. 260) murdered his superior and called himself emperor of Han 漢.
- 1361 Defeated by the Ming, he fled with wife and children to Wuchang (Hupeh). Great famine.
- 1363 Ming Yü-chên 明玉珍 (G. 1535), an officer of the murdered rebel-leader (s. year 1360), having subdued Yunnan, proclaimed himself at Ch'engt'u (Szechuan) emperor of Hia 夏. The Han emperor equipped a fleet and attacked Nanchang (Kiangsi), held by a general Chu of the Ming. The attack was fierce, the wall was broken and the commander killed in battle, but the soldiers managed to repair the breach and the great leader of the Ming advanced with 200,000 men and defeated the enemy at the Poyang lake in a great battle, in which the Han emperor fell; his son Li 理 succeeding him. Chang (s. year 1353) called himself king of Wu 吳 and refused the grain tribute to the Yüan.
- 1364 The Ming leader styled his State Wu 吳. He attacked Han, whose king surrendered and was allowed to keep his treasures; the people suffering from famine, were supplied with food. Thus the Hukuang and Kiangsi provinces were pacified. When the ornamented golden bed of the king was brought to Chu, already styled Ming T'ai-tsu, he would not have it, as pride and extravagance had brought ruin to its owner; he ordered it to be broken.
- 1366 T'ai-tsu asked for books, as he was accustomed to read Confucius, who by his teaching of economical use, love of men and seasonable employment (socage!) of the people was in truth the teacher of 10,000 ages. He built an ancestral temple, an altar for the gods of land and grain, and a palace, all in plain style. The scholar Hung Ting 熊鼎 had to write good sentences of ancient examples on the walls of the hall, and in the outer halls the whole text of the enlarged Great Learning 大學衍義 was written, as he preferred such to paintings in color. The Sung emperor (s. year 1358) died and his State ceased to be.
- 1367 T'ai-tsu regulated civil and military examinations; the former, by inquiry into the words and actions of the candidates to see their virtue, by classical texts to see their occupation, by writing and arithmetic to see their ability, by application of the Classics and history to the needs of the time to see administrative business-

capacity. The military candidates were examined, first in outlines of plans, then in military technics. He wanted realities, not empty phrases.

The city of the king of Wu (s. years 1353 and 1363) was taken and he himself captured, but he committed suicide. T'ai-tsu then sent his general, Hsi Ta 徐達 (G. 792) and a sub-commander with 250,000 men to the North against the Yüan emperor.

The Yüan reigned eighty-seven years under nine emperors.

The Ming Dynasty 明 (1368-1644).

1368 太祖高帝 emperor T'ai Tsu, Chu Yüan-chang (s. year 1355); his mother was a born Ch'en 陳; he entered a monastery when seventeen years old, reigned as emperor thirty-one years (till the year 1399) and died in his seventy-first year (G. 483). His minister Li Shan-ch'ang 李善長 (G. 1186) caused him to ascend the throne. He made his wife, lady Ma 馬 (G. 1472) the foster-daughter of Kuo Tsz-hing (s. year 1352), empress. She was a superior character, fond of books and the historians. She used to say, kill no one, is the basis of imperial government; the emperor endorsed it. The Ming troops were successful against the Yüan, the emperor (Shun) fled into Mongolia and Hsi Ta (s. year 1367) entered the capital; all the inmates of the Yüan palace were set free.

1369 The emperor fixed the order of meritorious ministers, twenty-one men, Hsi Ta being their head; a temple was built in their honor, the dead ones had their images sacrificed to, for the living ones there were empty places left. The records of thirteen reigns of the Yüan were found and the composition of the history of the Yüan was decreed.

The Japanese invaded Shantung. A professor of the K'ung family was appointed to lecture on the Classics to the sons of the nobility. The ex-emperor fled to Ho-lin 和林 (Mongolia); 10,000 soldiers, rank and file, were with him; 10,000 carriages, 3,000 horses and 50,000 heads of cattle. An attack of the Yüan on Ta-tung 大同 (N. Shansi), where Li Wen-chung 李文忠 was defender, was repelled with a loss of over 10,000 men.

The ritual was revised and published as 大明集禮. Every prefecture and district was ordered to open schools.

- 1370 The two generals Hsü (s. year 1367) and Li (s. year 1369) went on different roads to the North. The Yüan emperor died; his son succeeded him, but had soon to flee further North; his son, wife, harem-ladies and several hundred attendants were captured and sent to the capital. *Triennial examinations* have their beginning.
- 1371 An army was sent against Hia 夏, whose ruler Ming Shen 明昇 surrendered; the whole territory of Shuh was thus settled.
- 1372 Expedition against the aborigines of Hunan and Kwangsi. Ch'en Shuh-ming 陳叔明 of Annam murdered his king and established himself; he sent tribute to China, which was refused. The king of Korea sent his sons and others to the college for nobles. The "iron rule" 鐵榜 was made to warn meritorious ministers.
- 1373 All the prefectural and district mandarins were called to an audience. The emperor addressed them, warning against hypocritical kindness, etc. Examinations were *stopped for ten years*, as the emperor found that the graduates were *mere verbalists* 有文無實; stress was now laid on *morality*, and literary accomplishment was made secondary.

The emperor refused to accept tribute of ginseng, of fragrant grain and grape-wine (the latter from T'ai-yüan); to feed the people was his purpose; how could he trouble them with things for the mouth and belly?

The law of the Ming was fixed in 606 paragraphs.

- 1374 As the Japanese made again a piratical incursion, Wu Cheng 吳禎 was sent against them; he succeeded in capturing the Japanese fleet at the Liu-chiu islands. Confucius' temple at Ch'üfou, his native place, was repaired and a college opened for his descendants. Locusts at the plain of Peking, in Shansi, Honan and Shantung, hail in Shensi; the taxes were remitted. The dress to be worn in mourning was prescribed for everybody and published in a book 孝慈錄. Chuan 觀, king of Korea, was assassinated.
- 1375 Schools were ordered *in all cities and towns*, and the mandarins had to provide such even in *smaller places* 社學, where the people had no instruction. The Yellow River broke through at K'ai-fêng, breaking the embankment of the great yellow monastery over 1,000 feet; more than 30,000 men were collected to fill it up. Money-bills were introduced in six kinds, of 1,000, 500, 400, 300, 200 and 100 cash; what was below 100, was paid in coins.
- Liu Ki 劉基 (G. 1282), counsellor of the emperor, died from poison. The emperor had for a time called him "teacher" without adding his name. Earthquake at the capital.

1377 Victory over the Turfans; about 10,000 of them were captured or killed. Soldiers were left to guard all places of importance.

Inspectors were sent into all the districts to inquire into the circumstances of the people and provide for their instruction.

1378 The sea overflowed the prefectures of Su, Sung, Yang (in Kiangsu) and T'ai (Chekiang); officers were sent with relief.

1379 The former president of the civil office received a call, but poisoned himself in order to avoid any service to the Ming.

1380 The premier Hu Wei-yung 胡惟庸 (G. 824) planned rebellion, but was executed with all his family.

All the graduates were called together to receive a daily allowance of provisions.

1381 Yüan soldiers caused trouble at the border; Hsü Ta (s. year 1367) was sent against them. Another general was sent with 300,000 men to Yünnan to suppress a rebellion.

1382 The emperor being very fond of Buddhism, invited priests into the palace and gave offices to some. He also favored the Taoists. The minister Li Shih-lu 李仕魯 remonstrated in vain several times; he then placed his official ensign 笏 (a jade-slab held in both hands before the nose at audience) down before the emperor, whereupon the emperor became so enraged that he commanded some military officers to seize and execute him there and then. An official, Wang Yün-tao 王允道, begged to open an iron-foundry at Tsz-chou 磁 (Chihli). The emperor answered: I have heard that one should not neglect excellent men in governing the world, but not heard of profit; as war material is not wanted now, this would only become a heavy trouble to the people. Wang was banished beyond the sea after a bamboo application.

Examinations were re-established. Death of the empress Ma in her fifty-first year of age. She had been very diligent in fulfilling her duties and spent her leisure-hours in study. She had the biographies of the best Sung empresses written out to be her *mirror*. She persuaded the emperor to mitigate punishments; she also caused the pupils of the imperial college to receive an allowance for themselves and their families. Buddhists 僧 were chosen to assist the imperial princes and to chant Buddhist lore.

1383 First metropolitan examination.

1384 A man of Hü-yi 盱眙 (Anhui) presented a Heavenly book 天書 and was executed. Flood in part of Honan; officers were sent with relief.

1395 Death of Hsü Ta (s. 1367). In success he was without pride, not fond of women, not collecting riches, exemplary without a spot, bright as sun and moon, the only great general.

The governor of Ping-mien 平緬, Sz Lun-fa 思倫發, rebelled; 300,000 men following his standard. Mission of Fu An 傅安 (G. 575) to Central Asia.

1386 Poor people above eighty years of age received an allowance of five pecks 斗 grain, three litre 斗 wine and five catties of meat per month; those above ninety in addition, yearly, a piece of silk 帛 and a quilt 絮 of ten catties. Those who had field-produce of their own, received no grain; rich persons received a title of honor.

1387 Nahachu 納哈出, governor of Yüan 元, made several incursions into Liaotung with several 100,000 men. The emperor sent a general with 200,000 men against him; Nahachu then surrendered. An army was also sent northward. Fifty-nine fortifications were constructed along the coast of Chekiang against the Japanese and manned by over 58,000 able men (G. 1880).

1388 Famine at Tsingchou 青, which had been kept secret by the magistrate there; the imperial order was to deal with it speedily and publicly.

Sz (s. 1385) plundered the borders; he had 100 elephants in armor, but the imperial general Mu Ying 沐英 (G. 1560) formed three lines of fire-arms and crossbows, divided his force in three armies and attacked the enemy, killing over 40,000 men and capturing thirty-seven elephants alive. Sz fled, but sent tribute the next year.

The army sent to the North (into Mongolia) was also victorious. Over 100 persons of the chief's family, including his second son, 3,000 officials, 70,000 privates (male and female) and horses, camels, cattle and sheep (150,000 heads) were carried away.

1389 A rebellion in Hukwang was suppressed and the leader executed.

1390 Another expedition was sent to the North with success; I-ton 迤都 was reached, where the Mongol governor and other officials surrendered.

[1391 The population numbered 10,600,000 households, or fifty-six million adults.]

1392 The Ho broke its embankment at Yang-wu 陽武; eleven prefectures and districts were flooded. A rebellion at Kien-chang 建昌 was suppressed and the leader executed. Mu Ying (s. 1388) died. He was very stern, spoke little and smiled seldom, fond of men of

character and of politeness, treated the soldiers with forbearance, never killed at random. In Yünnan he furthered all endeavors for the benefit of the country, especially agriculture; the military colonies he increased by over one million mou, strengthened the embankments, extended the profit of salt-wells, protected the travelling merchants. The emperor used to say: "I can sleep without anxiety about the South; this is Ying's merit." The Korean royal family, which had occupied the throne for several hundred years, was dethroned by Li Ch'eng-kuei 李成桂, the name of the country was changed from Kao-li 高麗 into the ancient appellation Chao-sien 朝鮮.

- 1393 Lan Yü 藍玉, a great general of merit, abused his power and was executed under the accusation of planning rebellion; 15,000 of his adherents also suffered death.

The number of the population was 16,052,860 families or 60,545,811 persons.

- 1394 The emperor caused the department of public works to construct ditches and lakes to regulate the water in times of drought and of flood. At 40,987 places such works were completed. Fu Yu-te 傅友德, who had been raised to high nobility as a successful general, received imperial permission to kill himself, because he had petitioned for 1,000 mou of land.
- 1395 The aborigines of Yüeh-chou 越 (in Yünnan) rebelled, but were soon brought to order. Fung Sheng 馮勝, another man of merit and high nobility, received permission to end his life.
- 1396 Wang Po 王朴, a censor, displeased the emperor by repeated criticisms, the emperor got angry and condemned him to death; when he arrived on the execution ground, he was called back and asked by the emperor, whether he now repented; he answered that he wished his speedy death. The emperor got into a great rage and commanded to carry out the sentence quickly. When passing the historian's office, the condemned called out in a loud voice to make an entrance into the records, that on this day the emperor killed the innocent censor Po.
- 1398 Death of the emperor. All supernumerary officials of provinces, prefectures and districts were dismissed. Fang Hiao-ju 方孝孺 was appointed Hanlin lecturer to the emperor. Death of Mu Ch'un 沐春, commander-in-chief of Yünnan, in his thirty-sixth year; he had increased the military colonies there by over 300,000 mou, improved the waterworks, so that over 5,000 families were restored to order.

His successor had to fight again with the rebels, but succeeded in capturing the chief Tiao Kan-meng 刁幹孟 and decapitated him.

- 1399 恭閔惠帝 emperor Hwei, second son of the crown prince, reigned four years and perished when the capital was taken by his uncle (G. 488). Earthquake at the capital. One imperial prince, uncle of the emperor, being accused of high-treason, burned himself; three other uncles were degraded to the rank of common people; a fifth, Ti 棣, king of Yen 燕, raised soldiers and defeated the imperial general sent against him, killing 30,000; another general leading 500,000 men was also defeated.
- 1400 Though Ti suffered a defeat by Sheng Yung 盛庸, he prevailed again in the following year.
- 1402 After a victory in Shantung, Ti crossed the Yangtse and took Nanking, one imperial prince and a general having surrendered with their armies. The palace was burnt, the end of the emperor remaining unknown; the burnt body of the empress was deceptively buried with imperial honors. Ti ascended the throne. Ti had sent the Buddhist Yao Kuang-hiao 姚廣孝 (G. 2436) to save Fang's life (s. 1398), when Nanking was to be taken. He did so, but Fang instead of acknowledging the new emperor, wrote four characters, "Yen robber, usurper of the throne;" he was executed together with Hwei's two faithful ministers and their families, several hundred persons.
- 1403 成祖文帝 emperor Ch'eng, fourth son of T'ai-tsu, reigned twenty-two years and died in his sixty-fifth year (G. 471).
- The head-eunuch was sent to Tibet 烏斯藏 to invite a Lama priest Halima (G. 606), who was famous as an acrobat 幻化, to Peking. Another eunuch was sent to Java 爪哇 and Sumatra, another ambassador went to Siam 暹羅 and one to Bengal 滿加刺 and Ko-chih 柯枝. They went with a fleet under the eunuch Cheng Ho 鄭和 (G. 272), accompanied by over 27,000 soldiers and of course at great expense.
- Criminals were employed to work the fields at Peking; from the provinces and the ten cities people were transferred there. Earthquake at Peking, also in the year 1404.
- 1405 The Tartar Sao-hu-erh 掃胡兒 tendered his submission. The Pa-pu 八百 were subjected.
- 1406 Search after books was decreed. An expedition started against Annam. The leader died on the way. His successor Chang Fu 張輔 (s. G. 52) took the eastern capital by a night-attack; the

elephants of the enemy were frightened and turned back by painted tigers and fire-missiles. The western capital was taken by another general, and in the following spring the Annamese were defeated in an open battle; over 30,000 heads being taken.

- 1407 The Lama Halima 哈立麻 (s. 1403) was made the head or king of all Buddhists 大寶法王; three of his pupils also received high offices. Chang Pu seized the leader of the Annamese and his son and sent them in cages to Peking. Annam was then quiet.

The all-comprehensive encyclopaedia, which comprised 22,877 sections, was completed (G. 727).

- 1408 Earthquake at Peking. Disturbance again in Annam.

- 1409 The Tartars annihilated an army of 100,000 men sent against them. Chang Pu was successful in Tongking; he captured the chief and sent him to Peking.

- 1410 The emperor led in person 500,000 men against the Tartars and defeated them at the Kannan 幹難 river. The chief Alut'ai 阿魯台 (s. G. 3) begged to surrender, but as the emperor found out, it was only a feint, he met him with his cavalry, defeated him severely and pursued him over 100 li.

- 1411 The Yellow River broke through at K'ai-fêng and destroyed over 2,000 feet of the wall; over 14,000 families became destitute. 100,000 men of the people were called out to repair the breach. A high wave broke the dyke at the Kiangsu coast; to a length of 130 li the country was flooded. A general was commanded to repair it with 400,000 soldiers. They raised a new embankment over 180,000 feet long.

- 1412 A call to audience on public business; *over 1,500 officials attended* and were commanded to report on the people's troubles; not to speak was incriminating, to speak improperly was passed over.

- 1413 The people were ordered to rear horses. The judges were ordered to reconsider sentences of death; those of a heavy nature should be executed, those of a light nature redeemed, decapitation for 8,000 strings of cash, strangulation for 6,000, also banishment according to circumstances; those of no means should be sent to the Tien-shou 天壽 mountains to plant trees. Earthquake at Peking.

- 1414 The emperor led a successful expedition against Wa-la 瓦剌, a Tartar chief, who had murdered his ruler. The Hanlin Hu Kwang 胡廣 (G. 820) and associates received orders to edit the five King (Classics) and four Books, also the works of the Sung philosophers 性理.

- 1415 Over 4,900 men, condemned to imprisonment with hard labor, were set free. A creek was opened twenty li long to connect the city of Huai-ngan 淮安 with the Grand Canal. Earthquake at Peking.
- 1416 Famine at Peking, Honan and Shantung. 1,380,000 piculs of grain were distributed for help. Earthquake at the capital.
- 1417 The emperor went North on a tour of inspection, making the crown prince vice-regent for the time (G. 457).
- 1418 Death of Hu Kwang (s. 1414); he received a posthumous title, the first awarded to a civil officer.
- 1419 The Japanese invaded Liaotung, but were defeated.
- 1420 A monstrous woman caused a rebellion at P'u-t'ai 蒲臺 in Shantung, which was suppressed (G. 1883).
- 1421 Transfer of the capital to Peking. Amnesty. Twenty-six inspectors were appointed to find out the grievances of the people and to report any oppressive officials.
- 1422 The emperor led an expedition against Alut'ai (s. 1410), appointing the crown prince to be vice-regent. Great rain ruined the harvest in many prefectures of Nanking, Peking and Shantung. The emperor went to Sha-hu yüen 殺胡原 (Ulianghai); Alut'ai fled; the emperor had several tens of his high counsellors beheaded.
- 1423 The emperor led again an expedition against Alut'ai, whose general had crossed the border, plundering. The son of the Mongolian king surrendered and the emperor returned with his army (cp. G. 685).
- 1424 Another expedition sent against the Mongols returned without having seen the enemy, after marching 300 li in the desert. Earthquake at Nanking. Death of the emperor before reaching the capital. He was an ardent Buddhist.
- 1425 仁宗昭帝 emperor Jen Tsung (G. 456), eldest son of Cheng-tsu, reigned one year and died in his forty-eighth year.
Earthquake at Nanking. Revision of the penal code. Prisoners were no longer beaten on the back, castration was abolished; those who castrated themselves were denounced as unfilial; relations should not suffer with criminals, except in cases of rebellion.
- 1426 宣宗章帝 emperor Hsüan Tsung, eldest son of Jen, reigned ten years and died in his thirty-sixth year (G. 432).
A girl cut her liver out to cure her mother; the Board of Ceremonies asked for a memo which the emperor refused, as this was not filial piety but a great sin. A school was opened for young eunuchs; at first from 200 to 300 were received, then it was increased to from 400 to 500 of about ten years of age. This was the beginning of their

literary knowledge. The earth grew hair, over a foot long, at the capital. The emperor's uncle, king of Han 漢, rose in rebellion (G. 457). The emperor led an army in person and defeated him; he surrendered and was degraded to the rank of the common people; of his friends over 640 were executed and of his military officers over 1,500 men.

- 1427 Earthquake at Nanking. Decree that a contribution of grain should redeem guilt; seventeen grades were made from death to forty blows, and the quantity of grain was fixed from 100 to two piculs; those who had no means were kept in prison for a long time, even when condemned only to be beaten. Expedition against the Yao and Tung aborigines 獠獍; they retired into steep mountains and fastened stones to creeping plants, which they cut when soldiers approached, so that the stones came down on them. The general had fire bound to the horns of cattle and sheep in the night and drove them towards the enemy; they sent down the stones, which were soon finished; then the soldiers went up in the morning and cut over 10,000 heads off; the rest surrendered.
- 1428 The palace lady Sun 孫 had secretly taken the son of another harem-lady as her own child, this was made heir of the throne; the empress, lady Hu 胡, was degraded without any reason and lady Sun put in her place. Famine in Shansi, over 100,000 emigrated to the districts of Honan; imperial commissioners distributed relief. The emperor went and defeated Alut'ai (a. 1422) at the Huan river.
- 1429 Earthquake at the two capitals (Peking and Nanking). The jailors were notified, that redemption was no more accepted.
- 1430 Earthquake at the two capitals.
- 1431 The eunuch Yuan-chi 袁琦 had been in attendance on the emperor from childhood. He used his position to enrich himself by squeezing both officials and people; when it became known, he was executed. In his dwelling treasure was found amounting to hundreds of thousands; over ten of his accomplices were also executed.
- 1432 Laws, restricting the officials, were made in thirty-five chapters.
- 1433 Inspectors were sent out to examine the grievances of the people.
- 1435 After the emperor's death over 3,800 musicians, etc., were dismissed. Decree to open schools in all official places. Death of president Chien I 蹇義 (G. 357).
- 1436 英宗睿帝 emperor Ying Tsung, eldest son of Sun, reigned all in all twenty-two years and died in his thirty-eighth year

(G. 435). His grandmother Chang 張, a lady of superior character, assisted in the government till her death in 1442.

The three Yang 楊 (M. 895, G. 2391; 2403; 2420) were distinguished as scholars and statesmen. Great flood at the two capitals, in Shantung, Honan, Shensi, Hukwang and Kwangtung.

1438 Earthquake at the capital. Drought and famine in Shensi.

1439 Earthquake at the capital.

1440 Over 20,000 men entered the Buddhist priesthood. Yang Hing-siang 楊行祥, a Buddhist priest over ninety years old, pretended to be emperor Huei (s. 1402). He was brought in chains from Kwangsi to the capital and executed.

1441 An expedition of 150,000 soldiers was sent against the aborigines of the South, the son of Sz-lun-fa (s. 1385) being leader. Their array of elephants was broken and over 10,000 heads taken.

1442 Locusts in Chihli and Honan. An officer was sent to Chekiang to prepare against the Japanese. Death of the empress-dowager Chang.

1443 The chief eunuch Wang-chen 王振 (G. 2139) killed the Hanlin high counsellor, only because they disagreed. A professor of the high-school for nobles, who did not bow before Wang, was punished with the wooden collar for cutting some branches of a tree. Though the pupils of the college, *over 3,000*, petitioned the emperor, no answer was received. At the birthday of the empress-dowager's father, the professor's absence was noticed; the dowager then told the reason to the emperor, who only then heard of it and had him liberated.

1444 Death of Yang Sze-chi (s. 1436) in his eightieth year. He was a man of great principles and benevolent to poor scholars. The generals were ordered to be ready against Yesien 也先 (Mongol).

1445 Earthquake at the capital. The prefect of Pa-chou 霸 laid out statistical records for the people to be registered in every neighborhood 里 and had some mandarins beaten for oppressing the people. He was ill-reported to Wang-chen, who imprisoned him, had him beaten almost to death and then banished.

1446 Earthquake at the capital.

1447 Wang-chen accepted a bribe of 10,000 pieces of gold and made the donator treasurer of Fukien; he became an unbearable burden to the people.

1448 Prohibition of the use of copper-cash; those who hindered the circulation of paper, were banished to the frontier with their families.

if found in possession of 10,000 strings of cash. The Ho broke through its dykes in Honan, flooding over 2,000 li of ground. Houses were destroyed and people drowned without number. Locusts at the capital.

Wang-chen admiring Buddha, asked the emperor to grant one great Buddhist worship to be conducted yearly in the emperor's presence and to have the grand monastery repaired 大興隆寺. 10,000 people were employed, and the expense to the imperial treasury amounted to several 100,000. After its completion the emperor himself preached the law of Buddha and called himself a disciple.

1449 Drought. Yesien (s. 1444) of the Wara or Oirad 瓦剌 entered within the borders and ransacked the country. Following Wang Chen's advice, the emperor led an army of 500,000 men in person. At T'u mu 土木 several 100,000 of the imperial troops were killed, the emperor was captured, over fifty generals met their death; Wang Chen died too. At the capital about 100,000 decrepit soldiers were left (G. 2385).

The empress-mother (Sun, s. 1428) placed Ying's brother on the throne (s. 387 about a eunuch). The immense treasure found in the residence of Wang Chen was confiscated. Kuo Teng 郭登 was appointed commander-in-chief with his head-quarters at Ta-tung 大同 in Shansi. He had the place repaired, the armory put in order, he cared for the soldiers, provided medicine for the wounded and consolation for the dead, and swore he would live and die with the city. When he arrived, there were only several hundreds of able soldiers and about a hundred horses; in a few years he had 15,000 horses and several 10,000 soldiers, the best in the empire. Yesien made an attack on the capital, but was repulsed; he then ransacked Ning-hia 寧夏. The border defences were repaired.

1450 代宗景帝 emperor King (G. 436), younger brother of Ying-tsung, reigned seven years, when Ying was restored. King retired in his thirty-eighth year of age.

Kuo Teng with 800 men, cavalry, defeated several 1,000 Wara (s. 1449), but they made incursions at several other places. Drought. A high dignitary broke the power of the aborigines in Kweichou 貴. Yesien sent the ex-emperor back, who was met by an envoy to redeem him; he then resided in the southern palace.

1451 Military offices were sold for 4,000 piculs of beans; the courtier Ts'ao K'ai 曹凱 pointed out the folly of it, so that the emperor discontinued the practice. Over 50,000 persons became monks, Buddhists and Taoists; the minister Yü Ch'ien 于謙 remonstrated against it without effect.

Earthquake at the southern capital. Two of the imperial princes began a rebellion with the help of the Miao-tsz, but were degraded to the common people. Meng Neng 蒙能, the leader of 2,000 Miao, seeing that the case was lost, entered Kwangsi, where his army increased to over 30,000; he conquered three cities and held out for seven years. Yesien murdered his chief, took wives and children and made them a tribute to the emperor. The minister Yü Ch'ien opposed it in vain.

1452 The crown prince and the empress were degraded; the favorite Hang 杭 and her son were elevated. The chief eunuch Hing An 興安 served Buddha more devotedly than Wang Chen (s. 1443). He asked the emperor to build a monastery, on which several 100,000 were spent and over a year's work.

1453 Graduates were first admitted to the imperial college for a contribution of grain. The new crown prince died.

1454 As there were over 2,000 pupils at the high-school who depended on the official granary, 1,000 were sent home on the advice of a minister; only those advanced in years were retained. Yesien established himself as Khan 盛田可汗. Ola 阿剌 begged to be Great preceptor 太師, which was refused and even his two sons were executed. For this Ola led the people and attacked and killed Yesien. The Tartar chief Pulai 孛來 killed Ola, took away Yesien's mother and wife together with the jade-seal and asked the son of the murdered ruler (Thutupuhua 脫脫不花) to take the leadership. The revival of the power of the Tartars began from this time.

1455 The Tartars sent an envoy with tribute. The plain of the two capitals was flooded.

1456 The descendants of Chou Tung-yi (M. 73, who died in the year 1073), of Ch'eng I and Chu Hsi were made hereditary professors of the five Classics. Famine at the two capitals, in Shantung and Honan.

1457 As the emperor was ill, several of the high ministers re-established Ying Tsung (s. 1436). He had the chancellor Yü Ch'ien imprisoned and then executed with another, because they had opposed

the coup d'état. Their property was confiscated. Two ministers were banished and two degraded to the common people. The emperor received the title king, but soon died. The degraded crown prince was re-established (s. 1452). Famine in Chihli and Shantung. The emperor remembered compassionately the chief eunuch Wang Chen (s. 1443), restored him to office, had his figure carved in fragrant wood and called his soul to the burial, he built a memorial temple 祠 for him with the inscription 旌忠.

The emperor set the son of Huei (1399-1403) free, who was imprisoned, when two years old, and now in his fifty-seventh year; he had become an idiot, not being able to recognise cattle or horse. He died soon after. The adopted son of the chief eunuch Ts'ao 曹 was ennobled. About the eunuch Men Ta 門達 s. G. 1512.

1459 Two chamberlains were sent to Canton to collect pearls. The emperor visited the chief eunuch at home. Fang Ying 方瑛 crushed the Miao of Kweichou, captured the chief of the East Miao alive, whom he sent to the capital, there to be torn to pieces. Fang brought the Miao of Szechuan, Hu, and Kweichou to order, carrying about 2,000 fortifications and beheading over 40,000 captured Miao; he excelled in merit all before him.

1460 The Tartar Pulai (s. 1454) entered plundering; he divided his forces into several parties.

1461 The prefect of Nanhsiung after more than thirty years of faithful service, and although beloved by the people, was imprisoned and executed on the instigation of a chamberlain, whom he had prevented from squeezing the people. The people bewailed him and erected a memorial temple. Ts'ao, the chief eunuch (G. 1993), and his adopted son (s. 1457) rebelled and were executed. The Ho broke through, the water stood in K'ai-fêng city over ten feet deep, numberless people were drowned. The Tartars plundered Ho-si, the commandant of the capital was sent to resist them. Earthquake at the capital.

1462 The Yao aborigines 獠 of the two Kwang provinces were defeated.

1463 Yuan P'in 袁彬 had accompanied the emperor, when he was in exile in the North. During a cold night he warmed the feet of the emperor with his body; when he was getting cold himself, the emperor patted his back, till perspiration appeared; he regarded P'in as one of his own flesh and blood for a year. After getting again to the throne, he made him prefect. The head of the guard

- falsely accused Pin of a crime, but he relied on the old imperial favor. He was imprisoned, but soon released.
- 1464 The emperor died. He commanded in his will (as the first of the Ming emperors), that *no harem-ladies should be buried alive with him (!)*. As soon as the crown prince ascended the throne, he dismissed the inmates of the harem. Sieh Hstian 薛瑄, a president of the Board of Rites, died when seventy-two years old; he was the author of a work on Literature 有議書錄 in twenty parts.
- 1465 憲宗純帝 emperor Hien Tsung, oldest son of Ying, reigned twenty-three years and died in his fortieth year (G. 438).
- The aborigines Yao of Kwangsi caused trouble again and were defeated. Famine at the two capitals (Peking included the provinces of Chihli and southern Manchuria or Shenking; Nanking included the two provinces Kiangsu and Anhui; these provinces were separated during the present Manchu dynasty); also in Hukwang, Chekiang, and Honan. The Tartars made an inroad.
- 1466 An army was sent against the Miao in Hukwang (Hunan) and subdued them. The famine at the two capitals became more severe.
- 1467 Earthquake. From the sixth month of the previous year to the fourth month of this, there occurred 375 shocks in Szechuan.
- 1468 A western Buddhist gained the emperor's favor by secret (erotic) teaching, and a long title was given to him; his pupils got the title State-preceptors 國師; many received imperial eulogies; in their dress, food and use of utensils they assumed princely style. Taoist priests were treated in a similar way. The chief of Shih-ch'eng 石城 rebelled, but was brought to order.
- 1469 The viceroy of the Kwang provinces received orders to prepare against the Yao (s. 1465, cp. G. 633).
- 1470 Great drought at Peking, Honan and Shantung; famine in Shensi, Szechuan, Shansi, the two Kwang, and Yunnan. Great flood in the districts of Shun-tien, Ho-chien, and Yung-p'ing. The favorite Wan 萬 (G. 2117) was jealous of every other lady who received imperial favor and lived in hope of motherhood; they were made to miscarry. The emperor once happened to meet a secondary lady, Ki 紀, who became pregnant. Lady Wan became enraged when she heard of it; she sent a slave-woman to treat Ki like the other ladies in such circumstances, but the slave returned with a lie. After a prince was born, lady Wan sent the chief eunuch to murder him, but the eunuch said: the emperor has no other son;

how can this one be put away? He gave the child some flour and honey and hid it away.

- 1472 The crown prince, son of lady Peh 柏, four years old, was brought to death by lady Wan. Drought. Great flood at Nanking and Chekiang. The revenue of Shansi, Honan, and Shensi for the following year was collected to prepare war against the Ordos (t'o 套).
- 1473 The Tulufan seized Hami. Great famine in South Chihli and Shantung. The emperor was pleased with the shooting (arrows) of the military officers on horseback. Li Yi 李義, eunuch and governor of Chekiang, went to Ningpo, where an officer presented twenty taels of silver; not satisfied with this, he had him beaten to death. The mother appealed to the court, but Li pleaded that he had beaten the defunct in public service and that he died from a natural cause. The case was therefore dismissed.
- 1474 A frontier wall was erected 1770 li long. By the heavy expenses the treasury became exhausted. 550,000 men had been levied, not counting those that died; when only some thirty dollars were in the treasury, the work had to be stopped.
- 1475 The emperor summoned his young son (s. 1470); the mother brought him trembling for fear of lady Wan. The emperor made him crown prince. He was then given in care of the empress-dowager. Lady Wan invited him once to dinner, when the dowager instructed him to go, but not to eat anything. Lady Wan prepared food, when he said he had eaten already; she brought soup, but he said it might contain poison. This frightened the lady so that she got ill, saying, he will one day feed fishes with my body. The viceroy of the two Kwang (G. 633) made a report, that over 43,000 families, including more than 150,000 individuals of the Yao and Chuang 獠獠 tribes had submitted to the government.
- 1476 The vagrant people of King 荆 and Siang 襄 were induced to settle over 113,000 families, including over 438,000 individuals. Earthquake at the capital. The professor Shang Lu 商輅 and others presented the continuation of the Digest of History 續資治通鑑綱目.
- 1477 Earthquake at the capital.
- 1478 The crown prince was sent to school; an old eunuch, T'an Chi 覃吉, had to be with him day and night; he taught him orally the Four Books, also the governmental statutes, ancient and modern. When the emperor gave a farm to the prince, Chi advised him not to accept it, as the whole empire belonged to him. Once the

prince happened to follow the chief eunuch in reading a Buddhist canon, when Chi entered; the prince frightened, seized the Canon of Filial Piety; Chi said kneeling, "Have you been reading a Buddhist canon?" He answered: "No, the Canon of Filial Piety." Chi bowing his head said: "Very good! the Buddhist canons are unfounded (foolish) and cannot be believed." Correcting the first beginnings, was the force of Chi.

The Ho broke through at K'aifêng.

- 1479 The adept (alchemist) Li Tsë-sheng 李孜省 received a high office in the palace (G. 1227).
- 1480 Wang Yüeh 王越 (G. 2260) surprised the Tartars, cut over 400 heads off and took 6,000 horses, camels, cattle and sheep.
- 1481 A Taoist priest also received a high office.
- 1482 The Tartars attacked two places in Shensi, but were defeated (G. 2157). From incessant heavy rains for three months, the rivers overflowed in Honan and drowned several myriads of people.
- 1483 The Tartars ransacked Tatung (Shansi) and defeated the imperial troops, killing over 1,000. The Buddhist monk Chi-jao 繼曉 was made State preceptor because of his secret receipts 秘術; he seduced the emperor to practice the law (Buddhism) and to build a temple on the western market. Several hundred families living there had to remove and several hundred thousand (taels?) of the treasury were wasted.
- 1484 The capital province, Shantung, Hukwang, Shensi, Honan, and Shansi all suffered from drought.
- 1485 The chief eunuch had spent the treasury for amusements to please lady Wan. When seven vaults had been emptied, the emperor one day looked into the room and made inquiries. The two head eunuchs answered, that the money was spent for the erection of temples and altars, to pray for long life and happiness of his Majesty.
- 1486 Wang Shu 王恕 (G. 2226), minister of war at Nanking, was dismissed. He had sent over fifty papers to the throne, all forcible protests against the misuse of the imperial power 權倖; the whole empire admired him. There was a phrase current: the two capitals have twelve Boards, but only one Wang Shu.
- 1487 Death of the favourite Wan. She had received jewelry and dresses from the four quarters; all her male relations were in high offices; the chief eunuchs taxed the people to fill her treasury; she was of a jealous disposition; she had given drugs to harem ladies

and caused abortion in innumerable cases; at her death the emperor was so moved that he held no court for seven days. Death of the emperor. The crown prince took the throne. He dismissed over 240 Shamans 禪師真人 and over 780 kings of law, young Buddhas and State preceptors 法王佛子國師; they had to return their mandates, seals, etc., and to go home. The emperor found in the palace a small box with writings of the minister Wan An 萬安 (G. 2117) on "suggestions for the bedroom." The emperor ordered the chief eunuch to examine Wan An; the result was his immediate dismissal, being over seventy years old.

1488 孝宗敬帝 emperor Hiao Tsung, third son of Hien, reigned eighteen years and died in his thirty-sixth year (G. 481).

A chamberlain wished to select young ladies for the harem, but the minister Hsie Tsien 謝遷 opposed it, so that it was not done. The emperor visited the high school and the lecture hall, where he ordered daily lectures by the orthodox professors. Burning of Taoist books (G. 1488). The disorderly monk Chi-jao (s. 1483) was executed. Ministers, that had been dismissed for remonstrating, were recalled to office (cp. G. 642).

1489 The Ho broke through at K'aifêng and entered the Ch'in 沁.

1490 Granaries were ordered all over the empire. Every ten li had to collect 10,000 piculs; those that excelled were rewarded, the deficient punished. Earthquake at the capital.

1491 The emperor expelled in his first year (1487) all foreign monks from the capital, except Yünu-pantan 乳奴班丹 and a few others, all in all fifteen men. But some had hid themselves in the capital and gained influence, so that now 182 were allowed to remain; all others were expelled. Earthquake. The Turfans surrendered Hami. Fire at the imperial tombs at Fung Yang 鳳陽, which extended over more than ninety li.

Statistics were returned for the year, counting 9,113,446 homes containing 53,281,158 individuals.

1492 Rare books were collected. Wang Shu's (s. 1486) regulations of storing grain were adopted.

1493 The Yellow river broke through at Chang-chiu 張秋. Locusts. The Turfans took Hami again.

1494 The governor of Kueichou pacified the black Miao. Orders were issued for catching the locusts in the provinces of the two capitals; for each peck of locusts the people received a peck of grain. Earthquake at the capital. Two officers were appointed to regulate the

Ho, its course, canals, lakes, dykes, and shore fences; over 200,000 men were employed at 135 places. The water calamity was thus somewhat lessened. Earthquake at Nanking.

1495 Hami was subdued. Two years later the Turfans also returned Shen and Pa 陝巴.

1497 The Tartar Siao Wang Tsě 小王子 made an incursion; the Chinese general fell in battle.

1498 The eunuchs wanted to keep the crown prince under their control and away from the influence of Confucianists, but the dignitary Wu K'uan 吳寬 succeeded in convincing the emperor by a memorial, pointing out that the teaching in the eastern palace was insufficient even regarding time, being intermitted in bad weather and on the new and full-moon days; in fact only carried on a few months in the year, a few days in the month and for a few hours a day; this was inadequate for the common people and more so for the prince. Wang Yüeh (s. 1480) surprised Siao Wang Tsě (s. 1497) in the Ho-lan 賀蘭 mountains and crushed him. The chief eunuch induced the emperor to build a pavilion on the 10,000 years hill; as soon as it was completed, a young princess died and the palace of the dowager was burnt. It was then said that this was caused by building the pavilion. The chief eunuch got so frightened that he took poison and died. In his house a paper was found with the names of all the great civil and military mandarins, each presenting yellow or white grain in piculs, in hundreds or thousands. The emperor asked, surprised, how he could have eaten so much, when he was told, that yellow grain meant gold and white silver; the emperor got very angry (G. 1160).

1499 The criminal code was revised, many later additions expunged and T'ai Tsu's idea followed.

The Tartar Huo-shai 火篩 made an attack on Tatung.

1500 Earthquake at the capital.

1501 Earthquake at Shensi, Honan, and Shansi; innumerable houses fell, killing men and beasts. Huo-shai combined with Siao Wang-tsě and made an incursion. General Chu Hui 朱暉, who was sent against them, took a place of the Ordos at night by surprise and cut three heads off; he became known as the victorious. A Miao woman caused confusion at P'u-an 普安; a minister was sent from Nanking with an army against her. As Huo-shai marched with his troops from the Ordos, the general Chu Hui was recalled; a censor impeached him, because he had spent 1,600,000 taels and

got for it three heads, so that each had a value of over 500,000 pieces of gold; in this way it would be easy enough for many valiant officers to defeat the enemy and take heads to hundreds and thousands; Chu should be severely punished. The emperor took no notice of this.

- 1502 The Miao woman was defeated and beheaded. The Lai, aborigines of Hainan, rose against official oppression, but were pacified again.
- 1503 Great pestilence in Yünnan. A dense fog caused darkness for seven days, large snowflakes as large as a fist (hail?) destroyed the harvest. Earthquake and storm; a fire burned innumerable houses. The emperor judged that such unusual calamities arose from officials being remiss in fulfilling their duties; he sent the president of the board of punishment from Nanking as a delegate, who examined the state of things in Yünnan, dismissed several tens from their offices and thus gradually calmed the people.
- 1504 Snow fell in the sixth month. Huo-shai entered Tatung, whose commander fell in battle. The Lu mountain cried; its voice was like thunder; the next day great wind and rain followed, so that the plain was over ten feet under water; the two district cities, Sing-tsz 星子 and Te-an 德安, were buried in the water, untold people were drowned. The silver mines in Yünnan were stopped.
- 1505 Siao Wang-tsě came plundering. Death of the emperor.
- 1506 武宗毅帝 emperor Wu Tsung, eldest son of Hiao, reigned sixteen years and died in his thirty-first year (G. 444). He dismissed Hsie Tsien (s. 1488) and two other ministers and made the eunuch Liu Chin 劉瑾 premier (G. 1289, cp. G. 1488).
- 1507 Liu Chin called the three dismissed head-ministers and other officials, fifty-three men, a party of traitors and exposed their names in the court hall.
- 40,000 men became monks, either Buddhists or Taoists.
- 1508 When the court adjourned at noon, an anonymous paper was found, attacking Liu Chin, who in consequence imprisoned over 300 court officials.
- 1509 Siao Wang-tsě plundered Yin-hsi 延綏 (Shansi).
- 1510 An insurrection of the prince of An-hua 安化 (G. 2388) was suppressed. The emperor had a full understanding of the Buddhist scriptures in *Sanscrit*; he also learned the Tartar language, then the *Arabic* or Mohammedan language, also the language of the foreign Buddhist monks; he adopted a name in every language.

The emperor himself found in Liu Chin's residence several millions of gold, and other treasures in enormous quantities. This enraged the emperor, he had Liu executed and his corpse thrown in the market place, where the parties, which hated him, strove one with another to buy his flesh and eat it raw. All relations of Liu were banished far away. This cleared the court.

Recall of officials dismissed by Liu (G. 1356). Rise of a rebellion at Pa-chou 霸 (Shenking?).

- 1511 Rebellions in four different places. The soldiers had several engagements with the rebels, but not always in their favor. Then Ch'en Chin 陳金 with soldiers from Kwangsi caught and beheaded over 27,000 men within half a year. Those that surrendered were settled in two districts. But the soldiers were more cruel towards the people than the rebels, and Ch'en could not check them. There was a deep ill-feeling amongst the people. Earthquake. The water of the Yellow River became clear at a length of over ninety li for three days.
- 1512 127 children born by slaves in the palace were presented with the imperial surname Chu 朱.
- 1513 The Turfans seized Hami.
- 1514 The emperor spent in display of lanterns a sum of several tens of thousands yearly. An imperial prince presented a new show with gunpowder, by which the palace, where it was exhibited, was burnt down. Earthquake at the capital. The emperor, approaching a tiger, received a wound, so that he was prevented from attending the court. Wang Szě 王思, a high dignitary, presented a paper of admonition, that his Majesty as representative of the world in space and time should value his body, how could he by indulgence in drinking or eating or bravery expose his body? The writer was reprimanded by transference to an inferior provincial office. In order to rebuild the burnt palace, the taxes of the empire were increased by a million of taels.
- 1515 The emperor was informed by his attendants, that a living Buddha had appeared in Wu-sz-tsang 烏思藏, who knew three worlds (births). He commanded the chief eunuch to go and accompany the Buddha to the capital. As presents he took many loads of pearls, gold and preserved meat, of salt and tea several 100,000 catties, 130 officers and several thousand men. Getting into the gorges, the smaller boats he had to engage formed a fleet 200 li long. They remained over a year in Ch'engt'u (capital of Szechuan)

to prepare for the overland tour; they reached their destination in two months from there. The monk, however, afraid of mischief, hid himself and did not appear. When the eunuch used threats, the people there surprised him in the night, took away his treasure and killed several hundred men.

1516 Great drought. Some 3,400 males, who had emasculated themselves, were registered for houses at the sea-side.

1517 Kiang Pin 江彬 (G. 336), desiring to push himself into power, induced the emperor to ramble with him several times to see and enjoy pretty women; they even sought women and girls living in families, which greatly delighted the emperor. He once came to the North of Yang-ho 陽和, when 50,000 horsemen fell in plundering. A Chinese general fought with them for five days, and several hundreds of his men were killed, before the robbers were induced to leave. A report of victory reached the capital and the emperor assumed a grand military title.*

1518 The emperor returned to the capital, and fourteen days after he went again on an erotic excursion. When lady Wang 王, the empress-dowager, died, he returned. He rewarded some 9,550 officers of the palace and outside for the victory, and started again for the place of the pretty women. Wang Shou-jen 王守仁 (G. 2224) reduced the rebels in Kiangsi, broke thirty-eight fortifications, and cut some 3,000 heads off; their leader was Ch'en Hao 宸濠, a scion of the imperial family of the Mings (G. 219).

1519 Earthquake at the capital. The emperor assumed for himself the title "Great preceptor" 太師 and expressed his intention to visit the South. The great officers fearing an uproar of the people remonstrated, which made the emperor very angry; six of the opponents he handed to the chief of the police for a beating, the remaining 107 had to kneel before him five days and were bamboosed in turn, so that eleven of them died.

The imperial prince Ch'en Hao 宸濠 (s. 1518) raised soldiers and rebelled; Wang Shou-jen restored order. Though his report had already arrived, the emperor insisted on leading the expedition himself.

1520 The emperor arrived at Ts'ing-kiang-pu 清江浦, where he stayed at the house of the chief eunuch. After three days he went in a boat fishing; when the boat capsized, he was drawn out by his

*31st October, 1517, Dr. Martin Luther begins the Reformation in Europe by fixing his ninety-five theses on the door of the cathedral at Wittenberg!

attendants, but felt ill from this day. Ch'en Hao was executed. Returning to the capital, the emperor gave an illumination for the army; the captured enemies and their families, several thousand persons, were led quite naked, their hands tied at the back, in procession, each with a white ticket giving the name; those that died, had their heads cut off and fixed on a pole. The emperor riding on horseback in military dress enjoyed the spectacle for a long time; then he entered the palace.

[A Portuguese mission came to Peking.]

1521 Death of the emperor. Kiang Pin (s. 1517) was imprisoned for a crime; his confiscated property consisted in 70 trunks of gold, 2,200 trunks of silver, and other treasure without number; he was executed.

1522 世宗肅帝 emperor Shih Tsung, son of a brother of Hiao Tsung (s. 1488) and thus cousin of Wu Tsung (s. 1506), was chosen by the empress-dowager in connection with the prime-minister. He reigned twenty-five years and died in his sixtieth year (G. 445).

The army at Kan-chou 甘 rebelled and killed their commander. Miners formed into a band of robbers and plundered Shantung and Honan, also the provinces of the two capitals, before they were suppressed.

1523 Drought. A descendant of Chu Hsi was made professor of the five Classics. The emperor celebrated the first requiem in the palace. Great flood at Nanking.

1524 Earthquake in the two capital provinces; in Honan, Shantung, and Shensi, at the same time. The emperor ordered that the tablet of his deceased father should receive the imperial title 皇考. All the ministers prostrated themselves and remonstrated, weeping aloud, so that the sound made the hall tremble. The emperor got into a rage; he had all arrested, 220 men; the leaders were banished to the frontier, those of the fourth rank and above were cashiered, those of the fifth rank and below were bamboosed, by which eighteen of them died. He then changed the title into "Earl's tablet" 伯考. The scholar Chang Ts'ung, who assisted the emperor, received high promotion (G. 122). The garrison of Tatung rebelled and killed their commander.

1525 Earthquake in the province of Nanking. There occurred sixty-five shocks of earthquake in the empire during the year.

1526 A minister pointed out that promotion in office now was arbitrary; the ancient custom was nine years' probation. This was adopted.

- 1527 Siao Wang-tsz plundered Hsüan-fu 宣府 (the place where emperor Wu found pretty women, s. 1517).

The great scholar Lo Chin-shun 羅欽順 (s. Watters, p. 209) resigned his office as president of the board of civil offices and returned home, where he wrote a comparison of Buddhism with Confucianism 困知記. Wang-shou-jen (s. 1518) compelled the aborigines of T'ien-chou 田 into submission, and some tribes of the Yao 猺 in the following year.

- 1528 The Statutes of the Ming 明倫大典, a work by Yang T'ing-ho 楊廷和 (G. 2411) and others, were distributed all over the empire. The Turfans pillaged Su-chou 肅 and asked to exchange Hami for Ya-mu-lan 牙木蘭, which was granted.

- 1529 Great famine in Siang-yang (in Honan). Lin Hsi-yüan 林希元 presented an essay to the throne on famine relief. There are two difficulties: (1) to get men, (2) to examine the families. There are three conveniences: (1) grain to the poorest, (2) cash to those not quite destitute, and (3) loans to those in need. There are six urgent cases: (1) to the starving, thick congee; (2) to the sick, medicine; (3) to the convalescent, soup; (4) to the dead, burial; (5) to cast away children, reception and rearing up; (6) to prisoners, mercy. There are three expediences: (1) to lend government money for buying and selling grain, (2) to start public work as a help to those able to work, (3) to lend cattle and seed to effect a change. There are six prohibitions: (1) embezzlement, (2) theft and robbery, (3) to buy up rice, (4) to raise the price, (5) to slaughter cattle, (6) to become a monk. There are three cautions: (1) against delay, (2) against attachment to phrases, (3) against sending servants.

The author received an imperial call to office to carry out his ideas.

- 1530 Revision of the sacrificial code in regard to Confucius; he received the title "Holiest former Teacher" 聖先師.
- 1531 The emperor celebrated a religious festival 修醮 to pray for an heir, when a censor begged forgiveness for those ministers that had been condemned for admonishing; the emperor became very angry and banished the petitioner.
- 1533 Siao Wang-tsz placed a military colony on the borders of Tatung. The commander of Tatung wanted quickly to construct water ditches, etc., in defence, when his soldiers revolted and killed him.
- 1534 The great temple at Nanking was burnt.

- 1535 The army at Liaotung revolted; their commander was imprisoned for estranging them by harshness.
- 1536 Images of Buddha were destroyed in the forbidden city. The Taoist priest Shao Yüan-chieh 邵元節 was made president of the Board of Rites as a reward for the children born to the emperor upon his prayer 其禱祀功.
[Macao was granted to the Portuguese for a settlement.]
- 1537 A general was sent against Annam.
- 1538 Honors added to the deceased father of the emperor (a. 1524) 睿宗; his temple was attached to the Great temple.
- 1539 Famine in Honan.
- 1540 The sons of relations of men of merit were sent to the high school by imperial rescript. An alchemist gained, through the chief eunuch, access to the emperor, to whom he promised to make gold and receive the medicine of immortality by retiring into an inner room and having no intercourse with the outer world. The emperor followed his advice and made the crown prince regent. The dignitary Yang Tsui 楊最 exhorted the emperor, who got angry, cast Yang into prison and had him beaten to death. The regent was also degraded. In the following year the eunuch suffered death for a crime and the alchemist was also executed.
- 1541 The emperor did not appear at court for a year, but occupied himself with Buddhist ceremonies 齋醮. When on New Year a little snow fell, some courtiers forwarded eulogies, but the censor Yang Chio 楊爵 pointed out all the corruption in the administration in bold language. The emperor, enraged, had him imprisoned and so beaten that blood and raw flesh came off; he fainted and remained as dead for the evening, then he revived.
- 1542 Anda 俺答 pillaged Shansi. The emperor, following the talk of an alchemist T'ao 陶, had an altar built to the god of thunder; a high officer Liu Hui 劉魁, wishing to speak against it, bought first his coffin. He pointed out that the emperor in building costly temples had already spent hundreds of thousands, emptied the treasury and burdened the people; this altar was also a wrong undertaking. He was bamboozed on the spot, then confined to prison.
- The emperor sleeping in the palace of lady Ts'ao 曹 was strangled by a slave girl. The empress, however, arrived in time to save his life. She had lady Ts'ao, the girl, and another harem-lady, who originated the scheme, torn to pieces in the market before the emperor knew of it.

1543 To-yen 朵顏 made an incursion.

1544 Siao Wang-tsz made an incursion. The alchemist T'ao was made president of the Board of Rites for some jugglery, and more honor was added when rain fell in answer to his prayer and because of other occurrences ascribed to his magic.

1545 A nephew of the emperor had intimate intercourse with the harem-ladies of his father, king of Tsu 楚; he also induced a friend to visit women of another establishment. When things could no longer be hidden, they planned together, invited the king to a banquet, where they gave him a blow with a copper-melon, that killed him instantly. Some attendants escaped and reported the matter to the emperor, who immediately sent men on horseback to seize the murderers. They were torn to pieces in the market-place, their corpses burnt and the ashes scattered; all their adherents were executed.

1546 The crown prince was now eleven years old and had not yet been let out from his room to attend the lectures; a censor remonstrated to this, whereupon the emperor got angry and transferred him to an office on the sea-shore. The "white-grass" Fan 白草番 in Szechuan rose in rebellion; a general was sent against them, who seized the chief, captured and beheaded some thousands and carried over forty fortifications. This finished the rebellion.

1547 The Ho broke through in the Ts'ao 曹 district.

1548 Earthquake at the capital. Execution of the ex-minister Hsia (G. 683).

1549 Anda pillaged Hsüan-fu (s. 1527), the commander of Tatung defeated him. The Japanese pillaged East Chekiang. To-yen (1543) and San-wei 三衛 invaded Liaotung.

1550 Anda invaded the capital; he burned and plundered for three days, then slowly retired through the old north-gap 古北口. The Chinese army cut the heads off of some eighty enemies that had died, and spread the rumor of a victory; the emperor congratulated them.

The emperor celebrating a Buddhist festival (mass); all princes vied with each other in sending incense; only the king of Cheng 鄭 sent an essay in ten chapters on Confucian ethics and against gods and semi-gods as well as their temples and shrines. The emperor got angry, put the messenger in prison and degraded the king to the common people.

1551 Earthquake at the capital.

1552 Wang-shu 王杼 was sent to Chekiang, to make military preparations against the Japanese (G. 2530). The Ho burst its bank at Sü-chou 徐. The capital (Peking) for fear of incursions had an outer wall built, fifteen li long, which was finished in nine months. The corpse of the worthless minister Ch'ou 仇 (G. 431) was beheaded and his family exterminated.

[Francis Xavier died in Sanchoan, near Macao.]

1553 Anda leading a large army, came ravaging. Sz Shang-chao 師尙詔 of Honan rose with several thousands of men, took Kuei-te 歸德 with the help of some of his party, who opened the city-gates; he released those in prison and took the treasure away; pursued by the imperial troops, he was captured in Shantung and forthwith beheaded. Within forty days the rebels had captured a prefectural city, two chou cities, eight district cities, and butchered over 100,000 people. Three provinces trembled.

1554 A high commander was appointed to lead the troops of Kiang-nan and Chekiang against the Japanese.

1555 Chao Wen-hua 趙文華 was sent to inspect the coast. He was ambitious, wishing to rise high by imperial favor. All officers were therefore afraid of him. They heaped public and private money on him, so that Kiangnan became exhausted. Though soldiers were levied from all the empire, the Japanese grew more fierce.

Chang King 張經 defeated the Japanese, but Chao falsely accused him, and the prime-minister Yen Sung 嚴嵩 (G. 2475) sided with him. Chang was imprisoned; he wrote a defence, saying that in the half year, in which he occupied his position as viceroy, he had captured and beheaded 5,000 enemies; he begged to be pardoned, but he was beheaded on the West-market; the whole empire felt the injustice done. Earthquake in Shansi, Shensi, and Honan; some 830,000 people of all ranks killed by falling houses.

1556 The king of Huei 徽 (imperial prince) was of a voluptuous and cruel temper; he took away girls from the people and made them his concubines, he opened over seventy graves (to get the valuables placed there), and killed over twenty guiltless people. A censor filed an accusation, on account of which he was degraded to the common people. He then killed his wife and concubines and committed suicide.

1557 The emperor wanted the building over the gate quickly finished; Chao (s. 1555) did not succeed, which displeased him; he also heard

of Chao's proceedings in Kiangnan and dismissed him on this account; Chao's son was banished.

Hsin-ai 辛愛, son of Anda, surrounded the right encampment at Tatung.

1558 The Japanese invaded Wenchou 溫. Aborigines 土蠻 invaded Liaotung.

1559 Hsin-ai pillaged the region of Luan-ho 滦河.* The Japanese anchored at Tsung-ming. Two generals intercepted them there, beheaded and cut off the ears of 120 men and sunk thirteen ships. Another high officer cleared Kiang-pei (north) of the Japanese.

1560 The salt-commissioner Yin Mou-ch'ing 鄒懋卿 relying on the premier's and his son's favor terrorised the people. He spread embroidered silk before his watercloset and had the chamber-utensils ornamented with silver; his wife accompanied him to sittings of the Board, his sedan-chair was ornamented with five colors and carried by twelve girls.

1561 The thronehall 萬壽宮 burned; before the guard arrived, carriages, clothes and the precious things of former ages were consumed.

1562 Yen Sung (s. 1555, 1560) was found guilty and lost his office, his son was imprisoned. The aborigines (s. 1558) entered Fu-shun 撫順 and attacked Mukden; the commander of it fought desperately for three days and nights, till he fell. The emperor in his later years believed in magic 方術. On the advice of Tao (s. 1542) the emperor sent men in search of adepts, charms, and mystic books. After two years of research the delegates returned with several thousand volumes and several masters of the occult art.

The Japanese conquered in Fukien ten and more cities, carried away boys, girls and valuables, killed or wounded high and low of the population. The commander-in-chief there defeated them, which brought some relief to Fukien (s. G. 304).

1563 Hsin-ai (s. 1557) and Pa-tu-erh 把都兒 made an incursion; the capital was in great apprehension.

1564 Prince I 伊 (imperial prince) took away people's houses to enlarge his own; one neighbor would not give up his property, so he cut off food and drink of this neighbor and ruined him. He built a tower and city similar to that of the emperor, took by force over 700 girls, kept the prettiest and allowed the rest to be redeemed by gold. Some censors reported the matter, upon which prince I was ordered

* River in Chihli near Liaotung.

to break down his palace, to return the girls, and hand his underlings over to the police. As he refused to comply with this, he was degraded to the common people.

1565 Yin's son (1562) was accused of having intended high treason, also of communication with the Japanese and the Manchus 虜; he was therefore executed and cast on the market, his property confiscated, whereby immense treasure was found.

1566 Drought. Anda pillaged Tatung. The emperor fell ill and died from drugs of immortality, administered by his magicians. A wise statesman, who spoke against this superstition, had been cast into prison (G. 607, cp. G. 761).

1567 穆宗莊帝 emperor Mu Tsung, second son of Shih, reigned six years and died in his thirty-sixth year (G. 472).

Heavy rains injured the harvest. The emperor sent officers to Shantung and Honan to assist the vagrant people. Anda pillaged Shensi; several tens of thousands, male and female, were killed; the capital was alarmed, but he withdrew in three days.

1568 Earthquake at the capital. Ts'i Ki-kuang 戚繼光 (M. 769) was appointed chief-commander against the Mongols. He went to Chi-men 薊門 and built 1,200 forts, each with 100 men, extending over 2,000 li. He formed an encampment of carriages, had horses and all sorts of weapons ready; he also exercised strict discipline over his troops, so that he triumphed over the enemy.

1570 Earthquake at the capital. The Ho burst at Pi-chou 邳. Anda's grandson Pa-han 把漢 arrived with some ten attendants, because his grandfather had taken a beautiful girl, Pa's secondary wife, for his concubine. The woman was in fact his grand-daughter (from his daughter). Anda heard of his grandson's treachery, when on an expedition against Turfan. He speedily returned and demanded the surrender of Pa-han. This was granted for the exchange of several Chinese deserters in Anda's camp. Pa-han was returned with many presents (cp. G. 550).

1571 Earthquake at the capital. Floods in Honan and Shantung.

1573 神宗顯帝 emperor Shen Tsung, son of Mu, reigned forty-seven years and died in his fifty-eighth year (G. 452).

Kao Kung (G. 955), an arrogant minister, was degraded.

To-yin Chang-t'o 朵顏長禿, another Mongol chief, attacked the line of fortifications at Kimen (a. 1568) and was captured with his army.

1574 Both the sea and rivers at Huai, Yang, and Sü 淮, 揚, 徐 overflowed.

- 1575 The Ho broke through at Yang-shan 楊山. Earthquake at the capital. Six smaller fortifications 堡 in Liaotung were moved nearer.
- 1576 The Ho burst through in eight chous and districts, Sü, Fung, Pei, etc., and destroyed numberless buildings and fields.
- 1577 An insurrection by a Cantonese and the Yao was defeated, 500 entrenchments were taken and 40,000 men slain.
- New eunuchs were elected, altogether 3,500 men. Statistics were reported: 10,621,436 families, including 60,692,856 individuals.
- 1579 The colleges in the empire, sixty-four in number, were closed; the graduates, high and low, wrangled for lecturing; only the prime-minister Chang Kü-cheng 張居正 (G. 41) hated them and converted the colleges into public offices. The emperor got gradually six palaces ready and spent much of the money destined for the great granary on them. The premier Chang pointed out that the expenditure *should balance the income*; now the income was less, the expenditure more than in former years; he presented a book on the subject, which the emperor graciously accepted.
- 1580 A governor of the Far East, Wang 王, ravaged the frontier. General Li defeated him and beheaded over 800 men; Wang escaped. Great flood in the province of Nanking. About the eunuch Feng Pao, s. G. 571.
- 1581 Drought at the capital; famine in the province of the southern capital.
- 1582 Another marauding officer was defeated and beheaded by General Li in Liaotung. Drought and plague in the capital.
- [The Jesuits Ruggieri and Pasio reach Canton.]
- 1583 *Nur-ha-chu* (G. 1580), the founder of the Great *Ts'ing* dynasty, marched against Ni-kan 尼堪外蘭 and conquered in the year 1584 Tu-lun 圖倫 (s. Mcg. 501). Earthquake at the capital.
- 1585 Drought at the capital, prayer for rain 雩. Earthquake.
- 1586 A rebellion in Szechuan was suppressed by capturing some thirty chiefs and cutting about 1,000 ears off.
- 1587 Drought. Earthquake at the capital. Flood in Kiangnan, drought in Kiang-peï, Shansi, Shensi, Honan, and Shantung.
- 1588 Great famine and plague 疫 in the Nanking province, in Chekiang, Shensi, Shansi, and Honan.
- 1589 Continued drought in the Nanking province. Typhoon and overflow of the sea in Chekiang, drought afterwards; 800,000 taels relief money from the government.

- 1590 A Mongol chief from Gobi 青海, invaded the frontier.
 1591 Locusts in the capital province. General Li degraded for losing a battle against the Mongols.
 1592 The Mongol governor of Ning-hia 寧夏 rebelled; an army had to be sent, whose general utilized the Ho against the city; when the rebel-chief saw his case lost, he committed suicide; order was restored.

The Japanese under general Ping Sin Chi 平秀吉 (Hideyoshi) invested Korea. China sent an army, which was first defeated, then more successful; but the Japanese returned about five years later.

- 1594 Famine in Honan. A chieftain invaded Liaotung, but was defeated.
 1595 The members of the imperial clan were ordered to take part in the examinations. Earthquake at the capital. Another Gobi-chief, intending to surprise the Chinese at a festival, fell into an ambush, where over 700 of his men lost their heads; of the retiring remainder, many were killed by the country people.

The Huai 淮 river overflowed and submerged some of the mausoleums at Sz-chou 泗. Famine in the Hukuang provinces.

- 1596 Famine at Fukien. Opening of mines. The Ho broke through in the Tan 單 district.
 1597 Earthquake at the capital. Rebellion of the governor of Po-chou 播州.
 1598 The aborigines of Liaotung rose, the general Li, who left his fortress to meet them, was killed in an ambush. Drought at the capital and earthquake. Death of the Japanese leader *Hideyoshi*, after which the Japanese returned home. This Japanese war of seven years in Korea had cost the Chinese several 100,000 men and several millions of taels without a result; only the death of Hideyoshi saved China. The Mongols (s. 1590) were surprised and put to flight; a frontier wall, 400 li in length, was erected.
 1599 Drought. For the marriage of all the princes twenty-four million taels were required, which had to be contributed from the provinces, as there was nothing in the treasury. A hill over 2,000 feet high (its side) in the Ti-tao 狄道 district of Shensi roared like thunder for some ten days, then sank in and became a ditch (pool); on its south-side five hills rose up.

Increase of the groundrent in Szechuan and Hukuang on account of the rebellion at Po-chou (s. 1597).

- 1600 Earthquake at the capital. Li, the viceroy of Chuan and Hu 川湖, led an army and pacified Po-chou.

Drought for several years and ill-treatment in the mines created many brigands in the two capital provinces.

1601 Drought. In the three districts of the capital, Shantung, and Honan; the parched land amounted to several thousand li.

[Matthew Ricci comes to Peking].

1602 The Birmese rose against oppressive custom-officials, the commissioner fled, but was executed by the mandarin of the city, into which he had gone. This appeased the Birmese.

1603 Earthquake at the capital. Great hail fell in the capital in the seventh month.

1604 Great rain.

1605 Storm and rain destroyed the mausoleum at Fang-yang (in Anhui). Earthquake at the capital. The president of the Board of Works was commanded to have the mouth of the Ho widened. 500,000 workmen completed this work in six months to a length of 170 li.

1606 Locusts in the capital province. The six forts (s. 1575) were now definitely given up; the population of over 64,000 families refusing to move had to be forced by soldiers, so that many died.

1607 The aborigines took possession of the city of Wuting 武定.

1608 Earthquake at the capital. The Kalkas joined the Manchus. The viceroy of Ki and Liao 薊遼 pointed out the danger in the East and admonished them to prepare in time, also to abolish the *tax on mining* to please the people. The emperor took no notice, but afterwards he issued orders to the officers to get the boundary ready without delay. To-yen (s. 1573) ravaged Kichou 薊; the people seeing soldiers marching, became frightened and fled to the capital 10,000 a day, so that the nine gates had to be shut. The minister of war asked for 300,000 pieces of gold to pay their arrear to the troops; as the treasury had no money, he asked for a loan from the palace-treasury of the mining-tax, which the emperor refused; he granted 100,000 from the horse-provision and 100,000 of the revenue 戶部 (groundrent), which satisfied the soldiers; the enemy withdrew.

1609 Another Mengol chief conquered a border city.

1610 Drought at the capital. Death of Ricci.

1611 Flood in the two capital provinces and in Hukuang.

1613 Along the Yangtse the people were afraid of the Japanese; the commander asked, therefore, that some 150,000 taels be contributed to get necessary provisions; this was granted and the groundtax in two prefectures increased. Flood in the two capital provinces, in Honan, Shantung, Hukuang, Kiangsi, and Kuangsi.

- 1614 It was discovered that lady Cheng 鄭貴妃 planned the destruction of the crown prince, in order to bring her own son, king Fuh 福王, on the throne. The emperor banished Fuh from the capital.
- 1615 Drought in the capital-province and in Shantung. Earthquake at the capital.
- 1616 Great famine in the two capital-provinces and Honan. Drought and locusts in Shensi and Shansi. Flood in Kiangsi, Kuangtung, and Hukuang. The Ordos 套, about 100,000 under forty-two banners, 1,000 to 3,000 horsemen each, made an incursion, but were defeated.
- 1617 There was no snow from the time of the solstice, and in spring no rain; great drought in summer.
- 1618 The Manchus conquered Fu-shun 撫順 in Liaotung; the Chinese general and 10,000 men fell in battle; all the forts surrendered. Earthquake at the capital. After the Manchus had also conquered the fort of Ts'ing Ho 清河, all Liao trembled. The emperor had the general, who fled from Ts'ing Ho, beheaded and the army concentrated again during the winter. As Liaotung had caused heavy expenses, the land-tax was increased, Kueichou excepted, because of its barren ground and its troubles with the Miao tribes. All arable land was computed at some seven million K'ing (one K'ing equal to 100 mou), which brought a sum of over two million taels. The following year the tax was increased, so that it realised eight million taels. The expenses in Liaotung amounted to over five million. This measure somewhat calmed the soldiers, but embittered the people.
- 1619 The Chinese general, leading 470,000 men against the Manchus, was defeated; 310 officers and 45,800 men perished; this general was imprisoned for trial (G. 755). The minister Fang Ts'ung-chê 方從哲 (G. 557) begged the emperor for permission to appear in court, to have the governmental affairs discussed. The emperor complied and had to hear a very humiliating speech.
- 1620 After the Manchus had captured the north-barrier, had subdued Mongolia and Tsai-sai 宰賽, etc., they advanced against Korea. The Korean king asked help from China and received a comforting letter from the emperor. Death of the emperor.

光宗貞帝 emperor Kwang Tsung, eldest son of Shen, ascended the throne in the eighth month and died in the ninth from a dose of medicine (G. 433).

The tax on mining was abolished, also the office for it in the palace; those who had lost their places for speaking against it, were advanced again.

Lady Cheng (s. 1614), being afraid the emperor might now punish her intrigue, made presents of pearls, jade, and eight pretty girls. When a harem-lady Li gained favor, she begged that lady Li should be made empress, and lady Li begged that lady Cheng be made empress-dowager. The emperor consented, but was vigorously opposed by the president of the Board of Rites; so the matter dropped. A rumour spread in the capital, that lady Cheng had caused the waiting lady to administer some purging medicine to the emperor. He became very weak and called minister Fang (s. 1619) and the cabinet council, in order to make his last will. He took two pills from the chief of the court of ceremony and died. The chief eunuch Wei Tsin-chung 魏進忠 (he had changed his name Chung-hsien 忠賢, G. 2270) and the young emperor's wet-nurse 客 Ko, who are said to have had illegal intercourse, came now to the front.

1621 熹宗 愍帝 emperor **Hi Tsung**, eldest son of Kwang, reigned seven years and died in his twenty-second year (G. 479).

The Manchus attacked and took Mukden; its commander and the next in rank being killed in the fight. General Yüan Ying-tai 袁應泰 intended to hold Liaoyang, where he concentrated two armies and made new entrenchments, but the Manchu digged a channel and drew the water off, then stormed the city; Yüan committed suicide. The four other large cities of Liaotung were also soon taken. Of the population many fled to Shantung or to islets. The chief eunuch Wei (s. 1620) in connection with the nurse Ko, caused another eunuch, the master of ceremonies, to be executed. Wei himself was illiterate, but liked to get acquainted with all the documents sent in; the emperor was fond of work with axe and saw and carving knife to cut lacker-ware, and did not like to hear of State-business when Wei spoke about it; so Wei took hold of the power. A native chief caused a rebellion in Chungking (Szechuan).

1622 The Chinese general built several tens of forts on the West-side of the Liao river and drilled 110,000 soldiers, got several million pieces of armory and weapons and opened military colonies to the extent of 5,000 K'ing (one=100 mou). The ground-tax was increased. Rebellion in Kueichou and Shantung.

1623 The red-haired *Dutch* barbarians had already settled in Formosa towards the end of Shen Tsung's reign; now they took the Pescadores and landed at Amoy, but had to retreat before the mandarin troops. They then fortified the Pescadores; from there they were driven the next year, when twelve of their officers were captured; they were not molested in Formosa.

Earthquake at the capital. The viceroy of Szechuan succeeded to overcome the rebellion (s. 1621). Nurse Ko (s. 1620) and the chief eunuch, being afraid their wickedness would be made known, used the emperor's name to order a first rank lady to take her own life, and another was imprisoned and starved to death. The empress intimated frequently the trespasses of the two to the emperor; when she was with child, nurse Ko caused her to miscarry and the emperor was left without an heir. They also killed his favorite, whilst the emperor was sacrificing to Heaven, and they slandered another lady, so that she fell in disgrace. When one of the first-rank ladies interceded, she was sent to prison, but having hid away food, she kept alive for a fortnight without receiving any provisions and was then degraded to a common palace-woman. Earthquake on the same day at the two capitals, in Fungyang, Su, Sung, Wei, Yang, Si, and Chü. From all the magazines, supplies had to be sent to the capital.

1624 The Ho broke through in Sü-chou 徐 (Kiangsu). The Dutch took possession of Formosa, and the Japanese retired.

1625 All the higher schools in the empire were closed. The names of the Tung-lin 東林 (east-forest) party were publicly exhibited.

1626 Earthquake at the capital, in Shantung, and Honan. The governor of Chekiang begged that a temple be built for the chief-eunuch Wei and that it should have a memorial-stone with vermilion inscription to show forth his merits to the world. One viceroy built seven such temples in his domain, spending several 100,000 taels and giving imperial honors in his inscription. At K'ai-feng over 2,000 houses of the people were torn down to erect a palace with nine pillars for the eunuch as for an emperor. Another governor built a temple with glass tiles, another had a golden image made with imperial crown and superlative eulogy, an officer received the image with five prostrations and called it 9,000 years (the emperor has 10,000). One temple was built outside the imperial palace-gate; those who spoke against it were degraded, those who did not write a tablet for a temple or entered such a temple without worshipping,

were imprisoned and sentenced to death. Flood at the capital, drought and locusts in Kiang-pe and Shantung. The eunuch Wei was raised to the highest nobility 上公, and his adopted son received the title of duke of the Ning 寧 State. Kao Ti 高第 thought best to withdraw behind the Shanhai barrier, but the other general, Yüan Chung-huan 袁崇煥, determined to hold Ning-yüan 甯遠 or perish with it. Repeated assaults of the Manchus were repelled and Nurhachu died from chagrin. His son (G. 1923) offered peace to Chung-huan, which was refused. General Kao Ti, who had not gone to the relief of Chung-huan, was dismissed. The Manchus conquered Korea in the year 1627, but failed again against Ning-yüan.

1627 The eunuch Wei was made an equal 配 to Confucius: Confucius had written the Spring-Autumn, Wei had also written a work; Confucius had executed Shao Cheng-mao 少正卯, Wei had also executed a clique; the emperor agreed. Wei's adopted son and grandson were also ennobled as marquis 侯 and earl 伯, and both received other titles of highest dignity. Death of the emperor. Earthquake at Nanking. The chief eunuch Wei was banished; he committed suicide on the road; his corpse was beheaded; the other chief eunuch, his confederate, and nurse Ko were executed, also their relations.

1628 莊烈愍帝 emperor Chuang Lie, brother of Hi Tsung, reigned seventeen years and committed suicide (G. 478).

The sea flowed over in Chekiang. Cheng Chih-lung 鄭芝龍 (G. 267), father of Koxinga, a famous pirate who had often beaten the mandarin forces, was persuaded to accept amnesty. The soldiers at Ning-yüan revolted for arrear of pay; Chung-huan hurried there and succeeded to quiet them. Earthquake at the capital. Great famine in Shensi, brigands rose in large bodies.

1629 About 200 more of the late chief-eunuch Wei's faction were condemned and their names exhibited. An eclipse of the sun in the fifth month came without being indicated by the astronomers; the emperor wished to punish them, but the minister of rites, Hsü, a convert (G. 779), said that they had followed the method of Kuo Shou king 郭守敬 of Tai Tsu's reign (Ming). He recommended to employ *foreigners* to correct the calculations.

Nicolaus Longobardi 龍華民 and others were then employed as astronomers. The viceroy of Szechuan overcame the rebellion of the natives, decapitating their chiefs and leading several 1,000

captive. The Manchus conquered Tsun-hua 遵化 and arrived at Peking. The emperor summoned help. The Manchus killed the generals and 6,000 men before the city. Relief arrived; first 5,000 men, whose commander also fell, though supported by the cannon from the city-wall. When more and more troops appeared, the Manchus withdrew.

Yüan Chung-huan (s. 1626), the hero of Ning-yüan, fell a victim to a disgraceful plot of the Manchus; he was accused of treachery, imprisoned, and executed by imperial order.

1630 Chang Hien-chung 張獻忠 (G. 58), leader of the rebels in Shensi, was defeated by imperial troops. Increase of the ground-tax, three *li* a mou, which amounted to over 1,650,000 taels.

1631 Famine in Shensi. Drought. One rebel-leader was defeated in Shansi, then killed by his own men. The rebels in Shensi united thirty-six batallions, over 200,000 men. Another rebellion began in Shantung.

1632 Flood in the capital in consequence of much rain.

1633 The rebels of Shansi were defeated several times; some bands disturbed the district in the South of the capital and Ho-peh. The imperials re-took Tengchou 登州, which restored order in Shantung. The Manchus conquered Lui-shun 旅順 (Port Arthur). Rebels crossed the Ho, took several cities and entered Hukuang. Li Tsz-ch'eng 李自成 formed a separate army (G. 1226).

1634 Chang Hien-chung (s. 1630) overran the districts south of the river Han; all trembled. Famine in Shansi and Shensi. The general Ch'en 陳 defeated the rebels in several engagements; he closed them up in the hills, when they bribed his attendants and asked to surrender, which was granted and they were allowed to march out, over 36,000 men. After they felt themselves in safety, they killed the imperial guards that accompanied them and butchered the inhabitants of seven districts, which they passed; several ten thousands rebels joined them from other places. The Manchus marched on to Süan-fu 宣. The rebels came from Shensi in divisions into Honan, Kiangpeh, and Hukuang.

1635 The rebels conquered Fungyang (in Anhui), burned the imperial mausoleums and killed several myriads of the soldiers and people. The rebels found stronger resistance in Honan and retired to Shensi, but two Chinese generals were killed in battle by them; they suffered a defeat at Wei-nan 渭南; soon after they attacked Loyang, but were defeated again.

- 1636 Famine in Shansi; Cannibalism. The soldiers at Ning-hia revolted on account of hunger and killed their commander. The second in command had six of the ring-leaders beheaded and restored order. All were told to assist defraying the army expenses; soon the horses of the imperial relatives, of all military and civil officers were required; silver, iron, copper and lead mines were opened. The **Manchu** leader assumed the title emperor and **Ta Ts'ing** 大清 as name of his dynasty.
- 1637 The Manchus conquered Korea; the king **Li-tsung** 李倧 was compelled to surrender and to break off all connection with the Ming. Great drought in the two capital provinces and in Shansi. Locusts in Shantung and Honan. The rebel **Li** invaded Szechuan, but did not succeed in taking its capital.
- 1638 The rebel **Chang** feigned submission. Great drought in the two capital provinces, in Shantung and Honan; also locusts. The Manchus entered the borders of the capital province and took forty-eight cities. Peking received a warning. The rebel **Li** suffered a severe defeat; he lost wife and female servants and had to flee with a few horses. An imperial general was killed, because his soldiers had dispersed.
- 1639 The rebel **Chang** revolted again and defeated the general sent against him, killing 10,000 men. Drought and locusts in the two capital provinces, in Shantung, Honan, and Shansi.
- 1640 The rebel **Chang** suffered a great defeat; sixteen leaders were decapitated; **Chang's** wife and concubines were captured; but, united with another rebel-leader, he defeated the imperial troops. Earthquake at Nanking. Famine in the two capital provinces, in Shantung, Honan, Shansi and Shensi; cannibalism.
- 1641 The rebel **Chang** after defeating the imperialists in Szechuan (G. 2407) turned towards the East in a hurry. **Li** conquered Honan, killed an imperial prince, and taking a spoon-full of his blood he swallowed it with game (deer), making a pun on the name; he burned his palace and distributed the treasure among the famished people. **Chang** conquered Siangyang and killed the imperial prince living there. The Manchus besieged **Kin-chou** 錦. A Chinese general came to its relief with 130,000 men under eight sub-generals, among them **Wu San-kuei** 吳三桂; but he was defeated with great loss, the Manchu emperor himself leading his troops. The Grand Canal dried up at **Lin-ts'ing** 臨清; plague prevailed in the capital. **Chang** suffered a severe defeat; several

myriads of his troops surrendered, he fled to Li, who wished to kill him, but was dissuaded in order to divert the imperialists; so Chang was escorted by 500 horsemen to the region south of the Han. Li conquered Nanyang 南陽 in Honan and killed the imperial prince.

- 1642 The Manchus took Kin-chou (a. 1641). Chang took some cities in Anhui, which frightened Nanking. Li cut the embankment of the Ho and flooded K'aifeng city (in Honan), so that about a million people were drowned. The Manchus entered K'i-chou 薊 and Shantung (cp. G. 427).
- 1643 Li made Siangyang (in Hupeh) his head-quarters, installed officials and took as title of government Sin-shun 新順. When Li had taken a city he did not allow his soldiers to live in houses, nor have intercourse with women except their own wives; they camped in tents. Their cuirasses were of many layers (100), so that arrows and shot could not penetrate. Every soldier had three or four horses; these were shod in winter with plaited grass (matting), the opened stomach of killed men was their trough, so that they showed their teeth when seeing men; they walked easily over mountains, were not afraid of rivers except of the Ho; the men crossed on horse-back, grasping the mane or the tail. In battle Li had 30,000 horses in three lines like walls. If the first turned back, those behind killed them. If the fight was long continued, they feigned defeat and ensnared the pursuer on to the 30,000 infantry, who handled their long spears like birds do their wings. When the cavalry turned again, victory was certain. Attacking a city, those that surrendered, saved their lives; if holding out one day, one or two out of ten were massacred; after two days, seven-tenths, and after three days, everyone was butchered; the corpses were used as torches; when a city was stormed by the infantry, the cavalry rode around, so that no person could escape. Of booty, horses and mules received the first price, weapons the second, and precious things the third. Li was no lover of wine and women, he shared the common food with his followers.

Great plague at the capital. Chang conquered Wuchang and drowned the imperial prince, who resided there, in the lake and butchered so many of his family and of the inhabitants that the corpses covered the Yangtse; the literary chancellor was also drowned, with over twenty members of his family. Chang assumed the title Western King. He advanced into Hunan and con-

quered Yochou. Asking the lot (oracle) about crossing the lake Tungting, he received an unfavorable reply; when he attempted it, nevertheless, a strong wind began to blow. He then had 1,000 boats bound together and filled with females, to which he set fire; this made the night as light as day; he advanced to Ch'ang-sha, and all the cities of Hunan were taken by him.

Li had severe fighting in Shensi (G. 1806); in one battle over 40,000 imperialists, the defenders of several cities, were butchered; in Yülin 榆林 even women and children threw stones from the walls on the assailants for seven days; not one surrendered, but all perished with the city; then the other cities of that region were taken.

1644 Li adopted the title King 王, changed the designation of the State into Ta Shun 大順 and also that of the year, and established officers from the literary chancellor downward.

Chang pillaged Szechuan.

Li conquered T'ai Yüan 太原 city and entered the capital province from the south. Ningwu 寧武 (Shansi) was vigorously defended with big cannons, killing at one battle 10,000 rebels; when they entered the city, several thousands more were killed and the rest had to fall back. Li renewed the storm, when the commander killed several tens of rebels with his own hand before he fell, his wife leading the women upstairs and shooting arrows on the rebels; they were burnt to death. Nobody surrendered to the rebels. Li took the city Kü-yung 居庸, when a eunuch hurried to the emperor and advised him to take care of himself, but the emperor scolded him away. When Li took the capital, the emperor ascended the 10,000 years' hill, wrote a confession of his sins and hung himself in the pavilion; the chief eunuch Wang Ch'eng-en 王承恩 followed his lord. Li commanded all officials to do homage to him within three days. Of court dignitaries several tens were found dead and of harem-ladies over 200; the latter had drowned themselves. The corpses of the emperor and the empress were placed in willow coffins; the crown prince and two imperial princes (uncles) were confined in the palace. The officers, led by a duke of the imperial clan, came on the third day to congratulate Li, but he had them handed over to a general and tortured in the camp, to get all their treasures; then they were killed.

Wu San-kwei marched to the relief of Peking, but heard of its fall at the Shan-hai barrier. His father, who was in Li's hands,

wrote him a letter, urging to submit to Li, to which Wu consented. He advanced to Luan-chou 灤, where he learned that his beloved concubine had been taken and was now in possession of an officer of Li; he was enraged and returned to the barrier, from where he sent a letter of submission to the *Manchu*, *inviting them* to fight Li. They gladly availed themselves of the good opportunity. Li suffered a severe defeat at the barrier and was pursued for forty li. He returned to Peking, had Wu's relations, thirty-six persons, executed; his father had already been decapitated before the battle, after Wu refused to surrender. Li had all treasures packed up and sent to Si-ngan, gave imperial honors to seven generations of his ancestors, made his wife empress and enjoyed the full imperial pomp; in the evening he burned the palace and the nine gate-towers and fled to the West in the early morning, carrying the crown prince and two imperial uncles with him. When the Manchus entered the capital, they mourned for the emperor and empress and ordered the people to put on mourning for three days. They then buried them in Chang-p'ing 昌平.

The Manchu or Ta Ts'ing 大清 Dynasty, 1644.

1644 順治 emperor Shun Chih; reigned till 1661. 福王 king Fuh, grandson of Shen Tsung, was established at Nanking as Ming-emperor and killed by the Manchus after one year. Li, being pursued from one city to another and defeated in several battles, fled into Shansi.

The rebel *Chang* had success in Szechuan. Chungking was valiantly defended, but he undermined the city-wall and blew it up, captured the commander and others, whom he executed. As it thundered and the sky darkened with rain at that time, he had all his big guns turned and discharged towards heaven, saying it was no business for Heaven when he killed men. The sky cleared, but it thundered three times. The rebels assembled soldiers and people, over 37,000 men, and cut their arms off above the elbow. King Fuh at Nanking felt unhappy that his furniture and utensils were not equal to the imperial standard; he wanted several 100,000 taels for the purpose, to which some of his ministers objected. He sent an officer with 100,000 taels silver and 3,000 soldiers to the Manchu and Chinese army, which pursued Li. Dorgun 多爾袞.

the Manchu regent, uncle of emperor Shun-chih 順治, sent a letter to the minister Shih K'o-fa 史可法 (G. 1716), reproaching him for placing another king on the throne; he should rather have assisted in subduing the rebels. To this K'o-fa replied, that he had appointed a successor to the late emperor for this very purpose and hoped that the Manchus would continue as in the past to be tributaries to China and not her rulers.

King Fuh issued an order to collect beautiful girls for his harem; some eunuchs went in search even into side-streets, which Fuh had to prohibit, but others were sent to Suchou and Hangchou to fetch beauties.

The rebel Chang established himself as emperor in Szechuan, where he killed people for his pleasure. He invited scholars to an examination and had them all killed; he buried many people alive in a garden, butchered 980,000 in Chengtu and sent four generals abroad to kill whom they could find in the district cities. He sent several times ten hounds among the people and had everyone beheaded who was nosed by a hound. He invented flaying alive; if the victim died before the skin was removed, the executioner lost his life. A general's degree of merit depended on the number of the slain; all in all over six million people, male and female, were killed. Hundreds of thousands of gold and jewels he had buried in the bed of the Kin river 錦江, so that it should not be found by the coming generation.

The Manchus crossed the Ho and were welcomed in Honan. Fuh's minister, Ma Sz-ying, excelled his master in evil-doing.

1645 The Manchus defeated Li's general, who commanded 600,000 men and took Tung-kwan. Li left Si-ngan and went to Siang-yang and Wuchang. Chang suffered a severe defeat at Chungking. Yangchou was stormed by the Manchus; K'o-fa, who attempted suicide, was captured and killed, as he refused to submit. He was a commander of superior qualities; he went out without state-umbrella, used only one dish for his meal, did not fan himself in summer nor wear fur in winter, did not undo his dress when going to sleep. Being without a son when over forty years old, his wife wished him to take a concubine; he answered with a sigh, "The imperial business being in such a state, how can I care for children?" The Manchus crossed the Yangtse and took possession of Nanking; the king Fuh had fled to Wuhu, but was captured and brought back; shortly after he was executed. 唐王 King of Tang (G. 482),

a descendant of Hung Wu in the ninth generation, was established in the place of Fuh. Another prince, king of Lu 潞王, had been enthroned at Hangchou, but he surrendered to the Manchus after three days. When the governor Liu Tsung-chou 劉宗周 heard that Hangchou was lost, he wept bitterly, took no food and threw himself in the water, but was taken out; he then refused all food and died after twenty-three days. Before his death he said, that sincerity 誠 was the essence of learning and its result reverence 敬; to be reverent was to be sincere and sincerity identified with Heaven. T'ang ascended the throne in Fuchou. The Manchus soon got possession of Kiangsi and Kiangsu; only a few cities offered resistance and had to be conquered. The king of Tsing-kiang 靖江, another imperial prince, attempted sovereignty in Kuangsi, but was seized and condemned by T'ang to degradation and execution. Li, who had at Wuchang still over 500,000 men, lost them quickly through surrender, death and desertion; he was driven to Shensi, where he sought refuge with only twenty horsemen in the Kiu-kung 九宮 mountains. There he came in conflict with the inhabitants and lost his life, either by committing suicide 經 or being slain by the people. When stripping his corpse, they found the dragon-mark on his garments and a golden seal. When the Manchus arrived to verify his body, he was already so decayed, that they could not recognise him. Three of Li's generals, from whom he had been cut off, went over to the imperial general Ho T'ang-chiao 何騰蛟 and others with over 100,000 men. The rest of Li's followers appointed his son Kin 錦 their chief and his widow and brother dignitaries. They collected in Li-chou 澧州 300,000 men. An imperial high officer persuaded them to submit to T'ang, who granted titles and royal presents to the three chiefs. T'ang was persuaded to move his residence nearer to Hangchou.

- 1646 His general Huang Tao-chou 黃道周 was defeated by the Manchus and captured; when led to execution at Nanking, he sat down before the imperial palace-gate; he wished to die near where his grand emperors rested (were buried); this was granted. T'ang was moved to tears when he heard it and gave him a posthumous title. King Lu was executed. Tribute was sent from Liu-chiu 琉球. Drought; the Tsien-t'ang river (near Hangchou) dried up. The Manchus conquered Shao-hing. When the city was lost, the commander of Kin-hua 金華, after three months' defence, put his family into a well, burned all remaining powder and killed himself.

The emperor T'ang was captured together with the empress at T'ing-chou 汀; the empress drowned herself and T'ang was executed at Fuchou. The whole of the Fukien province came then under the power of the Manchus.

桂王 king Kuei (G. 480), a great-grandson of Wan-li, was proclaimed emperor of the Ming at Chao-k'ing in Canton province. Another king, T'ang 唐, was proclaimed in Canton city, but the Manchus soon surprised him there; his minister committed suicide; T'ang tried to escape, but was overtaken by horsemen, when he suffocated himself. The emperor Kuei got frightened and fled into Kuangsi. In Szechuan the Manchus were victorious against the rebel-leader Chang. He slaughtered again many people, but once when in a fog, he was hit upon by some Manchu soldiers, who shot him with an arrow, so that he fell from his horse and tried to hide himself in the grass, but was seized and decapitated. After his death 200,000 to 300,000 of his soldiers either surrendered or were killed. The rest, under the general Sun K'o-wang 孫可望, went southward to Chungking and beyond to Yünnan.

1647 The Manchus conquered Chao-k'ing; the emperor's general K'uei surrendered to the Manchu general Li, a Chinese; but he had a grudge against the imperialists, proscribed therefore several hundred of K'uei's family; when K'uei begged that one child might be saved, he himself was executed together with them all. The emperor Kuei went even beyond Kueilin 桂林. This city was heroically defended by Chü Shih-sz 瞿式耜 (G. 499), so that the Manchus had to raise the siege after heavy losses during three months. Sun K'o-wang sent a general, Li Ting-kuo 李定國, against Lin-ngan 臨安 in Yünnan. He took the city by undermining and explosions; all inhabitants, high and low, were then led outside and killed, over 78,000 men, not including those whose heads were cut off (in fighting); boys and girls, Li carried away; those whom he met on the road, were butchered. The emperor, after fleeing from place to place, returned to Kueilin.

1648 Kin Sheng-huan 金聲桓, a general of Kiangsi, who had joined the Manchus, attached himself to the emperor Kuei, took Nanchang 南昌 and had soon the whole province in his power.

Li Ting-kuo took a fortified place of Yünnan on the borders of Annam; its commander, his wife and several hundred men were carried bound to his chief Sun 孫 and flayed in the market-place; all Yünnan came in the grasp of Sun K'o-wang. Ch'ü Shih-sz sub-

dued a dangerous mutiny of his soldiers by his generosity, giving his wife's ornaments in pay; he was then able to repulse an attack of the Manchus. Li Ch'eng-tung 李成棟, of Canton, turned from the Manchus, went over into Kiangsi to relieve Nanch'ang; defeated, he returned to Nan-k'ang 南康. The imperialists were successful in Hunan. At the court of emperor Kuei the officials were divided into two parties, the Wu 吳 and the Ch'u 楚; they were like water and fire; though the emperor had them come to a solemn agreement in the Great temple, it was of no avail. Through their machinations, Hunan was devastated.

- 1649 The Manchus re-took Nan-ch'ang and had success in Fukien. Li Ch'eng-tung was put on horseback in a drunken state; when crossing the river the horse bolted and he was drowned. Sun K'o-wang joined the Imperialists.
- 1650 The emperor fled to Wuchou. Sun became angry for not being promoted by the emperor. He surprised the province of Kuei-chou, where over 200,000 men surrendered to him and all submitted to him as far as Chungking and Kiating (in Szechuan). Canton was besieged by the Manchus and Kueilin taken, because all soldiers had left their general Chü Shih-sz and his family also; only one high official joined him; they were confined in a private house for some forty days, because they refused to submit; they were kept in different rooms, but blended their voices in singing hymns and ballads; they both were then executed.
- 1651 Sun K'o-wang received a patent of nobility from emperor Kuei. The Manchus subdued several cities of Canton province and advanced in Kuangsi; they took Nanning; the emperor fleeing in a hurry.
- 1652 Sun K'o-wang sent soldiers to escort the emperor to Ngan-lung, where he received a house with poor accommodations and servants of a rough character. Sun had a general and his son flayed for rebellion and of a censor, who had spoken against him, the skin taken off and, stuffed with grass, hung up in the principal street. Sun aiming at imperial dignity changed the dynastic designation into After Ming 後明. The emperor sent a messenger to Li Ting-kuo (s. 1467), who heard the news with tears and promised to receive the emperor.
- 1653 Li suffered a defeat by the Manchus at Hengchou 衡 in Hunan. Sun intended to kill Li, but Li entered Kuangsi, and Sun in pursuing him was defeated by the Manchus and had to turn into

Kueichou province, where he killed all the relations of the Ming family.

Koxinga 鄭成功 (cp. G. 264) kept the sea of Chekiang, Fukien and the Two Kuang, and all the districts along the shore were injured by him. The Manchu offered him the dignity of a duke of the sea, but he would not submit to shave his head. See also (G. 66) Chang Huang-yen.

1654 The emperor Kuei denied having sent a message to Li Ting-kuo. Sun had therefore some ten of those attending to the emperor tortured and executed; the chief eunuch and his friends suffered the same fate.

1655 Li Ting-kuo was defeated at Sin-hui 新會 and, pursued by the Manchus, he returned to Nanning 南寧 in Kuangsi; about one half of Canton province and of Kuangsi was lost. Sun also suffered a defeat and retired into Kueichou (cp. G. 464).

1656 Sun sent a general to surprise Li, but using the stratagem of a guest he attacked him from the back and caught the whole army, only the commander escaping. Li then hastened to Ngan-lung to see the emperor. Sun foresaw this and sent an officer to bring the emperor to Kueiyang, where Sun had his quarters at the time. The officer, however, moved by the tears of the empress and of the officials, delayed till Li arrived, who brought the emperor to Yünnan into Sun's residence, whose wife and children were still there. The emperor had a temple erected in memory of those that were executed for him in the year 1654.

[First Dutch Embassy arrived at Tientsin.]

1657 The emperor sent Sun's wife and children to Sun, the messenger persuaded Sun to attack the emperor. This he did, but his own generals turned against him; Sun fled and suffered a great defeat; he then took his family to Changsha (in Hunan).

[The population numbered 18,500,000 households.]

1658 The Manchus went against Kueichou province from three sides and conquered it. Li was defeated and his elephants killed; he and the emperor fled to Yünnan. Passing Yüan-kiang 沅江 the emperor was feasted; all food was served on golden and silver plates and cups, which were at the end presented to him.

1659 The Manchus advanced into Yünnan; many of the civil and military authorities submitted to them. Li encamped at the frontier-pass, the emperor going into Burmese territory. Of the 4,000 soldiers still following him, many got astray during the night. They were

received by four ships in which some 640 went on, 900 went by land; they were captured and made slaves by the Burmese, only some eighty reached Assam 暹羅. The emperor was confined in a straw-hut at Che-king 赭經, guarded by soldiers.

- 1660 Li made an attempt to rescue the emperor; he defeated the Burmese several times, but they treacherously murdered the followers of the emperor in the year 1661, so that only he and twenty-five of his harem-ladies remained. When Wu San-kuei, the Chinese renegade, pressed the Burmese, they handed the emperor over to him, who carried the captives to Yünnanfu.

[Tea was sent to England.]

- 1662 In Yünnanfu the emperor Kuei strangled himself with a silk-cord and the crown prince followed the example. Li Ting-kuo wept when he received the news; he confessed before God all that he had done, mourned for the emperor and died after six months in his camp. His son and followers surrendered to Wu San-kuei.

Koxinga had already sailed to Formosa, landing 25,000 men. After nine months of resistance, the Dutch, having lost 1,600 killed, had to surrender. Death of Koxinga; he was only thirty-eight years old. About his sons s. G. 268, his grand-nephews s. G. 275. Shih Lang (G. 1718), admiral of Fukien, conquered the Pescadores and Formosa in the year 1683.

- 1662 After the death of Shun-chih in the year 1661 (of the Manchudynasty), who had reigned eighteen years, K'ang Hi 康熙 (G. 941), his third son, ascended the throne, eight years old. Four ministers were trusted with the regency. They issued a decree prohibiting the employment of *eunuchs* in government service, which decree was engraved on iron tablets weighing over 1,000 pounds. Adam Schaal was condemned to a cruel death; saved by some-one of the regents, he died from the effects of his imprisonment, seventy-eight years old.

- 1667 K'ang Hi took the government in his own hands and had the Baturu Kong, the bitter enemy of the Christians, executed for treason and his family exterminated.

- 1669 Verbiest was appointed to the Astronomical Board. Taxes, still due from the time of Shun Chih, were remitted and those in future to be collected twice a year. Investigation into the large number of criminal cases and the death of prisoners in 1670.

The emperor wished to curtail the power of the three viceroys, Wu San-kuei 吳三桂 (G. 2342) in Kueichou and Yünnan, of

Shang Ko-hsi 尚可喜 in Kwangtung and Kwangsi, and of Keng Ching-chung 耿精忠 in Fukien and Chekiang.

- 1674 Rebellion of Wu San-kuei. The governor of Kweichow joined, also Szechuan and Fukien, then Hunan and Kweilin, later on also Shensi (s. G. 937). A pirate s. G. 2429.
- 1676 Cheng-chin 鄭錦, the son and successor of Koxinga (G. 268), attacked Fukien, then Chusan and Canton without success; defeated at Swatow, he took Amoy, because Keng Ching-chung had joined the Manchus again.
- 1678 Wu San-kuei died in October. His grandson Wu Shih-fan 世璠 became the leader of the rebels, but suffered one defeat after the other, till his last resort, Yünnanfu, was captured in 1681. He committed suicide; his head was sent to Peking, San-kuei's corpse was disinterred and the remains dispersed in the provinces of this disturbance.
- [1680 The East India Company begins to trade with China.]
- 1683 Formosa was reconquered by the imperialists under Shih-lang 施琅 (G. 1718). The Pescadores were first taken after a severe naval battle, in which over 100 ships of the rebels were burnt and 12,000 men slain. Cheng-chin's son surrendered and was sent to Peking, where he was created a duke. Formosa was included in the Chinese empire as one prefecture and three hsien.
- 1689 Treaty with *Russia* at Nerchinsk (Nih-chu), that the North of the Amur should belong to Russia, the South to China; the fort Albazin to be destroyed and another built at Nerchinsk.
- 1692 Edict of *toleration* for the Catholic church. Christianity became so popular, that in the provinces of Kiangsi, Kiangsu and Anhui alone, there were 100 churches and 100,000 converts.
- 1696 Death of Galdan, the chief of the Eleuths. He began in 1679 to conquer the country of the Khalkas. K'ang-hi went to their assistance. Galdan was attacked and defeated by his own nephew, whose bride he had taken for himself. But Galdan showed himself an able leader in desert-warfare. Peace was concluded in 1690, but soon broken again. As the Tibetans would not help him, Galdan became a Mohammedan. K'ang-hi enlisted the Mongols on his side and sent four armies into the field, about 150,000 fighting men in each, all in all about a million. K'ang-hi took command of the second army. Special pay was offered to the soldiers and provision for the widows and orphans of the slain. A great victory was gained. The corpse and the children of Galdan had to be

- delivered up; his bones were scattered over China, but his son received an appointment and his daughter was married into a good family. Galdan's nephew Tseh Wang received the western half of the dominion, the eastern was kept under K'ang-hi's personal rule.
- [1701 The population numbered twenty-one million households.]
- [1707 Publication of the "Complete collection of the Poetry of the T'ang Dynasty" in 900 books, containing 48,900 poems (bound in 30 vols).]
- 1709 Tseh Wang invaded and plundered Tibet. Hami was taken and lost again during the following years.
- 1716 Edict forbidding missionaries to remain in China with a few exceptions.
- 1717 Tseh Wang defeated the Chinese troops with great slaughter, their general was killed. A Chinese army of 10,000 men had to be sent to Tibet to re-establish the Dalai Lama.
- 1719 An expedition of 600 ships and 12,000 troops was sent to Formosa to crush a formidable rebellion.
- 1720 Tseh Wang attacked the Turfans. The Chinese came to their assistance and he suffered a severe defeat.
- 1722 Death of K'ang-hi.
- 1723 Yung Cheng 雍 正, 1723-1736 (G. 2577), fourth son of K'ang-hi, appointed one day before his death. He was forty-four years old. Some of his brothers planned rebellion and were imprisoned.
- Edict banishing all Roman priests to Macao. More than 300 churches destroyed.*
- Rebellion in Tsing-hai (Gobi). A chief Lo-pu persuaded other chiefs and those of the Buddhist faith to join him; with over 200,000 men he defeated the Chinese at Sining. The emperor sent seven armies against him, which gained a complete victory. Lo-pu managed to escape in female clothes to Tseh Wang. An order was issued, that no more than 300 bonzes should live in one monastery and *no arms* should be allowed to them.
- 1726 The aborigines of Kweichou, Szechuan and Yunnan rose, and three years of hard fighting was required to pacify them. The system of home rule was abandoned; they came under the direct rule of the emperor.
- 1727 Magaillans, a Portuguese envoy, arrived with presents at Peking. No advantage gained.

* About the disputes of the Roman Catholics amongst themselves and with K'ang-hi, see Faber's book, *Problems of Practical Christianity*, p. 16-38. "Romanism has made the work difficult for Protestantism by creating among the Chinese prejudice and antipathy against Christianity" (p. 38).

1729 Two armies were sent against Tseh Ning, the successor of Tseh Wang, but were defeated. Afterwards general Ngho gained a victory and Tseh Ning fled to Ili. He returned with an army.

Inundation of the Yellow river, causing much suffering; in Peking alone 40,000 persons were fed for four months; to this came a terrible earthquake (in 1730); the shocks continuing for ten days; over 100,000 persons suffered death. The emperor spent fifteen million sterling on the occasion. (Boulger, *A short History of China*, p. 158).

[1733 Imperial Edict forbidding the propagation of Christianity.]

1734 Tseh Ning, being defeated again, proposed peace, which was accepted and the Altai mountains were made the boundary.

1735 Rebellion of the aborigines of Kweichou. Heavy taxes and abuses in collecting them had exasperated the people. The armies of six provinces were ordered to concentrate against the rebels, but without success, as there was jealousy among the two commanders.

Death of the emperor.

1736 K'ien Lung 乾隆 1736-1795 (G. 364); he was the fourth son of Yung Cheng, twenty-five years old. Amnesty to his banished relations. The practice of Christianity by a Chinese was prohibited; to join the church was punishable. Two artists, Castiglione and Attiret, were kept in the emperor's service.

The rising of the aborigines in Kweichou was suppressed with great severity; 18,000 being killed in battle, 25,000 taken prisoners, half of whom were executed. Another outbreak in Hunan and Kwangsi, four years later, was put down in the same bloody way.

[1741 The population numbered 143 million persons.]

1745 Tseh Ning died. Several chiefs fought about the succession; two were slain.

1746 An insurrection of the native chief Salopan in the western part of Szechuan, cost the lives of two unsuccessful generals; a third succeeded after severe fighting.

[1747 The Twenty-four Dynastic Histories of China were published in 219 volumes.]

1753 War again in Ili among two rivals. Amursana fled to K'ienlung and a Chinese army of 150,000 men re-instated him. But the dominion was now divided into four parts, of which Amursana received only one. Dissatisfied by this arrangement, he planned the annexation of the whole. Called to Peking, he deceived the envoy and had the garrison of Ili, 500 Chinese and their general, put to death.

Four generals, sent against him, were recalled, because Amursana had escaped capture. Two of the generals were killed by brigands on their way to Peking. Pressed by another Chinese army, Amursana fled into Russian territory and died there from small-pox.

Kashgar and Yarkand were carried by assault by the Chinese after some failures. The ruler and his brother fled into Bodakshan, where they were put to death with their followers.

1761 Return of the victorious army to Peking.

[1762 The population numbered about 200 million.]

1763 Return of a Tourgot tribe. The horde had fled from Galdan into Russian territory, where they lived over fifty years. Dissatisfied with Russian taxes, etc., 160,000 moved eastwards and 70,000 of them reached Ili after a journey of nearly one year. They received a district to establish themselves under a Khan.

1766 War with Burmah, begun by the Burmese against some frontier tribes refusing to pay the customary tribute. They invaded Yunnan. The emperor ordered the governor-general to commit suicide on account of this. A Chinese army was exterminated, the commander of the other division was sliced for not rescuing it.

1770 Peace with Burmah, which promised tribute to China. War with the aborigines in Szechuan. Finally the chief Solomuh surrendered and was executed. This war had cost seventy million ounces of silver.

1777 Insurrection in Shantung under Wang-lun.

1781 Rise of the Tungan Mohammedans in Shensi; only suppressed after great loss of life and property.

1786 Rebellion in Formosa. The leader Liu collected gradually 150,000 men around him. Severe fighting had to be done, in which many rebels were slain; Liu having been captured, was sent to Peking.

1788 Revolution in Cochin-China. The king fled to China and received an army of 20,000 men under the viceroy of Kwangsi and succeeded in regaining his throne. His rebellious minister Yüan watched his opportunity, defeated the Chinese and cut off their retreat. When another Chinese army was sent, Yüan made so humble a submission, that K'ien Lung forgave him and invested him as king instead of the other.

1789 Re-opening of trade with Burmah.

1790 Marauding expedition of Ghoorkas into Tibet. They were defeated and pursued by a Chinese army, till they returned all their booty and promised a tribute once in every five years.

1795 Lord *Macartney* reached the Peiho and was twice received in audience by the emperor, in a tent at Jehol in the gardens of the palace.

Rising of the Miaotze on the borders of Kweichou and Hunan. The Chinese general died in his camp. K'ien Lung abdicated in favor of his son.

1796 **Kia K'ing 嘉慶** 1796-1820 (G. 318). Rebellion of the White Lily society, composed mainly of Buddhists. It broke out in Hupeh. Within four months the viceroy had decapitated between 20 to 30,000 people. It spread over six provinces. 100 million taels and countless lives were spent before peace was restored.

1799 The prime-minister Ho-shen 和珅 (G. 658) was condemned to death and his vast fortune confiscated.

1806 The pirate Ch'ai infested the whole coast of China for several years, till he was defeated in 1809 and drowned.

1807 Morrison arrived in China.

1812 Attempt at revolt by Chu Mao-li, who pretended to be a descendant of the Ming emperors (G. 2573).

1813 Rebellion of the Heavenly Reason Society. One of the leaders had already penetrated into the palace, but was captured and sliced to death; 20,000 of the rebels were executed and as many more were exiled. About the Heaven and Earth Society s. G. 2573.

1816 Lord *Amherst's* mission was summarily dismissed from Peking, August 28th.

Père Amyot was expelled by Kia K'ing.

1821 **Tao Kuang 道光** 1821-1850 (G. 1889).

1825 Rising of Jehangir, grandson of Pulatan, in Kashgaria. Ten million taels were expended and many battles fought, till Jehangir was captured and executed at Peking. Rebellion in Formosa and Hainan.

1832 Rising of the Miaotse, caused by the misdeeds of the adherents to the "Heaven and Earth" Society, in the Hunan and Canton provinces. Their leader the Golden Dragon. After defeating the imperialists several times, they were *pacified by clemency* in ten days.

1833 Abolition of the East India Company's charter, 28th August.

1834 Arrival of Lord *Napier*; he was refused admission in Canton, and all trade being stopped, he retired to Macao, after having bombarded the Bogue forts. He died on the 11th October.

Captain *Elliot* first refused, but then used again the word "pin" (petition) in his communications to the mandarins, December 31st, 1838.

- 1839 Commissioner Lin (G. 1259) destroyed 20,283 chests of opium. The English treasury paid the owners £120 a chest. The English left Canton; they went first to Macao and then on board their ships into the harbor of Hongkong. Two British ships defeated twenty-nine war-junks at Chuen-pi, November 3rd. Lin offered 5,000 dollars for Elliot's head.
- 1840 Seventeen men-of-war and twenty-seven troop-ships with 4,000 soldiers arrived at Hongkong. General Bremner commander. He took Chusan and went to Tientsin, where he delivered Lord *Palmerston's* letter to the emperor.
- 1841 January 6th the Bogue forts were seized. Treaty of Chuen-pi, January 20th; Hongkong ceded and six million dollars paid for the opium; official intercourse on terms of equality; but the treaty was not ratified by the emperor. The Chinese opened fire on one of the boats of the steamer *Nemesis*, and the Bogue forts were taken the third time; the British anchored before Canton. An expedition took Amoy, Chusan and Ningpo.
- 1842 Chapu, Wusung and *Shanghai* were taken. Chinkiang was taken in July and at Nanking the treaty was signed on the 29th of August. Canton, Amoy, Fuchou, Ningpo and Shanghai opened for trade and residence, cession of Hongkong, payment of six million dollars for the opium, three million for debts due to English merchants, twelve million expenses of war.
- 1844 American and French treaties signed.
- 1847 Military demonstration against Canton for not admitting foreigners. The guns of the Bogue forts were spiked.
- 1845-46 Insurrection of the sons of Jehangir in Turkestan, to avenge their father's death; it was soon put down.
- Pirates along the coast were suppressed by the English. The Triad Society caused trouble; insurrections near the Yellow river.
- 1850 Beginning of the Taiping rebellion (s. *Hung Hsiu-ch'üan* G. 890).
- 1851 Hien Fung 咸豐 1851-1861 (G. 747). He was the fourth son of Tao Kuang, only nineteen years old.
- 1853 Nanking taken by the rebels (March). A force marched northward to Tientsin, but returned in March, 1855, to Anhui.
- [1854 Foreign Inspectorate of Customs established in Shanghai.]
- 1857 War between England and China; twelve of the crew of the lorcha Arrow had been seized by the order of Yeh, the viceroy of Canton, and the British flag had been hauled down. The mutiny in India

delayed the arrival of troops. Canton taken 29th December and Yeh captured.

1858 The Taku forts taken. On the 26th June *treaty at Tientsin* in 56 articles. Right of ambassadors at Peking and legalization of opium.

1859 Defeat of the English and French at Taku. They had tried to force their way up the Peiho for the ratification of the treaty at Peking.

1860 In August 13,000 English, 7,000 French and 2,500 Cantonese coolies attacked the forts at Taku, which were taken on the 21st. Battle at Palikiau (bridge) 21st September, where Sangkolinsin was defeated. On the 6th October the emperor's summer palace was occupied, plundered and destroyed. On the 24th October the *treaty was signed*; eight million taels expenses of war had to be paid and Kowlung ceded.

Soochow and Ningpo were taken by the rebels.

1861 Hien Fung died at Jehol, August 17th.

[English and French embassies established at Peking (March).]

1862 Tung Chih 同治 1862-1875 (G. 2107), Hien Fung's only son, six years old.

The eight counsellors plotted the death of the emperor's three brothers, the eastern empress-dowager (G. 2114) and Tung Chih's mother (G. 2116),* but prince Kung (G. 1019), sixth son of Tao Kwang and brother of Hien-fung, apprehended them, had the leader executed and two princes condemned to suicide, the rest banished. He and the two empress-dowagers formed the regency. (The eastern empress-dowager died 1881).

[The rebels were defeated near Shanghai.]

1863 Eight gunboats under Captain Osborne arrived for China, but were sold to the Indian government, as disputes arose about the command. Mr. Lay was dismissed; Sir Robert Hart became inspector-general of Customs. [Gordon captured Soochow (November 63).]

1864 Nanking was taken by the imperialists and the T'ai ping rebellion finally suppressed. Nine provinces had been devastated; fully twenty million people had been killed by the rebels. The Nien-fei, mounted banditti, did much damage in the northern provinces.

1866 Yakub Beg (G. 2360) defeats the son of Jehangir in Western Turkestan and forms his own empire.

1867 Rising in Yunnan; Sultan Suleiman (Tu Wen-siu, G. 2069) made Tali his capital till 1873.

* The latter is the present Empress Dowager.

1868 Burlingham's mission to the Western powers. He died at Petersburg in February, 1870.

[1869 Suez Canal opened.]

1870 21st June.—Tientsin massacre; eighteen French and two Russians murdered. 400,000 taels paid, twenty men beheaded.

1872 Marriage of T'ung-chih to Aluteh.

1873 The emperor becomes of age and takes the government in his own hands. 29th June, reception of ambassadors. Suppression of the Mohammedan rebellion in Kansuh by Tso Tsung-t'ang 左宗堂 (G. 2027).

Abolition of the coolie trade; 500,000 had been carried away during twenty-five years.

Suppression of the Panthay rebellion in Yünnan by treacherous butchery.

1874 The Japanese invaded Formosa to punish the aborigines for murdering fifty-four Loochuan sailors. Sir T. Wade mediated peace and 500,000 taels were paid.

1875 Expedition of Col. Brown from Bhamo through China failed, because Mr. Margary was murdered at Manwyne 20th February. T'ung Chih died on the 13th January from small-pox. His wife Aluteh, who was with child, died soon after. Tsai-t'ien (born 1871), son of Ch'un I-huan (the seventh son of Tao Kwang), was posthumously adopted as son to his cousin T'ung Chih, whom he succeeded under the regency of the Empress Dowager (G. 2116).

1875 Kwang Hsü 光緒 (G. 1010).

1876 *Chefoo convention*, 13th September; 200,000 taels were paid for the murder of Margary; opium regulation, transit passes, four new ports and six landing places on the Yangtse.

Tso Tsung-t'ang (G. 2027) begins his operations against the Mohammedan rebels in Eastern Turkestan. He established his head-quarters at Barkul and Hami, and quelled the Dungani insurrection before the end of the year. [Woosung Railway given up.]

1877 Yakub Beg (G. 2360) was defeated at Turfan, retired after a second defeat to Korla, where he died. The whole of Eastern Turkestan was recovered 1878.

1878 Famine in Shansi and Shensi; at least eight million people died from hunger.

1881 Treaty with Russia. The whole of Ili (Kuldja) was returned to China, except a strip of territory on its extreme western boundary.

Nine million rubles paid to Russia as an indemnity. Death of the Eastern empress-dowager (G. 2114). [Convention between Germany and China. Telegraph from Shanghai to Tientsin.]

1882 The French invaded Tongking. The town Hanoi was captured and Sontay re-taken from the Black Flags.

[1883 (September). Riot in Canton.]

1884 Bacninh taken by general Millot. Treaty with China. The Black Flags ignoring it, defeated the French near Langson. The French destroyed the Chinese fleet at Foochow. They were repulsed at Tamsui.

1885 Peace between France and China, June 9th.

Agreement between China and Japan, that neither of them was to send troops to Korea without first informing the other.

[1886 England annexes Burma.]

1889 Marriage of Kwang Hstü with enormous expenses. He assumed the reins of government. [Riot at Chinkiang.]

1891 Reception of the foreign ambassadors in the Hall of Tributary Nations.

1890 Treaty signed at Calcutta for trade between India and Tibet. The frontier between Sikkim and Tibet was defined. At Yatung a commissioner of Customs appointed by China; May 1894 a new station to be opened inside the Tibetan frontier, to which India might send an officer. The Tibetans might bring their flocks over into Sikkim under regulations revised every five years. [Chungking opened 1891. Yangtze-riots.]

[1893 1st July.—Two missionaries murdered at Sungpu.]

1894 War with Japan. The Chinese had been asked for help by the king of Korea against a rebellion of the Tonghak. The Japanese seized this opportunity to revenge their ill-treatment by the Chinese at Seoul in 1884, and the murder of the Korean Kim Ok-kuin, their protégé, at Shanghai in 1894. See also the agreement 1885. The transport-steamer *Kowshing* was destroyed by the Japanese *Naniwa*, 25th July. Battle at Pingyang, 15th September; the Chinese were severely defeated, lost over 6,000 men, a large quantity of arms and provisions.

17th September.—Naval battle near the mouth of the Yalu river. The Chinese had eleven men-of-war and six torpedo-boats; the Japanese the same number of ships without torpedo-boats. [The Chinese lost five vessels.]

25th October.—The Japanese crossed the border of Manchuria.

21st November.—Port Arthur taken by the Japanese.

1895 Haicheng taken and shortly after (9th January) Kaiping.

12th February.—Admiral Ting surrendered with the remainder of the fleet at Wei-hai-wei; the forts were occupied by the Japanese. In March defeat of the Chinese generals Sung and Wu separately near Newchwang. 15th March.—Li Hung-chang despatched to Japan to make peace; he was wounded there.

March 24th.—The Pescadores captured by the Japanese. Treaty signed at Chefoo 8th May: (1) Independence of Korea; (2) Cessation of Formosa and the Pescadores (Liaotung returned to China on the protest of the Western Powers for thirty million taels); (3) 200 million taels indemnity; (4) Opening of five ports more to trade.

25th May.—Declaration of a republic in Formosa. Riots in Szechuan.

3rd June.—Landing of 4,000 Japanese and capture of Kelung. Liu Yung-fu, the general of the Black Flags, still held out in the South of Formosa till the end of October; then he fled to the mainland and his soldiers surrendered.*

1895 August 1st.—The Kucheng massacre.

September.—Viceroy Chang Chih-tung (then of Nanking, G. 35) receives permission from the emperor to connect Nanking and Shanghai by a railway.

December 6th.—Decree ordering the construction of a railway from Tientsin to Lukou bridge (near Peking).

December 18th.—Riot at Ichang, in consequence of the accidental shooting of a wei-yüan during public sports.

1896 January.—Liu K'un-yi (G. 1324) again Viceroy in Nanking, Chang Chih-tung in Wuchang.

March 11th.—King of Korea takes refuge in the Russian legation at Seoul.

March 17th.—The emperor insists on building the railroad from Tientsin and instructs his ministers to advance foreign sciences throughout the country.

March 24th.—The building of the Peking-Hankow railroad, tendered for by Canton-Peking syndicate, is approved by Prince Kung and Ching.

* Here Dr. Faber's manuscript ended. I have added the leading events of recent years.—P. Kn.

May 12th.—Riot in Kiangyin.

September 30th.—New rapid formed on upper Yangtze.

1897 April.—Famine in Szechuan.

May 31st.—Edict sanctioning Belgian loan for the Hankow-Peking railroad.

June.—Wuchow on the West River opened.

June 21st.—New Roman Catholic Cathedral in Tientsin opened.

November 1st.—Two German Catholic priests murdered near Tsi-ning-chou, Shantung.

November 14th.—A German squadron seizes the Tsingtau forts.

1898 March 27th.—Russia occupies Port Arthur and Taliénwan.

April 17th.—Prince Henry of Prussia arrives in Shanghai.

May.—Riots at Shasi and Wenchow.

May 29th.—Prince Kung died.

June 24th.—Great Britain occupies Weihaiwei. Yung Lu appointed Viceroy of Chihli.

July 12th.—Edict ordering protection of missionaries.

September 1st.—Shanghai-Wusung railway opened. *Reform edicts* about (1) freedom to memorialize the throne, (2) introduction of foreign subjects in the examinations, (3) foundation of a new university in Peking, (4) turning temples into schools, (5) establishing a translation bureau and a patent office, (6) sending young Manchus abroad for studies, (7) abolishing superfluous officials (governorships of Kuangtung, Hupeh, Yunnan, several Grain and Salt-Taotaihips and others).

September 4th.—Dismissal of the ministers of the Board of Rites, because they refused to hand the memorial of a secretary, Wang-chao, to the Throne.

September 7th.—Li Hung-chang dismissed from attendance at the Tsung-li Yamên.

September 11th.—Decree that all viceroys, governors, treasurers and judges shall ask for an audience every three years. Western methods to be applied to the production of silk and tea, in order to increase the export.

September 12th.—Edict about post-offices and newspapers.

September 13th.—Freedom to memorialize granted also to the common people.

September 16th.—Decree to publish annual financial statements of government income and expenditure. Reform in the procedure of law courts proposed.

September 19th.—Edict ordering the publication and study of the Treaties with foreign countries all over the empire. Edict ordering the establishment of a middle school in Peking besides the new university.

September 21st.—Edict considering the question of a National Parliament and the adoption of a new form of dress (cutting the queue), suppressed by the Conservative Party.

September 21st.—The Empress Dowager (mother of Tung-chih, aunt of Kuangsü) took the government again into her own hands. Kang Yu-wei escapes from Peking to Hongkong.

September 26th.—Edict repealing reforms.

September 28th.—Six reformers executed, namely: Tan-sze-tung (son of ex-governor of Hupeh), three Hanlins (Lin Hsio, Yang Jui, Liu Kuang-ti), one censor (Yang Shen-hsiu) and Kang Kuang-jen (younger brother of Kang Yu-wei). Chang Yin-hwan banished. Persecution of reformers all over the empire.

October 4th.—Lord Charles Beresford arrives in Shanghai.

October 11th.—Edict appointing Yung Lu Generalissimo of the armies of Chihli and the Peiyang Administration.

October 23rd.—English engineers attacked by soldiers at the Lukou-bridge.

October 25th.—Rioting at Shameen, Canton.

November 4th.—Murder of Mr. W. S. Fleming (C. I. M.) in Kuei-chou province.

November 5th.—Edict recommending volunteer military organizations in all cities, towns and villages.*

November 11th.—Edict praising and rewarding Tung Fushiang's Kansu troops.

November 12th.—Decree, that there should be no change in the old method of literary examinations.

December 7th.—Edict approving Yung Lu's organisation of the Grand Army of the North and the further organisation of a Middle Corps.† Li Hung-chang inspects the inundations of the Yellow River. Foreign ladies received in audience by the Empress-Dowager.

* The edict says: "The whole country can then be turned into a great armed camp to fight for their homes, should the exigencies of the moment call our people forth."

† "The drilling and organizing of the empire in the present critical condition of the country should be made the most important question of all throughout the country, and I shall look to my high officials to do all they can, to make our empire a strong one, and our soldiers men to be depended upon in times of emergency."

December 30th.—Edict encouraging the people to take an interest in volunteering and joining the militia.

1899 January.—Riot at a mine near Ningpo. Rebellion in Anhwei.

January 18th.—Yümantze, rebel-leader in Szechuan, captured.

January 28th.—Hu Yü-fen, Director of Northern Railways (pro-British), dismissed.

March 15th.—Edict conferring official rank on Roman Catholic missionaries.

April 16th.—British flag hoisted over new Territory at Kow-lung.

April 28th.—British-Russian agreement about railroads in China.

May 10th.—British-German syndicate undertakes to build a railroad from Tientsin to Chinkiang.

June 15th.—Anti-foreign riot at Kienning in Fukien.

June 22nd.—Anti-foreign disturbance at Mengtze, Yünnan. Kang Yi's trip south to collect money.

August 4th.—Abolition of extritoriality in Japan.

November 20th.—Settlement of Kuang-chou-wan boundaries between France and China.

December.—Rev. S. M. Brooke murdered in Shantung.

1900 January 24th.—P'u Chün, son of Prince Tuan, appointed heir to the throne.

March 15th.—Yü Hsien appointed Governor of Shansi.

April 10th.—C. M. S. buildings at Tsing-yung-t'u near Tai-chow looted. Li Ping-heng in Nanking.

April 25th.—2,000 Boxers attacked Roman Catholics south of Paotingfu. Many Manchu nobles joined the Boxer Association.

May 12th.—Mr. Chao of the L. M. S. and Liu Ching-yun hacked to pieces by Boxers near Peking.

May 26th.—Railway stations between Paotingfu and Peking burnt.

May 28th.—Boxers tear up part of Tientsin-Peking railway. Belgian engineers with families fled from Paotingfu (arrived in Peking, 2nd June).

May 31st.—Marine guards sent to Peking to protect the Legations.

June 1st.—Revs. Robinson and Norman of the S. P. G. murdered by Boxers.

June 5th.—Tientsin-Peking railway service finally stopped.

June 8th.—Paotingfu burning. T'ungchou mission buildings burned. Peking missionaries take refuge in Legations and Methodist compound. Prince Tuan appointed President of Tsung-li Yamên.

June 10th.—Admiral Seymour with 2,000 allied troops starts for Peking.

June 11th.—Sugiyama, chancellor of Japanese Legation, killed.

June 12th.—Viceroy Liu and Chang receive orders to resist foreign Powers.

June 13th.—Peking east-city burning; hundreds of Christians killed.

June 16th.—Ultimatum of allied naval commanders to Taku forts.

June 17th.—Taku forts taken by foreign fleet. Chinese commence the bombardment of Tientsin.

June 19th.—Chinese government ordered all the Ministers to leave Peking within twenty-four hours.

June 20th.—Baron von Ketteler, German minister, murdered. Professor Huberty James disappeared; he was (according to A. Smith, p. 267) captured and after a few days beheaded. Chinese attack of Legations begun.

June 23rd.—Foreign troops from Taku reach Tientsin; bombardment of Tientsin ceases.

June 26th.—Seymour returned to Tientsin.

June 27th.—Presbyterian Mission at Weihsien (Shantung) destroyed.

June 30-July 1st.—Massacre of missionaries and native Christians in Paotingfu.

July 9th.—Yü Hsien killed forty-five missionaries (thirty-three Protestants,* twelve Roman Catholics) in T'aiyüanfu. Altogether 135 Protestant missionaries and *fifty-three children (!)* killed by the Boxers. Japanese take the Tientsin Arsenal.

* "When the men were finished, the ladies were taken. Mrs. Farthing had hold of the hands of her children who clung to her, but the soldiers parted them, and with one blow beheaded their mother. The executioner beheaded all the children and did it skillfully, needing only one blow, but the soldiers were clumsy and some of the ladies suffered several cuts before death. Mrs. Lovitt was wearing her spectacles and *held the hand of her little boy, even when she was killed.* She spoke to the people, saying, 'we all came to China to bring you the good news of the salvation by Jesus Christ; we have done you no harm; why do you treat us so?' A soldier took off her spectacles before beheading her, which needed two blows. . . . Mrs. Pigott held the hand of her son, even when she was beheaded, and he was killed immediately after her. The ladies and two girls were also quickly killed." (Arthur Smith, "China in Convulsion," p. 614).

July 14th.—The Allies occupy the native city of Tientsin.

July 22nd.—Li Hungchang (coming from Canton) landed in Shanghai.

August 5th.—The Allies march from Tientsin on to Peking; Chinese are defeated at Peitsang.

August 6th.—Yangtsun taken.

August 9th.—Hosiwu reached.

August 11th.—Matou reached.

August 12th.—Tungchou occupied.

August 14th.—The Allies reach the walls of Peking.

August 15th.—Flight of Empress Dowager and Emperor early in the morning. The Legations relieved.

August 28th.—Triumphal march of allied troops through the Forbidden City.

September 14th.—Li Hungchang left Shanghai for Peking.

September 21st.—Count von Waldersee arrived at Shanghai and proceeded North the following evening.

December 22nd.—Peace-conditions announced by the Powers (accepted 26th December).

1901 July 13th.—Prince Chun leaves Peking for Germany (on his return from Germany he arrived in Shanghai on the 3rd November).

September 7th.—Peace-protocol between Plenipotentiaries of Foreign Powers and China signed, treating: (1) Prince Chun's mission; v. Ketteler's monument (Latin, German and Chinese inscription); (2) Punishment of guilty high officials, five years, suspension of examinations in several provinces; (3) Expiatory mission to Japan; (4) Monuments in desecrated cemeteries (15,000 Tls); (5) Importation of arms and war-materials forbidden for two years, with option of renewal of interdict; (6) Indemnity of 450 million Taels to be paid within thirty-nine years with four per cent. interest; (7) Fortification of Legation-quarters; (8) Razing of Taku forts; (9) Occupation of certain points between Tientsin and Peking; (10) Edicts *re* anti-foreign societies, punishment of the guilty officials, suspension of examinations, responsibility of high officials for foreigners in the future; these edicts to be posted in all towns for two years; (11) Peiho and Whangpoo improvements; (12) Transformation of Tsungli-yamen into a ministry for Foreign Affairs, higher in rank than the other six ministries.

New Imperial Edicts: August 29th.—Abolition of Wenchang, reform of civil and military examinations.

September 13th.—All colleges to be reformed according to Western methods; universities in provincial capitals, colleges in prefectural and district cities.

September 17th.—Promising scholars to go abroad for studies.

November 7th.—Li Hungchang died.

November 27th.—Edict recommending Yüan-shih-k'ai's school-regulations.

November 30th.—Pu-ch'ün deposed as heir-apparent.

1902 January 7th.—The Empress Dowager and Emperor Kwangsü return to Peking (from Chengting by train). The Emperor, before entering the palace, worshipped kneeling at the temple of Kuantí (s. year 219); the Empress Dowager worshipped, also kneeling, at the same place and at the temple of Kwan-yin, the "goddess of mercy" (female incarnation of Avalokitesvara, s. Eitel's Handbook of Buddhism p. 23).*

*See the *Ostasiatische Lloyd* of 24th January, p. 69.



"Thus saith the Lord: I am the first and I am the last, and besides me there is no God" (Isa. xlv. 6).

"Return unto me, and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of hosts" (Malachi iii. 7).

"Blessed is the nation, whose God is the Lord" (Psalm xxxiii. 12).



APPENDIX A.

The illegitimate States* (A. D. 304-439).

1. Ch'eng 成.	11. Western Yen 西燕.
2. Han 漢.	12. Western Ts'in 西秦.
3. Chao 趙.	13. Wei 魏.
4. Posterior Chao 後趙.	14. Posterior Liang 後梁.
5. T'ai 代.	15. Southern Liang 南梁.
6. Former Yen 前燕.	16. Northern Liang 北梁.
7. Former Ts'in 前秦.	17. Southern Yen 南燕.
8. Posterior Yen 後燕.	18. Western Liang 西梁.
9. Former Liang 前梁.	19. Hia 夏.
10. Posterior Ts'in 後秦.	20. Northern Yen 北燕.

1. *Ch'eng* 成 or *Ch'eng Han* 成漢 304-347, in Szechuan.

Li T'eh 李特 (G. 1209), driven by famine, emigrated with some myriads of families A. D. 298 from the Wei valley (Shensi) to Shuh, where he joined the governor, but soon killed him. Making himself independent, he gained some victories over the imperial troops, but was defeated and killed 303. His son Li Hiung 雄 (G. 1141) captured Oh'engt'u 304 and proclaimed himself emperor 306. His government was mild; of taxation he only took three bushels of grain from each male, one and a half from each female inhabitant, from sick persons one-half, besides a few yards of silk and some ounces of cotton each family. He appointed his nephew Pan 班 successor and died 334. Pan (G. 1179) was soon murdered and Hiung's son K'i 期 (G. 1103) usurped the throne. He was cruel, therefore overthrown and banished; he committed suicide. His relative Li Shou 李壽 (G. 1198), who had dethroned him, changed the name of the State into Han 漢 338. He was succeeded by his son Shih 勢 343 (G. 1193), who lived licentiously; therefore rebellion, famine and incursions of the Lao 獠 (a Laos tribe), till Huan Wen of Tsin made an end 347 (see in the History the year 347). The king Shih surrendered and received a title.

*The Chinese call it the period of the "Sixteen States" 十六國. The time of the Tsin 晉 Dynasty A. D. 265-420. The emperors of Western Tsin (265-316) resided in Lo-yang in Honan, at some time in Ch'ang-an in Shensi, the emperors of Eastern Tsin (317-420) resided in Nanking.

2. *Han* 漢, in Shansi. The southern branch of the Huns lived in Shansi and was 217 divided into five hordes 部. The second emperor of Tsin appointed 290 Liu Yüan 劉淵 generalissimo over the whole of them. He took the title of Great Khan 大單于, then King of Han 304 and Emperor 308. He made P'ing-yang 平陽 in Shansi his capital 309, conquered also the southern half of Shansi and portions of Shantung. After his death his son Ho 和, who succeeded, was soon murdered during a palace revolt, then Yüan's son Liu Ts'ung 聰 came on the throne 310. His troops captured and devastated the imperial metropolis, another of his armies captured Ch'ang-an 311. The latter was retaken by the imperialists, 312 (?). Ts'ung became sensual, he had his only brother and a number of faithful servants executed. He died 318. His young son Ts'an 粲 was soon murdered by one of his guardians, Kin Chun 靳準, who took possession of the throne. The two great generals Liu Yao 劉曜 and Shih Lo 石勒 came quickly from the West and from the North and overthrew the usurper. (Ch'en Shou 陳壽, who died 297, served the Han, see G. 245).

3. *Chao* 趙. The general Liu Yao ascended the throne of *Han* and made Shih Lo duke of Chao 趙 318. It came to a rupture between the two 319, when Yao killed a messenger from Lo, whereupon he declared himself independent; his State is called Posterior Chao (cp. 4), because Liu Yao had also changed the name of Han into Chao, i.e., the *Former Chao* 前. Liu Yao also removed his capital to Ch'ang-an. The commander of Lo-yang submitted then to Tsin; Liu Yao overcame rebellions in Shensi. He conquered part of Kansuh and the ruler of the Former Liang submitted to him, but Liao appointed him king of Liang 涼 323. His son declared for Tsin, as Liu Yao had been defeated by Shih Lo, but was defeated and lost all territory south of the Ho 327. 328 the Posterior Chao attacked the Former Chao, but was defeated so badly that the road was strewn with corpses for over 200 li. Several cities south of the Ho were reconquered and siege laid to Lo-yang. Shih Lo came to its relief, defeated and caught Liu Yao, who was drunk at the beginning of the battle. He was carried to Siang Kwoh (Hing-t'ai in Chihli) and there executed. His son Hsi 熙 attempted to establish himself in Kansuh, but was killed in battle with thousands of his followers 329. This put an end to the Former Chao.

4. *Posterior Chao* 後趙.

Shih Lo (s. 2) belonged to the Kieh 羯 clan of the Huns that had settled in Shansi. He became the first sovereign of the Posterior Chao 318. His State was east of the Ho to the gulf of Chihli. He extended it

south to the Huai and Han rivers 325, and incorporated the Former Chao 329. He assumed the imperial title 330 and died 333. His son Shih Hung (G. 1713), a weak-minded youth, was deposed and murdered by his cousin Shih Hu 石虎,* who usurped the throne 334. He was devoted to Buddhism and heaped honors on Buddhajinga 佛圖澄, a renowned Indian monk, who had already by predictions much influence on Shih Lo. 335 the Chinese were first permitted to take Buddhist vows. In the war with Yen 燕 he was unsuccessful 338-340, also with the Former Liang 346-347. As Shih Hu showed preference for a younger son, the older son murdered his brother and was killed by the incensed father, who then appointed Shih 世, the son of a concubine. The father died 349. Shih was soon murdered by his older brother Tsun 遵 (G. 1705); Tsun was assassinated the same year by a relative, who was murdered by Jan Min, 冉閔, an adopted son of Shih Hu. Another son, Shih K'i 石祗, tried to uphold the fortunes of Shih Lo in Hsiang-kwoh 襄國 in Chihli, but beleaguered by Jan Min he was murdered by his general Liu Hsien and the city surrendered 351. The general was executed by Jan Min and the people transferred to Yieh 鄴 near Ch'ang-te-fu in Honan (s. Yen). Jan Min gave to his State the name of Wei 魏, but was 352 defeated and executed by the general of Yen.

5. *T'ai* 代, in North Shansi (near Tat'ung-fu).

The Toba 拓拔, who had settled some years ago in the northern end of Shansi, belonged to the Soh-tou 索頭 tribe of the Sienpi. Their chiefs bore the title of K'o-han 可汗 (Khan). One of them, I-t'ò 猗叟, conquered over thirty States in the far North 298. The tribe then divided into three branches, which were reunited 307 by I-lu 猗盧 (G. 1948). He assisted Tsin and was rewarded with the prefecture of T'ai 310. He inflicted a severe defeat on the army of the rebel State Han 312 and became king of T'ai 代王 315. He appointed a younger son crown prince, wherefore the oldest murdered his father (G. 1946). Then followed murder after murder, till 338 Shih-i-k'ien 什翼犍 (G. 1950), eighteen years old, came on the throne. He introduced laws similar to those of China. He acknowledged the authority of the Former Ts'in 366. He was murdered 376 by one of his sons, who murdered also all his brothers. Ts'in then conquered the State of T'ai and divided it into three parts.

6. The *Former Yen* 前燕, the Mu-jung 慕容 clan of the Sienpi (in Liao-tung). About 237 a chieftain crossed the great Wall and settled in Liao-si; his grandson afterwards went to Liao-tung. After the death

* Also called Shih Chi-lung 石季龍 (G. 1705.)

of the chief 281, a younger brother attempted to get the throne, but was murdered. The son of the chief, Huei 廐 (G. 1545), assumed the title Great Khan 307 and received the title king of Liao 321. His son Huang 猷 (G. 1544) succeeded 333. He had first to fight his own brothers, then proclaimed himself king of Yen 燕王 and vassal of Posterior Chao 337. Chao assisted Huang against a clan of the Sienpi Tuan Shih 段氏 successfully. Then disagreement arose and Chao was defeated 338. Kao-kü-li 高句麗 in the East was conquered 343 and Yü-wen 宇文 344 in the North; Fu-yu 扶餘, north of Kao-kü-li, 346. He partitioned out crownlands for a moderate rent to immigrants and advanced learning. He declared himself independent 345. His son Tsun 儁 (G. 1550) succeeded 349. He conquered a portion of Wei 魏 350 and transferred his capital to Peking 薊 (Chi-ch'eng). He made an end of Wei and extended Yen to the Ho 352; he assumed the imperial title. The capital was moved farther south to Yieh 鄴 in Honan 357. He died 360. His brother K'oh 恪 acted as regent for his young son Wei 暉 (G. 1551), but died soon. The imperial commander Huan Wen 桓溫 attacked Yen, but was defeated 369 with the help of Ts'in (cp. 7). Then Ts'in conquered Yen and carried Wei and 40,000 Sienpi families to Ch'ang-an, incorporating the state of Yen to Ts'in 370. Wei rose, when Ts'in had suffered a defeat, but failed and was executed with over a thousand of his countrymen 385.

7. The *Former Ts'in* 前秦, 351-394.

A chief 留 of the Ti 氐 tribe Fu 苻 (first 蒲) Hung 洪 in Shensi, took the title duke of Lioh-yang 畧陽 310. Later on he transferred his capital to a place in Honan. 350 the people urged him to lead them back to their former homes. He then proclaimed himself king of the Three Ts'in 三秦王, but was poisoned by one of his officers before arriving home. His son Fu Kien 建 succeeded; he stormed Ch'ang-an and defeated an imperial army sent against him 351. The imperial general Huan Wen (s. 6.) gained a victory, but was afterwards defeated with great slaughter 354. Kien's brother Hung 雄 died, which affected him so much that a blood-vessel broke and he also died 355. His son Fu-sheng 生 followed. He had only one eye and a cruel disposition; he killed many high officials, till he was assassinated by his brother Kien 堅, who took the throne 357 (s. M. 141, G. 579). He conquered the State of Yen through his general Wang Meng 王猛 370. He transferred 150,000 Tartar families from Yen to his capital and its neighbourhood. He inaugurated a system of competitive examinations; the minimum required was one of the Classics and one of the liberal arts. 372 judicial courts with public sittings

every five days, regular circuits to inquire into the sufferings of the people. Taoist divination rigorously forbidden and Confucianism honored 375. He also continued his conquests in Shensi, Szechuan and Yünnan 373, in the West of Kansuh and the State of Tai 376. Kao-kü-li, his eastern neighbour, and Sinlo 新羅 (South of Korea), Tien-kwoh 滇國 (Yünnan) and other States in the S.W. of China sent tribute. His armies penetrated into imperial China through Honan and Hupeh into Anhwei and Kiangsu, conquering several cities 378, but were three times defeated by Sie Hüan 謝玄, the imperial general 379. Kien was converted to Buddhism 381; he had a monastery built within the precincts of the palace. Sixty-two States of Central Asia sent tribute to his court and an expedition was sent against some who had not submitted. Though all his councillors were against it, Kien attacked Ts'in 383 with 970,000 men. One of his officers betrayed him, so that he suffered a severe defeat at Fei-shui 肥水, a southern affluent of the Huai. In consequence several States rebelled and separated themselves from Ts'in, the Posterior Yen (s. below 8), the Post. Ts'in (s. 10) then 385 the Western Yen (s. 11), the W. Ts'in (s. 12), and in 386 the Post. Liang (s. 14), and Wei (s. 13). Kien was beleaguered in his palace at Ch'ang-an by one of his former generals, now rebel-king of Yen; he broke through the lines and took a fortified position on a mountain. There he was attacked by another general, rebel-king of Post. Ts'in (10). His stronghold was stormed and he himself made prisoner and strangled 385. His son P'ei 丕 (G. 596) proclaimed himself emperor in Ts'in-yang 晉陽 (T'ai-yüan-fu), but was defeated by the W. Yen and lost his life against Lo-yang 386. His cousin Teng 登 (G. 602) made an attempt to keep up the State of Ts'in in Kansuh. He fought with the Post. Ts'in first successfully, then defeated he lost his life. His son Ts'ung 崇 tried to make another stand at Siningfu, where he met his death 394 in battle with the Posterior Ts'in.

8. *Posterior Yen* 後燕, 384-407.

Ch'ui 垂 (G. 1541), a son of Huang, founder of the Former Yen (s. 6), was an able general, but fled to Ts'in 369, where he served Fu Kien (s. 7) fourteen years, till the battle of Fei-shui, when he escorted his king safely back to Ch'ang-an, but soon after he rebelled in Shansi, defeated Fu-pei 苻丕 and proclaimed himself king of Yen 384 and emperor 386. He then defeated his relative Ch'ung 冲, who had founded the Western Yen, which lasted till 394. The State of Wei (s. 13) during three years of war, 395-397, conquered the greater part of Yen, including its capital Chung-shan 山中 (now Ting-chou in Chihli). Mu-jung ch'ui died 396. His son

Pao 寶 (G. 1547) succeeded; he was murdered 398 and his son Sheng 盛 (G. 1548) followed 399. He reformed the administration of justice. No case was allowed to be remanded for more than ten days, the use of torture was abolished, the nobles were no longer allowed a fine instead of punishment. He conquered a portion of North Korea 400. Family disputes broke out again, and he was murdered 401. Patronized by the widow, an uncle Hsi 熙 (G. 1543) ascended the throne. He ordered the death of the widow, built fine palaces and laid out extensive parks. Thousands of the people died from heat or cold. His favorite consort made him to fail against the Koreans 405 and again 406. When she died, he followed her funeral barefooted and with dishevelled hair. An adopted son of Pao, Yün 雲 (G. 1552), was during this time put on the throne and Hsi was killed, when he hastened back to the capital 407. Yün was assassinated by two ladies of his harem. He was succeeded first by his minister, then by his brother till 436 the State of Yen was absorbed by Wei (S. 13).

9. *Former Liang* 前凉, 317-376, in Kansu.

Chang Kwei 張軌 (G. 81), a general, was made governor of the province of Liang (in Kansu) by the emperor of Tsin 301. He established an energetic rule, was promoted viceroy and died 314. His son Shih 寔 (G. 102) succeeded as governor; he remained loyal to Tsin, but was assassinated 320. His brother Mao 茂 (G. 90) was raised by the provincial officers. In the war with the Former Chao 322 Mao gained first some advantage, but the king of Chao invaded the country with 280,000 men, to which Mao submitted 323 and was made king of Liang. On his death-bed he appointed his nephew Chün 駿 (324-346, G. 42) and charged him to renew his allegiance with Tsin; he also ordered himself to be buried in a simple white gown 324. The Chao suffered a defeat by the Posterior Chao 325. Chün made an attempt to get free, but was defeated and lost his territory South of the Ho 327. The Posterior Chao exterminated the Former Chao 330 and Chün had to submit to them. He sent an envoy to Nanking (Kien-k'ang) 333 and received the brevet of a general 334. He sent an expedition to Kwei-tsz 龜茲 (Kuldja) to subjugate the Shen-shan. 鄯善. All Tartar tribes from there sent tribute to his capital. He sent another envoy to Nanking with a plan to conquer the rebel States of Chao and Ch'eng, but the emperor did not assent 336. Chün then built imperial buildings 339 and assumed the title king of Liang 345, but died the following year. His son Ch'ung-hua 重華 (G. 47) succeeded him. He repelled the armies of Posterior Chao 346 and 347, but died suddenly when in war with Ts'in 353. His son Yao-ling 曜靈 was only ten years old, therefore soon set aside by his uncle Tsu 祖 354 (G. 119). He was

sensual and cruel, therefore assassinated 355. Yüan-tsing 玄覲, a brother of Yao-ling, only seven years old, was then placed on the throne; his uncle Kuan 攏 reigned for him. He acknowledged the sovereignty of Ts'in (Fu Kien) 356. Kuan was murdered 359, also other high officers. The young king was murdered 363 by his uncle T'ien-hsi 天錫, who usurped the throne and led a dissolute life. Fu Kien incorporated the State in Ts'in 376 (G. 114).

10. *Posterior Ts'in* 後秦, 384-417, in Kan-su.

Yao Yih-ch'ung 姚弋仲 (G. 2435), a chieftain 酋 of the Kiang 羌, lived in Kansu and moved 312 farther to the East into Shensi; he submitted to the Former Chao 323 and 329 to the Posterior Chao. On his death-bed he recommended to his 42 sons to join Ts'in, as Chao had fallen. 352 his son Yao Siang 姚襄 (G. 2432) joined Ts'in with an army and was well received, but the high commander Yin Hao 殷浩 was jealous and laid an ambush. Yao became aware of it and inflicted a severe defeat on Yin 353, who was dismissed. Yao then thought it better to join Yen. He took possession of a city south of the Ho 355, but was driven out again by Huan Wen 桓溫. Yao withdrew to the North and came in conflict with a commander of Ts'in, who killed him. His brother Ch'ang 萇 (M. 902) submitted with the whole tribe to Ts'in 357. After Fu Kien's defeat he declared himself independent 384 (s. 7). Mu-jung Ch'ung (s. 8) stormed Ch'ang-an and burned it. Yao Ch'ang nevertheless proclaimed himself there emperor 386. He had still to fight the house of Fu. His son Yao Hsing 興 succeeded (394-415) and extinguished Fu 394. Three years he fought in the East, 397-399, and conquered the territory north of the rivers Han and Huai. He laid down the imperial title and took that of king; every official had also to go one step lower. He fought Western Ts'in successfully 400 and brought W. N. and S. Liang into vassalage 401. From Wei he suffered a severe defeat 402.

Hsing invited 405 the Buddhist priest Kumarajava 鳩摩羅什 from Kwei-tsz 龜茲 (Kuldja) in Turkestan to his court, where he was appointed Teacher of the State 國師. A special hall was built for him, where he lectured to thousands of priests; nine-tenths of the population became Buddhists. He translated many sacred books from Sanscrit into Chinese. Hsing yielded peaceably twelve prefectures in Honan to Liu Yü* 劉裕 of Tsin 405. He had more feuds with Hia and the Western Ts'in 407. He died 416. His son Hung 泓 succeeded, but Liu Yü made an end of the State 417.

* Liu-yü, i. e., Wu-ti of Liu Sung 420-422 (G. 1375).

11. *Western Yen* 西燕, 386-394, in Shansi.

A nephew of Mu-jung Ch'ui (s. 8), Hung 泓 (G. 1546), collected 384 an army of Sienpi in Shansi, crossed the Ho into the Wei valley and captured Hua Yin 華陰. His brother Ch'ung 冲 (G. 1542) also started in rebellion, but was beaten by a general of Ts'in and fled to Hung. They started together to attack Ch'ang-an, when Hung was murdered by one of his followers and Ch'ung took the command. He gained various victories and captured the imperial palace A-fang (M. 1). He then proclaimed himself emperor of Yen. He captured Ch'ang-an and his army plundered it. Murdered by his troops, who wanted to return east of the Ho; the general Tuan Sui 段隨 was put in his place. He was murdered by relatives of Ch'ung, and Mu-jung I 顗 was made the leader. He led over 400,000 persons, male and female, back to Shansi. Then another rebellion broke out in the family; I was murdered, then also Yao 瑤, a son of Ch'ung, and Chung 中, a son of Hung; both had been for a few days emperors of Yen. Then Mu-jung Yung 永, a remote cousin of Ch'ui, succeeded (386-394). He had to fight Fu P'ei 苻丕, the son of Fu Kien, who threatened his position in the rear, defeated him and established his court at Chang-tsz 長子, where he founded the Western Yen 386, in the south of Shansi. He made two unsuccessful attempts towards the South 389 and 390. His cousin Ch'ui, the sovereign of the Posterior Yen, defeated his army, Chang-tsz surrendered, Yung was beheaded 394 and the State absorbed.

12. *Western Ts'in* 西秦, 385-400; 409-431, in Kansu.

In Kansu lived a colony of Sienpi; the family name of their chieftain was K'ih-fuh 乞伏. One of them, Kuo-jen 國仁, was with his tribe in the service of Fu Kien till after the battle of Fei-shui, when he assumed the title king of Western Ts'in 384 (G. 308). His son K'ien-kuei 乾歸 (G. 306) removed his residence to Kin-ch'eng 金城 (Lanchou in Kansu), where many people joined him 388. He gained some territory from the Former Ts'in 394, but had to submit to Yao Hsing of the Posterior Ts'in 400, was made a minister in Ch'ang-an and his son Ch'ih-p'an 熾磐 administrator of his country 407. He fled 409, and his son placed 20,000 soldiers at his disposal, but he confessed his fault and was made king of Honan 411. Successful against the Southern Liang, he began to invade his master's territory; he was assassinated by a nephew 412 and Ch'ih-p'an (G. 307) succeeded. He conquered Southern Liang 414, but had to acknowledge himself a vassal of the court of Kien-k'ang 416. His son Mu-moh 慕末 succeeded 428 and was slain by the Hia 431.

13. *Wei* 魏, 386-534. (Also called North Wei).

The State of T'ai (s. 5) had been divided by Ts'in 376. Liu K'ü-jen appointed ruler over one part, was murdered 384. His son Liu-hien 劉顯 murdered the younger brother and successor of K'ü-jen 385. Hien was guardian of Toba Kuei 拓拔珪 (386-408, G. 1949), heir of another part of T'ai. Toba Kuei fled and was made king of T'ai by his tribe; he used the name "Wei" 386. Liu Hien was defeated with the help of the Posterior Yen 387. Kuei defeated with 5 to 6,000 men Wei Ch'en, the ruler of the third part of T'ai, who commanded 90,000. Over 300,000 horses and four million heads of cattle fell into the hands of the victor. He had 5,000 captives massacred, and the whole family of their chief, who had been assassinated by his attendants, executed; only a younger son, Puh-puh 勃勃, escaped and became the founder of the State of Hia 夏. All other tribes then voluntarily submitted. An army of the Northern Yen was defeated with terrible loss 395. Toba Kuei invaded Yen with 400,000 men and captured several cities 396, the rest of Yen with the capital was conquered 397. He had a new road cut through the Heng-ling 恒嶺 mountains 500 *li* long and transplanted 100,000 people from the South of the wall to the North of it, allotting fields and distributing cattle among them. He made P'ing-ch'eng 平城 (now Ta-t'ung-hsien in Shansi) his capital and assumed the title emperor 398. An expedition against the Kao-ch'ê 高車 tribe in the West 399 was successful. There was an old custom in Wei, that the crown prince when appointed had to kill his mother. Kuei's son Ssü 嗣 (G. 1951) did not do it, but fled. Kuei had a love to a younger sister of one of his consorts; he ordered the death of her husband and took her; she bore him a son, Shao 紹; he murdered his father Kuei 409, who had chastised him. Ssü came from his retreat and had his half-brother and the mother of him together with their accomplices executed and "their flesh made into minced meat as food for himself and his attendants." Ssü was succeeded 424 by his son Tao 肅 (G. 1952), who annexed the Liang State and 436 subdued Yen. He and his minister were enthusiastic *Taoists*. He was murdered by one of his own officers 452. Ku Pi s. G. 994. Wei continued during the division of China into the Southern and Northern empires. It split 534 into the W. and E. Wei; the latter was superseded by N. Ts'i 550, the former by N. Chou 557.

Note.—The Toba rulers:

1. Toba I-lu seized the T'ai district 310, proclaimed himself king 315, was murdered 316 (G. 1948).
2. Toba Ho-nu usurped the throne 316, died 338 (G. 1946).

3. Toba Shih-i-chien, son of I-lu, succeeded 338, murdered 376. The State divided. The heir founded Wei (G. 1950).
4. Toba Kuei founded Wei 386, proclaimed emperor of Northern Wei 398, slain by a relative 409 (G. 1949.)
5. Toba Ssü, son of Kuei, emperor 409; built a wall some 600 miles long 423, died 424 (G. 1951).
6. Toba Tao, son of Ssü, Taoist, was murdered 452 (G. 1952).
7. Toba Chün, grandson of Tao, died 466 (G. 1945).
8. Hung, son of Chün, twelve years old, poisoned 476 by his empress (G. 1947).
9. Yüan Hung-yen, son of Hung, who resigned to him 471, changed the family name, defeated by the southern Ch'i; he died 499 (G. 2552).
10. Yüan K'o, son of Hung-yen; Buddhism, 13,000 temples; died 515 (G. 2554).
11. Yüan I; his mother was regent till 520, again 525; she poisoned I 528 (G. 2553).
12. Hsüan Tsz-yu, grandson of Hung, 530, strangled.
13. Yüan Hsiu; put on the throne 532 by Kao Huan (G. 954), who rebelled 534. Division into the *Eastern Wei* dynasty [Yüan Shan-chien (G. 2560), who abdicated 550 in favor of Kao Yang (G. 964), who founded the *Northern Ch'i* dynasty], and into the *Western Wei* dynasty; s. Yüan Pao-chü (G. 2559). His son was deposed and emperor Kung set up, who resumed the surname of Toba. In 557 he abdicated in favor of Yü-wen Chüo (G. 2533), the founder of the *Northern Chou* dynasty.
14. The *Posterior Liang* 後涼, 386-403, in Kansu.

Lü Kwang 呂光 had been sent by Fu-kien with 100,000 men to Turkestan 352. He returned 384 with 10,000 fine horses and over 20,000 camels, laden with treasures. Arriving at the Great Wall, he heard of Fu Kien's death and the downfall of his empire. He then defeated the governor of Liang 涼 and entered its capital 385. He then defeated and killed a son of the last sovereign of Liang (s. 9) 386. He assumed the title Heavenly King 天王 396. The Western Ts'in defeated him 397. In consequence thereof, two of his officers rebelled and founded the Southern and Northern Liang States 398. Only his capital Ku-ts'ang 姑臧 (now Liang-chou-fu) and the country in extent of a prefecture was left to him; he died 399. His heir Lü Shao 呂紹 was murdered, a half-brother Tsuan 纂 (G. 1458) was murdered after two years' reign 401. His cousin Lung 隆 (G. 1451) was compelled by Hsing

of the Posterior Ts'in to give in his submission 401. Then he was attacked by the Northern Liang and his capital invested, so that 100,000 died from hunger, but he drove the enemy off 402. Both the N. and S. Liang attacked him, when Hsing came to his rescue; he was then removed with 10,000 families and his own relations to Ch'ang-an and the State incorporated in the Posterior Ts'in 403.

15. *Southern Liang* 南凉, 397-404 and 408-414.

The T'u-fah 秃髮 (G. 2076), a family of the Sienpi, of the same ancestor with the T'o-pah 拓拔, a Turkic tribe, driven from their homes by an army of the Ts'in, migrated to the West and settled in the Liang (Kansu) province. Lü-kwang (s. 14) appointed their chief Wu Ku 烏孤 (G. 2078) commander over all the Sienpi in his dominion 394. Wu Ku subjugated two other tribes 395, he called himself king of Si-p'ing 西平 397. He extended his dominion N. and S. and died 398. A brother succeeded and died three years after, then Nu-t'an (G. 2077), another brother of Wu Ku, succeeded 402. He acknowledged himself vassal of the Posterior Ts'in 404. But Hsing had to send an army against him and another against the Hia; both were repulsed with great loss 408. Nu-t'an 傉檀 assumed the royal dignity. The N. Liang beleaguered him in his capital 410 and he had to beg for peace and deliver hostages; breaking the peace, he was defeated again and had to give his son 411. A revolt called him 414 from his capital, when Ch'ih-p'an of the Western Ts'in (s. 307) took possession of it. Nu-t'an had to surrender, as his army deserted. Ch'ih-p'an had him poisoned and his son killed 414.

16. *Northern Liang*, 北凉 397-439.

In Liang (s. 14) was a tribe of the Huns, the Tsü-k'ü 沮渠. Lü-kwang had two of their loyal chiefs executed, when their nephew Meng-stün 蒙遜 (G. 1519) rose to avenge them; defeated he joined Tuan-yieh 段業 (G. 2086), an official who had also rebelled; they formed a State in the West 397 and enlarged it 398. Tuan took the title of king of Liang, appointing Meng his chancellor 399. A rebellion arose, forming the Western Liang (s. 18) 400. Meng rose against Tuan 401, killed him and took the throne. Meng fought the S. Liang, took their capital and made it his own residence 412. He gained some success against the Western Ts'in 415, but acknowledged himself a vassal of the imperial house (Tsin) 418. He conquered the W. Liang 420, and the State continued under the Divided Empire till 439, when Wei 魏 made an end of it.

17. *Southern Yen* 南燕, 398-410.

Tê 德 (G. 1549) was a younger brother of Ch'ui of the Posterior Yen (s. 8). Tê repulsed the Wei troops 397, but he left his residence Yieh 鄴 at the head of the garrison, crossed the Ho and took possession of Shantung, where he proclaimed himself king of Yen 399 and emperor 400. His nephew Ch'ao 超 succeeded him 405. The imperial general Liu Yü 劉裕 invaded Yen, took its capital and carried Ch'ao as prisoner to Nanking, where he was beheaded 410 (G. 1540).

18. *Western Liang* 西凉, 400-421.

Li Kao 李暠 was appointed governor of Tun-huang by Tuan Yieh of the N. Liang (s. 16). He made himself independent, and in the year 400 conquered some territory in the West. He had some occasional fights with his eastern neighbour N. Liang. His son Hsin 歆 succeeded him 417 (G. 1139). He was slain in battle when the N. Liang conquered his State 420.

19. *Hia* 夏, 407-431, North-Kansu.

Puh-puh 勃勃, after his escape from the slaughter of his father's family by Wei (s. 13) 391, entered the services of the Posterior Ts'in (s. 10), where he became gradually a governor. He declared himself independent 407, taking the title Heavenly King of the Great Hia 大夏天王. He extended his territory among the Sienpi and fought victoriously with the Post. Wei and the S. Liang 409 and 411. He was a cruel tyrant. When a wall was not pounded solidly enough to prevent an arrow penetrating it an inch deep, the workmen were killed and their corpses pounded into the mortar. If a cuirass could not resist an arrow, its maker lost his life, while if the cuirass offered the necessary resistance, the maker of the bow was killed. If an attendant looked askance at him, his eyes were put out, and if he laughed in his presence, he had his lips cut away, and if one dared to remonstrate with him, his tongue was first cut out and he was afterwards put to death. He changed his surname Liu into Hoh-lien 赫連 (glorious connection) 413. He captured Ch'ang-an 418 and made such a slaughter that he could have erected a high tower with the skulls of the slain. He proclaimed himself emperor. He died 425 and was succeeded by his son Ch'ang 昌. Then he was captured by the Wei 428; Ting 定, his brother, followed. He conquered the W. Ts'in, but was overpowered by the T'u-kuh-hwun 吐谷渾, a Tungusic tribe that had migrated from Liao-tung to Kokonor 431.

20. *Northern Yen* 北燕, 407-436.

Kao Yün 高雲 was a general of the Posterior Yen (s. 8). He resisted his master Pao against the rebellion of his own son 398. Hsi 熙

ascended the throne 401. The officer Feng Pah 馮跋 raised a revolt 407 and put Yün on the throne; Hsi was killed. Yün was assassinated, Pah killed the murderers and took the throne 409. He died in peace 430. His younger brother Hung 宏 succeeded. He suffered from repeated attacks from Wei, to which at last he succumbed 436.

Commonly only *sixteen States* are mentioned, because 2 is taken as identical with 3. Number 11 scarcely ever became established. 13 and 5, its ancestor, are counted as the State of Wei among the legitimate States of the Divided Empire.

The Buddhist priesthood was exclusively composed of natives from India, till 335 the Posterior Chao (s. 4) gave permission to Chinese. The ruling family were Huns. The Former and Posterior Ts'in (7 and 10), especially the latter, favored Buddhism. The introduction of Buddhism as a popular religion in China is principally due to the illegitimate and alien ruling Houses in the North, i.e., to the fact, that China was at that time broken up into such a number of petty sovereignties.



APPENDIX B.

The Illegitimate Dynasties (A. D. 907 *et seq.**)

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Tsin 晉, 907-923. | 8. Wu Yüeh 吳越, 907-978. |
| 2. K'i 岐, 907-924. | 9. Hunan or Ch'u 楚, 907-951. |
| 3. Former Shuh 前蜀, 907-925. | 10. King-nan 荆南, 907-963. |
| 4. Posterior Shuh 後蜀, 935-963. | 11. Ling-nan 嶺南, 915-971. |
| 5. Huai-nan 淮南, 907-910. | 12. Min 閩, 909-945. |
| 6. Wu 吳, 910-937. | 13. Northern Han 北漢, 951-979. |
| 7. Southern T'ang 南唐, 937-975. | |

The Liao or K'i-tan, 917-1123.

1. *Tsin* 晉, 907-923, in Shansi.

Li K'è-yung 李克用 (M. 354) did not submit to Chu Wen 朱溫, when he overthrew the T'ang and established the Liang, but made his province independent; he died 908. His son Li Ts'un-hü 李存勗 (M. 375) was an able man; he overpowered the Liang dynasty and founded the *Posterior T'ang* 923.

2. *K'i* 岐, 907-924, in South Shensi.

Li Mao-chen 李茂貞 had received his name and title from the emperor Hsi-tsung. He therefore did not submit to the Liang, but 924 to the Post. T'ang; he was created king of Ts'in 秦王 and died 924.

3. *Former Shuh* 前蜀, 907-925.

Wang Kien 王建 (G. 2154), governor of Liang-chuan 兩川 (Szechuan) declared himself independent 907. He fought K'i and Nan-t'ao 南詔 in the South with success. Died 918. His son Tsung-yen 宗衍 後主 followed, whose sensuality led to his ruin 925 by the Post. T'ang.

4. *Posterior Shuh* 後蜀, 935-963.

The T'ang emperor appointed his relative Meng Chih-siang 孟知祥 (G. 1517) as governor of the province. He established himself as emperor

* This was during the period of the "*Later five dynasties*" (907-960): After Liang 907-923, After T'ang 923-936, After Tsin 936-946, After Han 947-950, and After Chou 951-960.—Of the illegitimate Dynasties *ten* are called the "*Ten States*" 十國: 1. Former Shuh (3);—2. Posterior Shuh (4);—3. Huai-nan or Wu (5 and 6);—4. Southern T'ang (7);—5. Wu Yüeh (8);—6. Hunan or Ch'u (9);—7. King-nan (10);—8. Ling-nan (11);—9. Min (12);—10. Northern Han (13).—Besides these there were Tsin (1) 907-923; K'i (2) 907-924 and Yen 909-913.—The 歷代地理沿革圖, a part of the 李氏五種合刊 (a collection of five historical and geographical books edited by Li Hung-chang), contains under the title 五代十國圖 a good map of the five dynasties and ten States. (Arendt l. c. 1900, p. 151).

934, when he saw the Post. T'ang would perish; he died 935. His son Meng Ch'ang 孟昶 lived so extravagantly that he had his chamber-pot ornamented with jewels. Deposed 963 by the Sung (G. 1514).

5. *Huai-nan* 淮南, between the rivers Huai and Yangtse, in Kiangsu and Anhui, 907-910.

Yang Hsing-mih 楊行密 was governor, when the T'ang dynasty went to ruin. He intended to declare himself independent, but died 905. His son Yang Woh 楊渥 carried it out 907, but his minister Sü Wen 徐溫 had him assassinated 908 for his debauchery. He elevated the younger brother of the murdered ruler, Lung-yen 隆演. A war against Wu-yüeh 吳越 was not successful, but against Ts'u 楚 in the S. W. His able general Chou Pen 周本 conquered the whole of Kiangsi 909. Lung-yen then changed 910 the name of his State into the following.

6. *Wu* 吳, 910-937.

Lung-yen died 920, and his brother P'u 溥 (M. 891 is inaccurate) succeeded and assumed imperial dignity 927. His minister Sü Chih-kao 徐知誥, the adopted son of Sü Wen (s. above 5), prepared himself for taking the throne and disposed his lord 936. He became the founder of the

7. *Southern T'ang* 南唐, 937-975.

His original name was Li P'ien 李昇, which he resumed 939. His name as emperor is Lie-tsu 烈祖; his capital was Kin-ling 金陵 (Nan-king); he died 943. His son King 景 succeeded. He conquered Min 閩 (Fukien) 945 and Ts'u (Hunan) 951, but submitted to Chou 周 957, and gave up all his possession north of the Yangtse 958. Two years later the Sung took the place of Chou, King removed then his capital to Hung-chou 洪州 (Nanch'ang in Kiangsi) and died 961. His son Yüeh 煜 succeeded, he changed the name of his State into Kiangnan 江南 971. He was a devotee to Buddha. The general Ts'ao Pin 曹彬 (M. 765) conquered the State for Sung without bloodshed 975.

8. *Wu-yüeh* 吳越, 907-978.

Founded by Ts'ien Liu 錢鏐, who was governor of part of Chekiang and 907 created king of Wu Yüeh.* He had a successful war about Suchou and Fuchou, died eighty-one years old 932. His son Yüan-kwan 元瓘 (M. 773) succeeded. He died 941. His son reigned till 947. His severe brother Hung-tsung 弘宗 was replaced the same year by another brother Hung-shuh 弘俶 (M. 774). He helped the Sung to overthrow Kiangnan, but was forced to resign 978.

*Near Hangchow and Shaohsing. This Yüeh is not to be mistaken for the country around Canton, which was also called Yüeh (G. 11).

9. *Hunan* 湖南 or *Ts'u* 楚, i.e. Hunan and Kwangsi N. of the West river. 907-951.

Ma Yin 馬殷 (G. 1489), governor, refused to join Chu Wen Pon, but attached himself to the Posterior T'ang 924. He was succeeded by five of his sons, Hsi-sheng 希聲 930, Hsi-fan 希範 932, Hsi-kwang 希廣 947, who was assassinated by his brother Hsi-ngoh 希萼 950. The army put aside the murderer and elevated Hsi ts'ung 希崇, but the people still preferred Hsi-ngoh. S. Han availed itself of the trouble and took the Kwangsi portion, the S. T'ang taking Hunan 951.

10. *King-nan* 荆南, Hupeh between the Han and Yangtse (also called Nan Ping, 南平), 907-963.

Kao Ki-ch'ang 高季昌 was an official under the T'ang, then made governor by the Liang 907, and invested as king Pu-hai 渤海王. He submitted to the Post. T'ang 923, but rebelled 927. He was defeated the following year and died 929. His son subjected himself to the T'ang and was reinstated. His son Pao-yung 保融 succeeded 948. He helped the Chou to conquer the region north of the Yangtse 958. His younger brother Pao Hsü 保勗 submitted to the Sung 960. His nephew (son?) succeeded 963, but was made a governor and the State annexed by the Sung.

11. *Ling-nan* 嶺南*, Kwangchou, etc., 915-971.

Liu Yin 劉隱 (G. 1369) submitted as governor to the Liang 907. He died 911. His younger brother Liu Yen 劉嚴 (G. 1368) succeeded. He assumed imperial dignity 915, calling his State Yüeh 越 917 and Han 漢 918; hence the name **Southern Han**. His capital was at Canton. He was luxurious and cruel. He was succeeded 942 by his son Fan 玢, who was murdered by his brother Sheng 晟 (G. 1349), who took the throne and murdered all his numerous brothers. After his death 958 his son Chang 鋹, sixteen years old, succeeded. The eunuchs had the power; they advised the young king to have his brother killed. Sung made an end to his cruel reign 971. Over a hundred eunuchs were then put to death.

12. *Min* 閩, 909-945.

Wang Shen-chih 王審知 (G. 2219), the governor of Fukien, was raised to the dignity of king of Min 909. His son Yen Han 延翰 (G. 2249) succeeded 925. He made himself independent and assumed the title of emperor. Assassinated by his brother Yen-kün 延鈞 (s. G. 2199 Wang Lin, comp. also G. 2251), who first confessed allegiance to the S. T'ang, but soon took the imperial title. He maintained 20,000 Buddhist priests,

* Also called Southern Han and Ts'ing-hai 清海 or Nan-hai 南海.

but was very cruel, killing many faithful servants and relatives. He raised one of the slave-girls of his father to the rank of empress. He was murdered 935 together with the empress and other favorites by his son Ki-p'ang 繼鵬 (=Wan ch'ang G. 2136). The latter made one of his slave-girls empress and massacred his next kinsmen. He favored Taoism, had a golden statue of Lao-tse, which his head-diviner had to consult on all matters of State. Assassinated 939 by his uncle Yen-hsi 延羲 (G. 2250). He sustained a myriad of Buddhist monks and laid for their sake heavy taxes on the people, was murdered 944 by one of his generals, Chu Wen-tsin 朱文進, who usurped the throne, but was murdered the same year by the people of Foochow. The brother of Yen-hsi, Yen-cheng 政 (G. 2248), who had made himself independent from Yen-hsi 943 and called his dominion Yin 殷國, was defeated by the S. T'ang, who took possession of Min, except the city of Foochow, which was handed over to Wu Yüeh (s. above 8) by the rebellious Li Jen-tai 李仁達.

13. *Northern Han* 北漢, 951-979.

Liu Ts'ung 劉崇, a younger brother of the founder of the Post. Han, was governor of Ho-tung 河東 in Shansi. On the overthrow of the Post. Han he proclaimed himself emperor (951). His capital was Tsin-yang 晉陽 (T'ai-yüan-fu). He formed an alliance with the K'i-tan. His son Ch'eng Kün 承鈞 succeeded him 954. He remained in dependence of the K'i-tan. An adopted son, Ki-ngen 繼恩, followed him on the throne 968, but was murdered after two months. Another adopted son, Ki-yüan 繼元, succeeded. He was a cruel character and ordered the death of his adopted mother. He was subdued by the Sung 979 and the State absorbed.

The *K'i-tan* 契丹 or *Liao* 遼, 917-1123.

A Tungusian tribe, included in the Tung Hu 東胡 (eastern Mongols?) and related to the Sienpi 鮮卑, were repulsed by the Wei A.D. 235. They asked protection of the N. Wei 北魏 479, were defeated by the N. Ts'i 北齊 552, also by the Sui 隋, aided by T'u-chüeh Tartars 突厥 605. They submitted to T'ai Tsung of T'ang 627-649, but rose again under empress Wu 684-704 and had some success 712. A Chinese army of 60,000 men was to nine-tenths slain 714.

A-pao-ki 阿保機, born 872, with surname *Yelü* 耶律, induced his tribe to settle around the city of Silou 西樓 or Shang-king 上京; he united the Nü-chen 女真 and other Tartar tribes. On the downfall of the T'ang, he proclaimed himself emperor with the name I 億 917, but with little success in China. He died 926. At his burial *a hundred of his servants were slain*, to follow and serve him in the other world. The founders of the Liang (year 904) and of the Tsin (illeg. dynast. 1)

had both courted his assistance. His son and successor *Te-kwang* 德光, (926-947), tried to assist a rebellious official of T'ang against his master but they suffered such a defeat that only 100 men escaped, 928. Great success was obtained 936 (s. the year in the History) in helping the founder of the After Tsin. When a minister advised the emperor to throw off the shameful yoke of the Tartars, he "ordered his head to be cut off and sent it to his Imperial father" 942. The next emperor fought from 943-947 against the K'i-tan, when he was overpowered and captured. *Te-kwang* entered as victor the capital P'ien Chou 汴州 and proclaimed himself emperor of China. He had to withdraw before the founder of the Post. Han (947-950). The rulers of the Northern Han (951-979) were dependent on the K'i-tan or Liao, as they then called themselves. Shih Tsung 世宗, who had succeeded his uncle *Te-kwang* 947, was murdered 951 and his successor Yeltü Kung was unfortunate against the Chinese. The Liao invaded China 960. The Sung fought against the Liao 979, also 986, and they invaded China again 989. They gave the chief of the Tanguts, Li Ki-tsien 李繼遷, the title king of Hsi Hia 西夏. Though the Sung gained some advantage 1004 in the peace of Shan-yüan 澶淵, they promised to pay annually 200,000 pieces of silk and 100,000 taels of silver to the Liao. This was increased 1042, to 100,000 more of each kind. A.D. 1118 the Chinese ambassador Ma Cheng 馬政 went to Aguda (T'ai-tsu 太祖 of the Kin 金) and gained his alliance. The Liao were defeated 1122 at Pai Kou 白溝 and their king captured 1123. The scattered remnants of the K'i-tan afterwards collected under their chief Ta Shih 大石 and formed the *Western Liao* state 西遼 or Karakhitai (s. Fries, p. 227) 1124-1218; then the Mongols under Genghis Khan made an end to the Western Liao (see in the History the "note" under the year 1234).

The *Sung* conquered the States of China in the following order:—

- 963. King-nan 荆南 in Hupeh.
- 963. Post. Shuh 後蜀 in Szechuan.
- 971. Southern Han 南漢 in the Two Kwang.
- 975. South. T'ang 唐 in Hunan, Fukien, Kiangsi, and part of Anhui or Kiangnan 江南.
- 978. Wu Yüeh 吳越 in Chekiang.
- 979. N. Han 北漢 in Shansi and part of Chihli.

APPENDIX C.

The six great chancellors of Ts'in (4th century B.C.).

The 7 warring States 七雄 were :—

(1) Ts'u 楚, which had conquered Ch'en 陳 478, Ts'ai 蔡 446, K'i 杞 444 and Ku 莒 431.

(2) Ts'i 齊.

(3) Yen 燕, north of Ts'i.

(4) Han 韓, annexed Cheng 375.

(5) Chao 趙.

(6) Wei 魏, since 340 (364) also called Liang 梁.

(7) Ts'in 秦 in the valley of the Wei 渭 river. Hsiao Kung 孝公 of Ts'in in the year 362 B. C. issued invitations over the whole empire to any civil or military officer to enter his service.

1. Wei Yang 衛鞅 (s. G. 2296, M. 845),

an illegitimate scion of the house of Wei. His family name was Kung-sun 公孫. He was assistant to Kung-shuh Tso 公叔座, chancellor of Wei 魏, who recommended him to king Huei 惠 (370-335), but Huei did not like Yang. He then went to Ts'in 361, where he was appointed counsellor 與議國事. He was entrusted with the reform of the laws 359. The people were formed into groups of five or ten families responsible for one another. Families of more than two males had to pay double taxes or to separate into different households. The number of fields, houses, servants, concubines and vestments allotted to each family were to be strictly limited. He enforced his laws with the utmost vigour. After ten years nobody picked up what others had lost on the road ; there were no robbers, the people were provided with what they needed ; in war they behaved as gallantly, as they were reluctant to engage in private feuds, while the administration of cities and villages left nothing to be wished for. The capital was transferred from Yung 雍 (in Feng-tsiang prefecture, Shensi) to Hien-yang 咸陽 350. *All households had to live separately.* The territory was divided into thirty-one districts, each with a governor ; land taxes, weights and measures were uniform. Riches and strength increased, the emperor made the king Leader of the princes 341.

Wei suffered a defeat from Ts'i and Han. Ts'in availed itself of the opportunity and attacked Wei, captured the commander by treachery and

routed his army. Wei bought peace at the cost of its southern possessions between the Lo and Ho. Wei Yang was created prince of Shang 商君. A famous scholar, Chao Liang 趙良, had an interview with Yang. He referred to the example of Peh-li Hsi 百里奚 (M. 547), who laboured hard for the people, not seeking his own convenience and glory. He said, that Yang did not care for the people, but for extensive buildings; he injured the people by his excessive severity and usurped royal privileges.

Hsiao Kung died 338. His successor was Huei 惠, who 325 took the royal title. As Yang had years ago severely punished his sin on his tutor and teacher, the king listened to Yang's enemies. Yang fled to Wei, but the people there drove him back to Ts'in for his former treachery. He then fled to his territory of Shang, where he tried to resist the troops sent against him, but was beaten and killed; his body was rent in pieces (M. 845) and his whole family exterminated.

2 and 3. *Su Ts'in* 蘇秦 (M. 626, G. 1775) and *Chang I* 張儀 (M. 17, G. 70).

Su was a native of Lo-yang, the imperial metropolis; he belonged to the political party of federalism, called Ho-tsung 合縱, as the eastern States; and *Chang*, a native of Wei 魏, belonged to the party of imperialism, called Lien-huang 連橫, i.e., amalgamation of the various feudal States into one homogeneous whole, governed by an autocratic and hereditary head. Federalism wished for an elective chief 約長. Ts'in was the champion for Imperialism.

The two statesmen were pupils of Wang Hü 王翳 (M. 798), who taught in the Demon's gorge under the name of Kuei Ku Tsz 鬼谷子 (M. 301). He taught the policy of selfish interest, taking advantage without fixed principle 縱橫之術; how to attain to riches and honors was the object. After they left their (Machiavellian) school, they became vagrant politicians 游說之士, diplomatic knight-errants.

Chang I attached himself to the chancellor of Ts'u 楚; unjustly accused of theft, he was flogged and dismissed in disgrace.

Su Ts'in had failed abroad and returned home in distress; he studied again his master Kuei Ku for a year, then being refused in Chou 周 went to Ts'in 337, where Huei-wen 惠文 just began his rule. He recommended Imperialism, but Huei was discouraged from his late experience with Wei Yang and declined Su Ts'in's offer of service. Su then went to the Eastern States, where federalism was the only chance for success. He was not admitted in Chao, where the minister was not in his favor. In Yen he had to wait a year for an audience, but persuaded the ruler

Wen-hou 文侯 to form an alliance with Chao. Su was sent as ambassador. He proposed an alliance of the *six States*—Han, Wei, Ts'i, Ts'u, Yen and Chao. "Should Ts'in attack one of the six States, the other five will despatch their best soldiers to repel Ts'in. Should any one of the States fail to do so, then the other five will unite to punish it." The marquis Suh 肅 was pleased and sent Su with rich presents as ambassador to the other courts. He went with 100 cars, 20,000 taels of gold, 100 pairs of white gems and 1,000 pieces of embroidered silk. Ts'in made an attack on Wei 魏 and captured its general Lung Kia 龍賈, also a city. Su then formed a scheme to bring Chang to the court of Ts'in as his secret agent. He invited Chang to Chao, but treated him with great contempt, so that Chang went on the way to Ts'in to avenge himself. Su sent a messenger with rich presents after him. These Chang accepted, compelled by want; but when the messenger disclosed the scheme, after he had got into office at Ts'in, he refused to comply. Su went first to Han, where he gained the king Sūan Hwei 宣惠; then to Wei, where king Hwei 惠 joined; then to Ts'i, whose king Sūan 宣 also joined; then to Ts'u, whose king Wei 威 also entered the confederation. Su was made the common chancellor of the six States and received a guard of honor from each. The emperor sent him valuable presents, when he passed Lo-yang.

Ts'in sent the clever Kung-sun Yen 公孫衍 (G. 1775) to Ts'i and Wei, to persuade its rulers to a joined attack on Chao. This broke up the federation 332. Su went to Yen, accepting the post of minister there, but having illicit intercourse with the mother of his master, he feared punishment and went to Ts'i. There he secretly stirred the people up in favor of Yen. He was assassinated by some jealous official 317. His two brothers Su T'ai 代 and Su Li 厲 and others still continued to urge federalism, but their success was ephemeral; they found no honest, truthful rulers; Imperialism had become a necessity.

Ts'in availed itself of the confusion and gained other cities from Wei 332, 330 and 328, all lying west of the Ho, returning on the advice of Chang the cities on the north side. The ruler of Ts'in now took the title of king and made Chang I his chancellor. But to serve the ends of Ts'in, Chang went as chancellor to Wei. He persuaded Wei to attack Han, but was frustrated by Kung Sun Yen. Yen succeeded in forming an alliance of the eastern States, except Ts'i. They attacked the Han-kuh pass, but were repulsed by an army of Ts'in, and the alliance broke up 318. The following year Ts'in defeated Han, which lost 80,000 men. Chang now succeeded in persuading the king of Wei to secede from the federation and beg Ts'in for peace. 317 Chang then returned to Ts'in.

Wei wavered 313, but was brought to submission by an army of Ts'in. Han was defeated again with a loss of 10,000 men.

Chang went to Ts'u to separate it from Ts'i. He promised 600 *li* of Shang-yü 商於 and daughters of Ts'in as concubines. The king was pleased; only Ch'en Chen 陳軫 remonstrated without avail. After the rupture of Ts'u with Ts'i, Chang offered 6 *li*. Ts'u then marched against Ts'in, but was defeated by the allied forces of Ts'in and Ts'i; 80,000 men were killed. Ts'u had to make peace 312. In the following year Ts'u gave a tract of land K'ien-chung 黔中 for handing Chang I over, but he exerted his influence on the eunuch Kin-shang 靳尚 and the queen and got free again. Then he persuaded the king to form an alliance with Ts'in. Chang had also success in Han, in Ts'i, Chao and Yen by telling falsehoods and using threatening language.

King Huei Wen died 311 and was succeeded by his son Wu 武, who had a grudge against Chang. The Six States renounced the allegiance and went back to Federalism. To get away from Ts'in, Chang used a trick to be sent to Wei, as Ts'i would then attack it and the king Wu might attack Han and conquer Chou. Wu gave him thirty cars to go to Wei, where he was well received and made chancellor. Ts'i came with an army, but Chang sent a friend by the way of Ts'u, who explained the situation to the king of Ts'i, so that he withdrew his army. Chang I died the same year 310 as chancellor of Wei.

4 and 5. *Wei Jan* 魏冉 (G. 2279) and *Fan Tsii* 范雎 (G. 533).

Wei Jan was related to the ruling house of Ts'u. As the younger half-brother of one of the wives of king Huei Wen 惠文 (337-311), he entered the service of Ts'in and continued under Wu 武 (310-307). During the struggle of Wu's brother after his premature death, Wei Jan succeeded in placing Chao-siang 昭襄 (306-251), a son of his half-sister, on the throne. As the king was then a minor, his mother Dowager S'uan 宣太后 assumed the regency and appointed Jan commander-in-chief of the Ts'in army. A rebellion broke out 305, which Jan put down, but he executed the first consort of the late Huei Wen and several of his sons. The wife of king Wu was banished. Ts'in concluded an alliance with king Huai 懷 of Ts'u 304. Attacked by Ts'i, Han and Wei, the king of Ts'u sent his son the crown prince to Ts'in as hostage. Ts'in sent relief 303. The crown prince killed in a private quarrel an officer of Ts'in and fled back to Ts'u 302. This caused war between Ts'in and Ts'u. The crown prince was then sent to Ts'i, but Ts'in caught king Huai by treachery and kept him prisoner to his death 296, because he would not consent to give up so much country as was asked. Ts'in took seventy-six cities the following

year. T'ien Wen 田文, known as Meng Ch'ang Kün 孟嘗君, a native of Ts'i, was engaged by Ts'in 299, but was suspected and imprisoned. He escaped and got Han and Wei to join Ts'i in an attack on Ts'in, which had to buy peace by giving over three cities east of the Ho 298. Lou Huan 樓緩, a native of Chao and capable diplomatist, offered his service to Ts'in, but was not accepted through the cleverness of a negotiator sent from Chao for the purpose. Wei Jan became chancellor and had Peh K'i 白起 (M. 544) appointed commander-in-chief of the army. Wei and Han attacked Ts'in, but were defeated by Peh K'i (G. 1653) at I-küeh 伊闕 293, where 240,000 of the allies were slain and their commander captured. 290 Wei Jan led an army in person against Wei and Han; he took 400 *li* from the Wei in the North of the Ho and 200 *li* from Han in the South of the Ho. 289 he took other sixty-one cities from Wei. Peh K'i conquered part of Ts'u 280-278 with its capital Ying 郢; two provinces were made of it (Hupeh and part of Hunan).

The total ruin of Wei was 275 averted by Sü Ku 須賈, who persuaded Wei Jan to withdraw his troops that had invested Ta-liang, Wei's capital. Wei concluded an alliance with Ts'i, but was defeated again 274. Wei Jan marched 40,000 men to assist Chao attacking Ts'i, but was dissuaded by Su T'ai, minister of Ts'i, and withdrew his forces 273. The minister of Ts'u, Huang Hieh 黃歇, named prince of Ch'un-shen 春申君, wrote a diplomatic letter convincing the king of Ts'in of the advantage of an alliance with Ts'u 272. An army of Ts'in invaded Chao 270, but was defeated (M. 49).

Fan Tsü 范雎 (G. 533) was a native of Wei; being poor he began as an attendant to Sü Ku. On a visit to Ts'i, king Siang heard him and wished to give him a present; this caused Sü Ku's suspicion, and on his return the chancellor of Wei, Wei Ts'i 魏齊, had him cruelly beaten and cast on a dung-hill for dead. Wang Hi 王稽 took him to Ts'in, though Wei Jan had forbidden to take foreigners into the State. He was appointed guest minister and military counsellor 270. He made two successful expeditions against Wei 268 and 266. Fan Tsü then thought his time had arrived; he aroused the king's jealousy, so that he deposed the queen-dowager, banished Wei Jan, the marquis of Tang and other relatives and made Fan Tsü chancellor with the title marquis of Yin 266. Wei Jan was allowed to depart in peace with all his property; he had more jewels than were in the king's palace, and required over 1,000 cars to remove his things to his appanage T'ao. He died of sorrow soon afterwards, when his appanage was reunited with the king's dominion.

Sü Ku came to Ts'in on an embassy. Fan Tsü came to him in disguise, and was treated friendly, so that he forgave him, but demanded the head of Wei Ts'i, who fled, but giving up his cause cut his throat, so that his head was delivered up. Ts'in's attack on Chao failed 265, because Ts'i came to its rescue. Success was gained against Han 264-262. Part of Han, Shang-tang 上黨, joined Chao, and Ts'in attacked Chao in consequence. Lien P'o 廉頗 (M. 49), the able commander of Chao, was recalled (because Fan Tsü had given gold to the next attendants of the king) and Chao Kuo 趙括 was appointed against the warnings of Lin Siang-ju 藺相如 and his own mother. He was soon surrounded at Ch'ang-p'ing 長平 in Shansi and lost his life; his 450,000 men were put to the sword and their bodies thrown into the gullies 260. The whole of Shansi was conquered 259 and organised into two provinces. Su T'ai was sent to Ts'in and persuaded Fan Tsü, who prevailed on the king to make peace with Chao to the displeasure of Peh K'i 259. The latter resigned 258, and the king, instigated by Fan Ts'u, sent him a sword to take his own life. Chao's general Wu-k'i 無忌, assisted by Ts'u and Wei, defeated the army of Ts'in; the new commander Cheng An-p'ing surrendered with 20,000 men, and Wang Hi fled with the rest; the two provinces were lost again.

Chou had been divided since 446 and 426 into two small duchies, governed by two relatives of the emperor and called Western Chou 西周 and Eastern Chou 東周. The prince of Western Chou was now the chancellor of the emperor, he summoned the vassals of the empire against Ts'in. The latter then invaded Chou, when the duke of Western Chou prostrated himself and in 256 delivered up all his thirty-six cities; the regalia of the empire, the nine tripods, also fell into the hands of the king of Ts'in. He and the emperor Nan Wang 赧王 (314-256) died the same year.

Wang Hi, through Fan Ts'u governor of Hotung, had secret intercourse with other States and was executed. Ts'ai Tséh 蔡澤 had been all around in the States to find employment; he now arrived in Ts'in, where he persuaded Fan Tsü to resign and took his place.

6. *Lü Pu-wet* 呂不韋 (G. 1455, M. 465, s. B. C. 257).

According to the Sze-ki he was a native of Han, according to others a native of Wei 魏. He was a merchant 大賈 and met the prince I-jen 異人 of Ts'in, who lived as hostage at Hautan, the capital of Chao. The prince was grandson of king Chao Siang and son of the crown prince, who had no son by his legal wife Hwa-yang 華陽夫人, but over twenty by his seraglio ladies. Lü went to Ts'in and persuaded Hwa-yang to

adopt I-jen as her son. He brought the deed of adoption and valuable presents back with him. Lü married a beautiful woman, with whom I-jen fell in love and obtained her from Lü. Her pregnancy she concealed, and the son Cheng 政, born in due time, was regarded as the son of the prince, who raised the mother to the rank of a legal wife 258.

I-jen was released from Chao. The old king Chao Siang died 251 and his son succeeded as Hiao Wen ; 孝文 then I-jen was proclaimed heir. King Hiao Wen died 250 and I-jen succeeded as Chuang-siang 莊襄王 in Ts'in. He raised his two mothers to queen-dowagers and Lü Pu-wei to the post of chancellor with the rank of marquis.

Lü led an expedition against *Eastern Chou* and took its city Kung 鞏 in Honan 249 ; he banished the duke and ordered the cessation of the sacrifices. The two provinces were reconquered from Chao 248 and 247. Then Wu K'i (s. above) at the head of the allied armies of Wei, Han, Chao, Ts'i, and Ts'u defeated Meng Ao 蒙驁, the Ts'in commander, and drove him to the Han-kuh pass 247. Chuang Siang (I-jen) died 247 ; Cheng 政, who was really the son of Lü Pu-wei, but was regarded as I-jen's son, succeeded only thirteen years old. Lü, raised in dignity, engaged 3,000 retainers. He invited a number of scholars to write a work called "Spring-Autumn," which is still in existence. On Lü's advice the king sent 10,000 pieces of gold to Wei to be spent amongst the rivals of Wu K'i to spread rumours against him ; the king of Wei really removed him and he died 244. Ts'in then got another province in the east 242. Five States united again—Ts'u, Chao, Wei, Han and Wei 衛 ; the chancellor of Ts'u, Huang Hieh 黃歇 (M. 218), had first some success, but was soon utterly routed ; Ts'in captured the city Chao Ko of Wei in Honan, and Ts'u removed its capital 241. Ts'in suffered from severe famine 244, locusts and epidemic 243, when titles of nobility were sold. In 238 it was suddenly so cold in the middle of the summer that people died from frost. Lü had again intercourse with his former wife, the queen-dowager, but being afraid of detection, he caused a young man, Lao Ai 嫪毐, to enter her service. When the emperor heard of it 238, Lao Ai broke out into rebellion ; defeated, he was executed with his whole family and the two children of him and the dowager. The dowager was banished, also Lü first to Honan, then to Shuh, where he poisoned himself 235.



APPENDIX D.

Studies in H. A. Giles' Chinese Biographical Dictionary.

1. Noble Deeds.

Ripped his own belly to testify the innocence of another, 8.*
Executed his son for bad behaviour 16. 382. 1665. 1705 (cruel).
Affection as a friend and duty as a governor 24.
Begging the life of his nephew instead his son's 49. Comp. 1907.
Friendship 51. 101. 216. 375. 534; one coat 588. 766. 776. 999. 1090. 1870.
Heroism 63.
Nine generations in harmony 82.
Wished to sell his daughter to pay his soldiers 93; large gifts 590.
Against speculation 125. 128. 142.
Vegetarian and misogynist 132. op. 717 no singing girls.
Offered his own life for his brother's 155.
Faithfulness to the promise given her husband 207.
As a Mandarin living abstemious 289. 685.
Generosity to a thief 243.
Tried by a waiting-maid 250.
Good younger brother 287.
Politeness to his wife 289.
Loyalty 290. 297. 987.
His word worth more than gold 296.
Drinking poison for his father 317.
Wife reforming her husband 338.
Examples of Filial Piety 334. 339. 468. 522. (623. 661. 697. 760. 785). 857. 873. 1059. 1087.
1298. 1528. 1533. 1912. 1981. 2022. 2106. 2175. 2215. 2840. 2874. 2478. 2513.
Three brothers sleeping together 335.
A piece of his thigh to feed his master 353.
Dashed out his brain to have a minister appointed 389. op. 490.
A stern mother, her son not to neglect his public duty 410.
Diligence in public business 418.
Not taking a concubine 461. 661; refused to marry 1180; young widower did not remarry 2241.
Induced his father to sell his property in order to give relief 462.
Died cursing the rebels 463. op. 2467.
Submitted calmly to their fate 499.
Drowned himself as his advice failed 503.
Daughter saved her father from mutilation 512.

* The numbers refer to the numbers in Giles' Biographical Dictionary.

- Reformed her husband by fasting for two years 531.
 Heroism of a lady against an escaped bear 566.
 Supporting the poor against the rich 607.
 Minister pure as ice and jade 648. 997.
 Cut her ears and nose to escape remarriage 681.
 Honesty 692 (silly).
 Teetotaller 697.
 Great benevolence 717. 781.
 A young lady breaking up a band of robbers 738.
 A harem-lady remonstrating against extravagant expenditure 775.
 A General without pride or conceit, sensuality or avarice 792.
 A young wife puts away her rich dress and draws water 842.
 Boiled their saddles for food 950.
 Care for his teacher 996.
 Kuan Yü protecting two ladies 1009; similar 2474.
 Starving himself to avoid serving an usurper 1027; a little different 1638, 2306.
 Persuading the people to sell their weapons and buy oxen 1028.
 Giving all his salary for a guest house 1030.
 Spent all he had on the poor of his native village 1064.
 Steadfastness 1098.
 With heart and beard 1102.
 Poor as a governor, weaving mats 1144.
 Out his hands to keep on studying 1175.
 Cut her arm in shame 1194.
 Eat little and drink no wine 1240.
 Repaying damage caused by fire and marrying an ugly wife 1247.
 Noble ambition 1490.
 Devotion of a sister 1566.
 Bequeathing peace to descendants 1616.
 Kind to a thief 1674.
 No joking 1739.
 Perseverance 1792.
 Refused to marry a princess 1833.
 Death with dignity 1920.
 Taking a city without bloodshed 2009.
 Smell of money 2042.
 Wise consideration 2049.
 An envoy and not a renegade 2202.
 Financial clothes 2232.
 A spy converted 2238.
 No discredit 2262.
 Three mirrors 2264.
 Cunning and courage 2324.
 Incorrupt official 2362 ("Four who know")
 Paternal severity 2422.
 The soul to live 2476.
 Female understanding 2504.
 Viceroy died poor 2510; similar 2563
 Poor or ill 2547.

2. *Bad Characters.*

- Daughter murders her father 10.
 Rebel assassinated by his own son 11, 475.
 Tyrannical minister 12. 165. 431.
 Unfaithful friends 15.
 Plot 22.
 Rebellions, Yellow turbans 36. Ruffian 58. (1353-67). 103. Nienfei 121. Two governors 214. A princess 219. Officer 242. Red eyebrows 536. Two brothers 770. Salt merchant 847. T'ai-p'ing 890. 1176. 1260.
 Drinkers 44. 54. 256. 274. 328. 336. 417. 513. 564. 589. 625. 627. 643. 716. 782. 893. 933. 994. 1058. 1111. 1181. 1182. 1195. 1271. 1295. 1308. 1326. 1328. (and gambler) 1331. 1487. 1592. 1644. 1669. 1909. 1986. 2036. 2126. 2143. 2212. 2221. 2238. 2262. 2276. 2450. 2481. 2518. 2544. 2545,
 Murderer of his uncle 61.
 Violation of treaty 88. 159. 199.
 Poisoned his nephew 114. 119, another case (minister) 824.
 Bribed 126. 141. A Historiographer 769. 955.
 Wife stole the elixir, turned into a toad 140.
 Fondness of curios leading to oppression 145.
 Debauchee 147. 841. One cup of soup 30,000 cash 1211.
 Monster 189.
 Fierce wife 190.
 Wife murdering her husband 283.
 Craze of building palaces and temples 445. 691. 711. 761. 1295.
 Never spending a cash on charity 451; miser 704.
 Wealth wrung from the people 466.
 Pirate 555 (ennobled).
 Treachery 581. 584; similar 588. 1334.
 Ruined by a woman 679. 711. 1913.
 Cruelty 690.
 Rapacity and corruption 740; peculation 759.
 Neglecting his mother and adulterer 773.
 Cooked his own son to serve up to his master 912.
 Remembered faults and forgot services 1034.
 Gambling 1058. 1569. 2036.
 Flogged two wet nurses to death out of jealousy 1070.
 War between rival satraps 1107.
 Meanness, carrying off a calf 1723.

3. *Religion.*

- Visible or invisible 7. Visible in several places 1622.
 Dreams 20. 101. 578. 724. 774. 780. 939. 984. 1181. 1265. 1272. 1292. 1429. 1549. 1810. 2053. 2119. 2187. 2387. 2462. 2532. 2574.
 Seclusion 34. 83.
 Living without food 39. 1435.
 Raising a fog 76.
 Driving out demons 112.

- Error in preparing the emperor's grave 153.
 Self-examination before God 176.
 Answer to prayer 181.
 Like a dream, like a vision 197.
 Murderer and Buddhist 236.
 Procuring rain 380.
 Sacrifice of concubines at the death of emperors 435.
 A mandarin worshipped as a deity 439.
 A Christian prince, head of seven provinces, perished 480.
 Buddhism and Taoism made state-religions 483.
 Flesh of the murderer upon the grave of the victim 542.
 Necromancy and prognostications 574, 1160, 1227.
 Intercession with spirits made a well pure 609.
 Two coffins sprouted 622.
 A young lady immortal 647.
 Sacrifice of a maiden to the river-god 655. *op.* 678.
 A drowned mandarin the Dragon-king 734.
 Rain of cash in answer to prayer 753.
 Spiritualist 773. 958.
Miraculous conception 837. 891. 1695. 2093.
 Absurd belief in prophecy and books of fate 844.
 Stones turned into sheep, several 10,000 850.
 Rival teachers even Buddhists 877.
 A sprouting bamboo 985.
 Born again as a baby in the same family 990.
 Supernatural powers helped to destroy caterpillars 1026.
 A divine snake 1054.
 A departed spirit appears 1125.
 Rain obtained by threatening the city-god 1228.
 A director of the Yellow river worshipped as a guardian 1238.
 Worship of the Pearl-emperor 1257.
 Fire extinguished by a kotow 1323.
 A runner becomes after death an attendant of the God of Thunder 1450.
 God of barbers 1461.
 Wizards and sorcerers 1462, rain putting out a fire.
 Goddess of sailors 1464.
 A general worshipped as the war-quelling god 1490.
 Mongol Khan firm believer in witchcraft 1493.
 Two brothers, guardians of doors 1738.
 Ordered by an angel 1803.
 Performing miracles 1821.
 Influence of a good governor on tigers and locusts 1831.
 Merit in saving some ants 1832.
 Goddess of Lightning 1914.
 A Mohammedan becoming a devout Buddhist 1981.
 Buddhist priests put to death 2035.
 Goddess of Latrines 2112.
 Appearance of a dead friend, next world reality 2231.
 A meteor falling into the bedroom, a presage of death 2237.

God of blacksmiths 2287.

Appearance of a dead man in battle 2281.

A mandarin made the God of Happiness 2363.

Sun made to go backward 2397.

A bogey appeared 2542.

4. *Buddhism.*

Number in
Giles' Dictionary.

14. Bodhidharma + 535.
26. Chang Chi, vigorous opponent of Buddhist and Taoism.
376. Chih-i + 597. Chung-lun school.
380. Chin Kang-chih 270. Magic formulæ.
439. The three chief schools, 5th cent. A. D.
468. Buddhist methods, about 1100.
471. Emperor Yung Lo ardent Buddhist.
496. Ch'u Ying 1st cent. A. D., one of the first believers.
502. Buddhist biographies, 16th and 17th cent.
526. Fa Hsien, traveller and author 400 A. D.
527. Fa Shun + 640, founder of an exoteric school.
574. Fo t'u-ch'eng + 348, Ind. priest, necromancer.
606. Halima 15th cent. A. D., magician at the imp. court.
801. Hsüan Tsang 602-664, brought 657 Buddhist books.
803. Hsüan Ying 6th cent., author of Buddhist dictionary.
833. Huai Su 7th cent., Buddh. priest, writer of grass characters.
877. Hui K'o 593, second of the Eastern Patriarchs of B.
878. Hui Sheng went 518 to India for books, 170 vols.
880. Hui Ssü 577, Chunglun school.
882. Hui Yüan 416, Lotus school.
885. Hung Ch'ieh-fan, a convert 12th cent.
891. Hung Jen 675, Fifth East. Patr. of B.
897. I Ching 713, traveller to India.
902. I Hsing 717, Buddh. astronomer.
903. I Hsüan 867, Linchi school.
959. Kao Seng 6th cent., moved stones.
971. Kashiapmadanga of India. A. D. 67, translator.
1017. Kumarajiva, 19th West. Patriarch + 412 (?)
1115. Li Cho-wu 1610, convert.
1121. Li Fang 3rd cent. B. C., preacher of B. in China.
1302. Lin Hsieh 6th cent., officer, became a B. priest.
1306. „ Hsü 518, recluse.
1361. „ Tsung-yüan 819, defender of B.
1384. Comparison of Buddh. and Confuc.
1417. Lu Hui-neng 712, Sixth Eastern Patriarch.
1485. Ma Tau 788, leader of the esoteric school.
1622. Pao Chih 514, magic power.
1639. P'eng Shao-sheng 18th cent. Buddh. topics.
1666. Pu K'ung 774, magic formula.

- 1671. Sêng Ch'ou, 6th cent., healing power.
- 1673. „ Ts'an 606, third of the Eastern Patriarchs.
- 1674. Shao Hui 569, married Buddhist.
- 1687. Shên Chu-hung, 16th cent., defender of Buddhism.
- 1744. Image of 500,000 catties of bronze.
- 1774. Su Chin, 8th cent., Buddhist and drinker.
- 1842. Sung Yün travelled 518 to India for sacred books (175).
- 1870. T'an Chien, 5th cent., friendship.
- 1886. Tao An 385, learned priest.
- 1888. „ Hsin 651, Fourth of the Eastern Patriarchs.
- 1890. „ Yüan 965, to India for 18 years.
- 1931. Mohammedan became Buddhist 1424.
- 1984. Kashiapmadanga and books from India 67.
- 2035. Persecution.
- 2241. Wang Wei; poet and believer.
- 2329. Wu Hai, opponent.
- 2338. Wu K'ung born 730.
- 2427. Yao Ch'a 606, historian and Buddhist.
- 2436. Yao Kuang-hsiao 1418, Buddhist, priest and officer.

5. Taoism.

- 34. Chang Chih-ho, 8th cent. A. D.
- 45. „ Chung, 14th cent. A. D.
- 46. „ Chung-kien, 7th cent. A. D.
- 57. „ Sien, worshipped, Sung dynasty.
- 60. „ Hŭ-ching obtained the elixir.
- 83. „ Kuo, 7th and 8th cent. A. D., 8 Immortals.
- 112. „ Tao-ling, 84-156 A. D.
- 137. Ch'ang Kien, 727 official, poet, then hermit.
- 140. Ch'ang O, the toad in the moon.
- 257. Ch'en T'uan + 989.
- 293. Chi K'ang, 223-262, alchemist.
- 406. Ch'iu Ch'ang-ch'un, 1148-1227, travelled to India.
- 445. Empercr seeking after the elixir, about 1560 A. D.
- 435. Hermit breeding chickens, Chou dynasty.
- 509. Chuang Chou, 3rd and 4th cent. B. C.
- 559. Fei Ch'ang-fang, Han magician.
- 660. Ho Tien, a recluse + 504.
- 672. Hou Ying, 3rd cent. B. C., recluse.
- 693. Seven Sages of the Bamboo Grove.
- 774. Hsü Hsün + 314, magician with dogs and cats.
- 927. Jen Wei, 92, student of Taoism and upright minister.
- 977. Ko Hsien-weng, magician.
- 978. Ko Hung, 4th cent., A. D., author.
- 984. K'ou Ch'ien-chih + 424, elixir.
- 1014. Kuei-ku Tzŭ, 4th cent. B. C., philosopher.
- 1069. Kuo P'o 324 A. D., geomancy.

- 1077. Kuo Yü., 5th cent. A. D., teacher, hermit.
- 1097. Li Chen, Sung dynasty, 800 years old.
- 1180. Li Pi 789, refused to marry, natural food.
- 1189. Li Shao-chün, 2nd cent. B. C., elixir.
- 1213. Li T'ieh-kuai, 8 Immortals.
- 1257. Lin Ling-su, 12th cent. A. D., black art.
- 1309. Liu Hsüan-ying, 10th cent., eggs and gold.
- 1316. Liu I-min, Taoist patriarch, 2nd cent. A. D.
- 1409. Lu Fa-ho, 6th cent., supernatural power.
- 1428. Lu Sheng, 3rd cent. B. C., magician.
- 1429. Lu Sheng, 8th cent. A. D., dream of the millet.
- 1461. Lü Yen, born 750 A. D. (Lü-tsu, Tung Pin, Ch'un Yang-tee).
- 1476. Ma Ku, 2nd cent. A. D., adept.
- 1487. Ma Tzū-jan, 880, drinker, taken up to heaven.
- 1507. Mei Fu, 1st cent. B. C., Immortal.
- 1615. P'ang Hsün, 8th cent. A. D.
- 1629. P'ei Hang, 9th cent. A. D., Immortal.
- 1698. Shen Pu-hai 337 B. C., minister and author.
- 1773. Su Chê 1112, Taoist, poet.
- 1821. Sun Ssü-miao 682, miracles, prophecies.
- 1840. Sung Wu-chi, 4th cent. B. C., magician.
- 1869. T'an Ch'iao, 10th cent. A. D., magician.
- 1895. T'ao Han 742, poet, cult of T'ao.
- 1896. T'ao Hung-ching 536, hermit, author.
- 1938. Ting Ling-wei, 2nd cent. A. D., changed into a crane.
- 1952. King and minister of N. Wei, infatuated Taoists, 452 A. D.
- 1970. Ts'ai Ching, 2nd cent. A. D., Immortal.
- 1976. Ts'ai Luan, 4th and 5th cent. A. D., she and husband *went up on white tigers*.
- 2004. Ts'ao Kuo-chiu, 10th cent. A. D., one of the 8 Immortals.
- 2030. Tsou Yen, 4th cent. B. C., magician.
- 2035. Ts'ui Hao 450 A. D.; prohibition of Buddhism.
- 2054. Tsung Tsê 495 A. D., painter.
- 2093. Tung-fang So, *miraculous conception* 160 B. C.
- 2149. Riding on birds.
- 2155. *Several hundred years hypnotised.*
- 2240. Riding on a white crane.
- 2287. Wei Po-yang, 2nd cent. A. D., alchemist.
- 2364. Yang Ch'eng 805, a recluse.

6. Civilization.

- 29. Chang Ch'ien. Walnut, grape-wine, hemp, knotted bamboo.
- 38. Carrier-pigeons.
- 55. Armillary sphere, cp. 362.
- 150. Military settlements.
- 169. Oxen substituted for men in ploughing.
- 573. *Block-printing.*
- 674. Horses as draught animals, 20th cent. B. C.

870. Spinning and weaving cotton, 14th cent. A. D.
 904. Wheeled vehicles 2697 B. C.
 910. Inventor of wine, 2200 B. C.
 914. Famous maker of clay and metal images for Buddhism.
 929. Inventor of music 2698 B. C.
 931. Inventor of bells 2698 B. C.
 965. First laws (2204 B. C.).
 1023. Inventor of boats 2698 B. C.
 1197. Inventor of mathematical science 2698 B. C.
 1205. Printing from wooden blocks 933 A. D.
 1214. Cracker firing (Sung dynasty).
 1266. Ling Lun, art of music 2698 B. C.
 1345. Liu Po-to, strong whisky, 3rd cent. A. D.
 1526. Harpsichord, Chinese brush, 220 B. C.
 1538. Arrows, 2698 B. C.
 1605. *Cramping the feet*, about 500 A. D.
 1646. Movable type, 11th cent.
 1661. Horse-trainer, early ages.
 1662. Luteplayer.
 1721. Canal with 36 locks.
 1807. Tea about 280 A. D.
 1977. *Ink* for writing on silk and *paper*, about 100 A. D.
 1991. Art of writing (legendary).
 2046. Schools of painting.
 2059. Schools of poetry.
 2530. Single-wheel chariot 1561 A. D.

7. Industries, etc.

- Mangonels 2. 909.
 Walnut, grape, hemp 29.
 Firearms for warfare 52.
 Embroidery 87.
 Musician 69. 198. 373. 520. flute 713. 827. 839. 1231. inventor 1266. 1435. 1643. 1662. 1850. 1896. 1986. 2032. 2121. 2201. 2235. painter 99. 118. 172. 173. 262. 266. 273. 342. 363. 371. 476. 726. 806. 852. 872. 876. 1060. 1067. 1204. 1432. portrait 1506. landsc. 1530. water 1669. 1686. 1708 (upsets ink !). 1997 (fly, dragon). 2031. animals, flowers 2046. self-portrait 2054. left hand 2183. fans 2258. Prince of painters 2349. 2352. landsc., etc. 2359. 18 scholars 2469. 2576.
 Alchemy 293.
 Medical skill 373. 396.
 Block printing 573.
 Silkworm 677.
 Casting bells 827 ; inventor 931.
 Instructor of operatic performers 853.
 Wheeled vehicles 871. 904.
 Wine 910.
 Geomancy of graves 1069.
 Ingenious machines 1469. 2471.
Commentary in double columns 1475. (A. D. 110).

Pearl-fisheries in Chekiang 1513.

Worker in lacquer 1701.

Tea the slave of koumiss 2228.

8. *Psychology and Strange Stories.*

Died of grief for the loss of his father 23, his mother 2002.

A concubine kills herself hearing of the grave of her lover 31.

Remained for several years near the grave of his father 33.

Marvellous memory 50, 1886.

Divine boys 77, 112, 232, 361, 507, 514, 551, 662, 696, 717, 727, 781, 809, 1046, 1215, 1994, 2377, 2387, 2418.

Death from grief, refusing food 109, 175.

Ambition 157.

Revenge after 10 years watching 174.

Sympathetic with his mother 224.

A man gave birth to a child 395.

Prophecy 398, 574, 1069, 1196, 1570, 1598, 1821, 1898, 1960, 2143, 2328, 2567.

Looking fiercely at tigers saved his life 442.

Picture of dead father 516.

Magician and soothsayer 606; eternal youth 749.

Stealing perfume for her lover 626.

Portrait of her former lover 829.

Died of shame 836.

Real father shed tears, the other groaned 1120.

Restored the eyesight of his mother 1184.

Born with a beard 1268.

Still life-like expression after two years burial 1270.

Seven generations had passed away in six months 1278.

Home sickness 1322.

Double pupils to his eyes 1831.

Physiognomist 1442, 1632.

A woman giving birth to a snake 1964.

Snow in midsummer 2030.

Hermits 2054, s. Taoists; corpse disappearing 2256.

Beard and whiskers white at twenty, 2211.

Marriage foretold 2282.

9. *Present Dynasty.*

Number in
Dictionary.

5. Ai-hsing-a + 1664.

12. Ao-pai, exec. 1669.

23. Chang Chao + 1745.

35. „ Chih-tung, born 1835.

67. „ Hui-yen + 1802.

89. „ Liang-ki 1808-1871.

94. „ P'ei-lun, born 1850.

95. „ P'eng-ho 1649-1725.

98. „ Po-hsing 1651-1725.

107. „ Shih-tsai 1696-1764.

115. Chang T'ing-yü 1670-1756.

121. „ Tsung-yü + 1864.

125. „ Yao + 1891.

127. „ Yin-huan.

128. „ Ying 1636-1708.

132. „ Yü-shu 1642-1711.

135. „ Yün-lan + 1863.

139. Ch'ang Ling 1758-1838.

149. Chao Chih-hsin 1662-1744, author.

161. „ Hui + 1764.

162. Chao I 1727-1814.
 171. „ Liang-tung 1620-1697.
 181. „ Shen-ch'iao 1644-1720.
 186. „ T'ing-ch'en + 1669.
 223. Ch'en Hsien 1641-1722.
 228. „ Hung-mou 1695-1771.
 230. „ Kuo-jui, 19th cent.
 231. „ Lan-pin, retired 1884.
 238. „ P'eng-nien 1663-1723.
 239. „ Pin 1655-1718.
 244. „ Shih-kuan 1680-1757.
 248. „ Ta-shou 1701-1751.
 249. „ T'ai + 1655.
 253. „ T'ing-ching + 1712.
 277. Cheng Tsao-ju + 1894.
 292. Chi Huang 1710-1794.
 301. „ Yün 1724-1805.
 303. Ch'i Chao-nan 18th cent.
 312. „ Su-lé + 1729.
 318. Chia-ch'ing + 1820.
 329. Chiang Chen 1627-99, author.
 330. Chiang Chung-i 1834-1863.
 331. „ Chung-yüan 1811-1854, general.
 332. „ Fan, end of 18th cent., author.
 337. „ P'u 1708-61.
 338. „ Sheng 1733-1810, author.
 341. „ Shih-ch'üan 1725-84, author.
 342. „ T'ing-hsi 1668-1732, author.
 346. „ Yung, 1680-1762, author.
 358. Ch'ien Ch'en-ch'ün 1686-1744, poet and painter.
 360. „ Chieh "triple first."
 364. „ Lung 1710-99, emperor.
 366. „ Ta-hsien 1727-1804, author.
 367. „ Tien 1744, author.
 368. „ Tsai 1708-93, painter.
 379. Chin Fu 1633-92 (Yellow river).
 388. „ P'ang 1772, writer.
 385. „ Sheng-t'an 1662, editor, executed with sixteen others.
 386. „ Shun + 1886, general.
 390. Ch'in Hui-t'ien 1699-1759, writer.
 403. Ch'ing I-kuang, living, president of admiralty.
 404. Ch'ing-kuei 1735-1816, grand secretary.
 410. Ch'iu Yüeh-hsiu 1712-73, high office.
 413. Chou Han, living.
 453. Chu I-tsun 1629-1709, author.
 461. Chu Kuei 1731-1807, viceroy, pure.
 462. „ Kuei-chen 1766-1839, governor, upright.
 467. „ Shih 1666-1736 counsellor and writer.
 476. „ Wen-lao 18th cent., painter of horses.
 485. „ Yün, 1729-80, author.
 486. „ Yün-ch'ien born 1789, author.
 489. „ Yung-shun 1617-1689, author.
 491. Ch'u K'u 1615-1675, general.
 495. „ Yin-liang + 1785, mathematician.
 508. Ch'üan Tsu-wang, 1705-55, writer.
 510. Chun-t'a + 1647, general.
 511. Ch'un I-huan + 1891, Taokuang's 7th son.
 523. Ch'ung-hou 1824-93, diplomat.
 528. Fan Ch'eng-hsün + 1714, subjug. aborig. of Yünnan.
 529. „ Ch'eng-mo + 1676, faithful to death.
 542. „ Shih-ch'ung + 1720, son of above, retaliation.
 546. „ Wen-ch'eng + 1665, adviser.
 549. Fang Chung-t'ung 17th cent., mathematician.
 552. Fang Hien 1676-1741, defeated the Miao-tsz.
 554. „ Kuan-ch'eng 1698-1768, viceroy, cared for the people.
 556. „ Pao + 1749, scholar.
 558. „ Yao 1834-91, general.
 561. Fei Yang-ku + 1701, victorious general.
 564. Feng Fu + 1691, grand secretary.
 569. Feng Kuo-hsiang + 1718, general.
 570. „ Min-ch'ang, poet and calligrapher.
 581. Fu-ch'ing + 1750, resident in Tibet.
 584. Fu-hêng + 1770, victorious general.
 588. Fu Hung-lieh + 1680, for the Manchu.
 590. Fu-k'ang-an, a Manchu + 1796, never defeated.
 591. Fulat'a + 1694, good viceroy.
 593. Fu-min + 1756, one of Kienlung's tutors.
 594. Fu Nai + 1811, taught the aborigines.
 595. Fu-ning-an 1729, victor in Barkul.
 627. Han T'an 1704, scholar and president.

634. Hang Shih-chün 18th cent., poet and scholar.
636. Hao I-hsing 19th cent., Comment. on Hill and Water Classic.
639. Hao Yü 1683, governor.
646. Ho Ch'uo 1722, author.
650. Ho Ju-chang, living in disgrace.
651. Ho Kai, living, Hongkong.
653. Ho-shen 1799, rise and fall.
675. Hsi-fu + 1652, grand secretary.
700. Hsiao Ch'i-chiang + 1860, general.
731. Hsieh Feng-tsu 17th cent., author and mathematic.
782. „ Fu-ch'eng + 1894, ambassador to Europe.
747. Hsien Fäng 1861.
754. Hsiung Po-lung 1670, literature.
756. „ Tz'u-lü 1709, adviser and writer.
757. Hsü Ch'ao + 1715, president, etc.
758. „ Chen, general + 1695.
759. „ Ch'eng-tau, minister at Tokio, living.
765. „ Ch'ien-hsüeh 1694, author.
768. „ Ching-ch'eng, living, president.
784. „ Pen 1747, governor.
789. „ Shih-lin 1741, governor.
794. „ Ta-ch'un, writer, medical, 18th cent.
796. „ Wen-ching, 18th cent., writer.
798. „ Yüan-meng 1736, minister of diff. experiences.
799. „ Yüan-wen 1691, president.
813. Hu Chi-t'ang 1800, adviser.
815. „ Êrh-han 1620, minister of T'ai Tsu.
817. „ Hsü 1736, editor.
822. „ Lin-i 1861, general and viceroy.
823. „ Wei 1714, writer on geography.
861. Huang Jen 1702, writer.
867. „ Shu-lin 1756, scholar.
869. „ Tao-chou 1646, Ming general, author.
872. „ Ting 1730, traveller, painter.
874. „ Tsung-hsi 1695, author.
876. „ Yüeh 19th cent., artist.
879. Hui Shih-ch'i 1741, author.
886. Hung Chün 1893, ambassador to Russia, etc.
888. „ Fu-tien 1866, son of the Rebel.
890. Hung Hsü-ch'üan 1864, the rebel leader.
893. „ Liang-chi 1809, author.
899. I-Êrh-tê 1661, vict. general.
900. I-Êrh-teng 1663, general.
908. I-sang-o 1703, president.
920. Jao T'ing-hsüan 1861, general.
921. Jen Ch'i-yün 1744, writer.
926. Jen Ta-ch'un 1789, author.
928. Jui-lin 1874, viceroy.
937. Kan Wen-hun 1674, viceroy.
941. K'ang Hsi 1723, emperor.
949. Kao Ch'i-cho 1738, viceroy and poet.
950. „ Ch'i-wei 1727, commander.
957. „ Lien-sheng 1869 comm. killed by mutinous soldiers.
961. „ Shih-ch'i 1704, author.
968. „ Yü, 17th cent., commentator.
972. Ken-t'ê 1693, general.
973. Keng Chi-mao 1671, general.
974. „ Ching-chung, rebelling and executed 1681.
976. Ki-ying 1856, viceroy.
986. Ku Chiang 1681, author.
987. „ Fäng-mao 18th and 19th cent., commentator.
991. „ Li-ch'eng, living, Def. populi.
993. Ku-pa-tai 1708, general, died poor.
998. Ku Tsu-yü, 17th cent.
999. Ku-tsung 1755, mathematics.
1000. Ku Tung-kao 1759, scholar.
1010. Kuang Hsü, emperor, living.
1013. Kuei Fu 1805, author.
1019. Kung, Prince + 1898.
1020. „ Chao-yüan + 1897, minister to England, etc.
1047. K'ung Kuang-sên 1786, author, 68th gener. of Conf.
1064. Kuo Hsiu 1715, viceroy.
1072. „ Sung-tao 1887, envoy to England.
1080. Lai-t'ia 1684, Manchu general.
1082. Lan Li 1719, commander.
1083. „ Ting-yüan, author, against Buddhism.
1084. „ T'ing-chen 1729, admiral.
1086. „ Ch'ung-kuang 1867, viceroy.
1094. Li Ch'ang-keng 1803, admiral.
1095. „ Chao-lo, after 1835, author.
1099. „ Ch'en-tien 1864, able soldier.

1108. Li Chieh 18th cent., literature.
 1110. ,, Chih-fang 1694, viceroy.
 1114. Lord Li, living.
 1123. Li Feng-pao 1887, minister to Germany.
 1124. ,, Fu 1751, viceroy, unyielding.
 1128. ,, Han-chang 1897, viceroy.
 1140. ,, Hsing-yüan 1851.
 1143. ,, Hsü-pin 1858, general, fell against the T'aiplings.
 1145. ,, Hu 18th cent., governor.
 1148. ,, Hung-chang.
 1163. ,, Kuang-ti 1718, viceroy and writer.
 1168. ,, Kuo-han 1658, general.
 1178. ,, Li-o 18th cent., poet.
 1183. ,, Sang-o 1686, general.
 1200. ,, Shu-ch'ang, living, Taotai.
 1201. ,, Shuai-tai, 1666, viceroy.
 1212. ,, T'iao-yüan 18th cent., poet, etc.
 1215. ,, T'ien-fu 1699, poet.
 1217. ,, T'ing-i 1732, reforms.
 1224. ,, Tu-no 1703, calligraphist.
 1237. ,, Yü 1684, historian.
 1238. ,, Yü-mei 1840, Yellow Riverguardian.
 1241. ,, Yüan-tu 1887, biographical notes.
 1245. Liang Hsi-yü 18th cent., writer.
 1246. ,, Hua-feng 1671, colonel.
 1248. ,, Kuo-chih 1787, counsellor, author.
 1249. ,, Shih-cheng 1763, Western Lake.
 1259. Lin Tse-hsü 1850, viceroy of Canton, opium war.
 1267. Ling T'ing-k'an 1809, author.
 1274. Liu Ch'ang-yu 1885 viceroy.—Nien-fei.
 1290. ,, Chin-t'ang 1894, Kashgaria.
 1291. ,, Ch'üan-chih 1818, grand secretary.
 1299. ,, Hsi-hung, living, ambassador.
 1318. ,, Jui-fen 1892, minister to Engl., etc.
 1324. ,, K'un-i, living, viceroy.
 1329. ,, Lun 1773, author, arithmetic.
 1332. ,, Ming-ch'uan 1896, defender of Formosa.
 1354. ,, Sung-shan 1870, general.
 1362. ,, T'ung-hsün 1773, president.
 1363. ,, Tzü-chuang 17th cent., writer.
 1371. Liu Yin-shu 1723, governor and author.
 1381. ,, Yung 1805, poet, etc.
 1382. ,, Yung-fu, living, Black Flags.
 1385. Lo Feng-lu, living, minister to Engl.
 1387. ,, Jao-lien 1854, viceroy.
 1392. ,, Ping-chuang 1867.
 1393. ,, Tsé-nan 1856, general.
 1421. Lu K'un 1835, viceroy, Canton.
 1423. ,, Lung-ch'i 1693, reformer, author.
 1431. ,, Shih-i 17th cent., author.
 1438. ,, Wen-ch'ao 1795, literature.
 1444. Lü Hsien-chi 1853, president.
 1460. ,, Wen-ching living, commander, naval.
 1467. Ma-ch'i 1739, governor.
 1470. ,, Êrh-han 1718, general.
 1473. ,, Hsien 1891, Mohammedan general.
 1474. ,, Hsiung-chen 1677, commander.
 1481. ,, Ssü-ta 1778, minister.
 1482. ,, Su 17th cent., author.
 1484. ,, Tê-hsing 1874, Mohammedan viceroy, executed.
 1492. Mang I-t'u 1680, Manchu general.
 1496. Mao Ch'i-ling 1707, author.
 1500. ,, Hsien-shu, 17th cent., rhyming, etc.
 1509 and 10 Mei K'o-ch'eng and Mei Wen-ting, astronomers.
 1531. Mi Ssü-han 1675, minister.
 1534. Ming Jui 1768, general, suicide.
 1558. Mu T'u-shan 1887, general.
 1562. Ng Choy, living, minister.
 1567. Nien Kêng-yao 1726, viceroy.
 1569. Ning Wan-wo 1665, minister.
 1572. Niu Hsiu 17th cent., folklore.
 1577. No Yen-ch'eng 1833, viceroy.
 1581. O Êrh-t'ai 1745, viceroy.
 1583. O Kuei 1797, victorious against rebellions.
 1584. O Lan-t'ai 1699, grand secretary.
 1585. O Li-kun 1770, governor.
 1586. O-lo-teng-pao 1805, general, defeated insurgents.
 1587. O Pi-lung 1673, regent.
 1588. O Sê-ho 1661, author.
 1589. O Yi-tu 1662, general and minister.
 1602. Pan Ti 1755, general, suicide.
 1609. P'an Lei 1708 author, poet.

1611. P'an Shih-en 1854, counsellor.
 1612. „ Ssü-ch'ü 1752, governor.
 1614. „ Yü-lung 1719, commander.
 1620. Pao Ch'ao 1886, general.
 1625. „ Yün 1891, senior minister.
 1638. P'êng P'êng 1704, magistrate.
 1642. „ Yü-lin 1890, admiral and vice-roy.
 1647. Pi Yün 1797, viceroy, author.
 1655. Po-êrh-ho-t'u 1667, general.
 1660. Po Ling 1816, viceroy.
 1668. P'u Sung-ling, after 1679, novelist.
 1672. Sêng-ko-lin-sin 1864, general.
 1676-77. Shang K'o-hsi, 1676. 80, father and son, princes.
 1678. Shao Ch'ang-heng 18th cent., author.
 1679. „ Chin-han 1796, historian.
 1682. „ Yu-lien, living, governor.
 1684. Shên Ch'í-yüan, 18th cent., author.
 1685. „ Chin-ssü 1728, author.
 1688. „ Ch'üan 1684, calligraphist.
 1696. „ Pao-chêng 1879, viceroy.
 1700. „ Tê-oh'ien 1770, poet.
 1703. Sheng Hsüan-huai, living, director of railways.
 1715. Shih I-chih 1763, grand secretary.
 1719. „ Lin 1702, administrator.
 1727. „ Shih-p'iao 1721, recovered Formosa.
 1729. „ Ta-k'ai 1863, rebel.
 1732. „ T'ing-chu 1661, general.
 1733. „ Wei-han 1688, viceroy, fragrant name.
 1737. Shu Ho-tê 1777, general.
 1740. Shuai Yen-pao 1694, grain transport.
 1742. Shun Chih 1661, emperor.
 1743. So Ni 1667, counsellor.
 1782. Su-k'o-sa-ha 1667, regent.
 1783. Su Na-hai 1667, minister.
 1795. Sun Ch'í-feng 1675, author.
 1796. „ Chia-kan 1753, viceroy.
 1797. „ Chia-ku, living, co-envoy.
 1799. „ Chih-tsu 18th cent., author.
 1809. „ Hsing-yen 1818, author.
 1811. „ K'ai-hua 1893, commander.
 1817. „ Shih-i 1796, general.
 1820. Sun Ssü-k'o 1700, general.
 1826. „ Yü-t'ing 1834, viceroy.
 1837. Sung Lo 1714, author.
 1838. Sung Tê-i 1687, adviser.
 1843. „ Yün 1835, governor.
 1847. T'a Ch'í-pu 1855, general.
 1848. Tai Chên 1777, author, against Chu Hsi.
 1876. T'ang Chin-ch'ao 1856, adviser.
 1877. „ Ching-sung, living, Taotai, Formosa.
 1878. „ Ch'üung, living, governor.
 1882. „ Pin 1687, governor, author.
 1884. „ T'ing-shu 1892, China Merchants.
 1889. Tao Kuang 1850, emperor.
 1894. T'ao Chu 1839, viceroy.
 1901. Tcheng Ki-tong, living, author.
 1902. Tê Lêng-t'ai 1809, general.
 1904. Têng Shao-liang 1858, suicide.
 1905. „ T'ing-cheng 1846, viceroy.
 1924. T'ien Ts'un-tien 1728, gr. sec.
 1930. Ting Chieh 1781, commentator.
 1934. „ Jih-ch'ang 1882, governor.
 1935. „ Ju-ch'ang 1895, admiral.
 1939. „ Pao-chen 1886, viceroy.
 1943. To Lung-o 1864, general.
 1969. Ts'ai Ch'ien 1809, pirate.
 1975. „ Hsin 1800, writer.
 1979. „ Shih-yüan 1784, educator.
 1982. „ Tê-chin 18th cent., writer on Rites.
 1988. Tsang Li-t'ang 18th cent., writer.
 1989. „ Lin 17th cent., writer.
 2000. Ts'ao Hsüeh-ch'in 17th cent., novel writer.
 2002. „ Jen-shu 18th cent., author.
 2018. Ts'en Yü-ying 1889, viceroy, Yunnan, massacre.
 2019. Tseng Chi-tsê 1890, marquis.
 2020. „ Kuo-ch'üan 1890, uncle of former.
 2021. „ Kuo-fan 1872, elder brother of former.
 2027. Tso Tsung-t'ang 1885.
 2029. Tsow Han-hsün 1854, mathematician.
 2031. „ Yi-kuei 1766, artist.
 2040. Ts'ui Kuo-yin 1894, minister to the United States.
 2047. „ Shu 1816, critic.
 2063. Tu Li-tê 1691, censor.
 2067. „ Shou-t'ien 1852, tutor.

2069. Tu Wen-hsiu 1872, Yünnan.
 2079. T'u Hai 1681, president.
 2087. Tuan Yü-ts'ai 1815, scholar.
 2090. Tung Ch'ing-fu 1748, viceroy, false reports.
 2095. „ Fêng-ts'ai 1677, administrator.
 2097. „ Kao 1818, poet and artist.
 2098. „ Kuo-ch'i 1660, general.
 2099. „ Kuo-kang 1690, general.
 2100. „ Kuo-wei 1719, duke.
 2102. „ T'u-lai 1658, general.
 2103. „ Yang chia 17th cent., Canton.
 2104. „ Yang-hsing 1647, cannon.
 2107. T'ung Ching 1875, emperor.
 2114. Tz'ü An . . . + 1881, East. Empress Dowager.
 2116. Tz'ü Hsi . . . , living Emper. Dow., T'ung-chih's mother.
 2118. Wan Ching 1748, author.
 2120. „ Kuang-t'ai 1736, author.
 2122. „ Ssu-ta 1683, critic.
 2128. „ Ssu-t'ung 1702, historian.
 2124. „ Yen 18th cent., student.
 2137. Wang Ch'ang 1806, author.
 2140. „ Chen 1857, general.
 2150. „ Chieh 1805, author of essays.
 2159. „ Chin-pao 1685, general.
 2165. „ Chung 1794, comment. against Buddhism.
 2169. „ Fu 18th cent., philosopher.
 2170. „ Fu-chih 1679, author.
 2173. „ Hsi 1703, Grand Council.
 2178. „ Hsu-ling 1725, essays.
 2183. „ Hui 1720, painter.
 2185. „ Hung-hsü 1723, author.
 2186. „ Hung-hsüan 17th cent., calligraphist.
 2194. „ Lai 18th cent., mathematician.
 2205. „ Ming-sheng 1798, poet and author.
 2221. „ Shih-chêng 1711, author of miscellany.
 2223. „ Shih-lu 1672, author.
 2234. „ T'ing-chen 1828, tutor.
 2242. „ Wen-chih 1802, poet, music.
 2243. „ Wen-hsiung 1800, general.
 2252. „ Yin-chih 19th cent., writer on sound.
 2255. „ Yu-tun 1758, calligraphy.
 2257. Wang Yüan 1686, writer.
 2273. Wei Hsi 1680, founder of a school of philosophy.
 2274. „ Hsiang-shu 1684, upright president.
 2278. „ I-chieh 1686, author.
 2300. „ Yüan 1856, author.
 2304. Wen Hsiang 1875. Tsung-li. Yamen.
 2311. Weng Hsin-ts'un 1862, tutor of Tao-kuang's six sons.
 2318. „ T'ung-ho, living, president.
 2315. Wo- jen, living.
 2317. Wu Cheng-chih 1691, author.
 2322. „ Ch'i-chün 1846, governor and botanist.
 2326. „ Chih-i 1679, scholar.
 2332. „ Hsi-ch'i 18th cent., poet.
 2333. „ Hsiung-kuang 1833, minister and author.
 2386. „ I-ho 1843, hong merchant.
 2344. „ Shih-yü 1733, editor of poetry.
 2347. „ Ta-ch'eng, living, gov. of Hunan.
 2350. „ Tien 1705, a president.
 2351. „ Ting 1744, writer on the Yih.
 2354. „ Wen-jung 1854, viceroy, suicide.
 2361. Yang Ch'ang-chün, living, ex-governor.
 2373. „ Hsi-fu 1769, author.
 2378. „ Hsiu-ch'ing 1856, eastern prince of the T'ai-ping.
 2389. „ Ju, living, vice-presid. of the Imperial clan.
 2399. „ Ming-shih 1736.
 2406. „ Shou-chih 18th cent.
 2409. „ Su-yün 1689, governor, good administrator.
 2413. „ Tsung-jen 1725, viceroy, reform, relief.
 2423. „ Yü-ch'un 1838, viceroy, severe to his sons.
 2424. „ Yung-chien 1704, governor and publisher.
 2437. Yao Nai 1815, teacher and author.
 2440. „ Wen-jan 1678, author.
 2441. „ Wen-t'ien 1827, reformer, author.
 2443. Yeh Fang-ai 1682, vice-president.
 2458. „ Ming-shen 1860, viceroy, died at Calcutta.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2464. Yen Ching-ming 1892, grand secretary. | 2509. Yü Ch'ang-ch'eng 18th cent., compiler. |
| 2466. ,, Jo-chü 1704, author. | 2510. ,, Ch'eng-lung 1684, a model viceroy. |
| 2487. Yin Chi-shan 1771, viceroy, good administrator. | 2519. ,, Hsiao-k'ö 18th cent., writer. |
| 2493. ,, Hua-hsing 1710, military officer. | 2557. Yüan Mei, 1779, poet and writer on cookery. |
| 2494. ,, Hui-i 1748, author. | 2562. ,, Shih-k'ai, living, viceroy of Chihli. |
| 2500. Yo Chung-ch'ü 1754, viceroy, commander in Szechuan. | 2573. ,, Yüan 1849, viceroy. |
| 2508. Yu T'ung 1704, author. | |



The Chinese Dynasties.

			(Rulers.)
The Five Rulers	五帝	B. C. 2852-2205.	9.
Hsia	夏	2205-1766.	17.
Shang or Yin	商 or 殷	1766-1122.	28.
Chou	周	1122-249.	35.
Period of the "Warring States"	戰國	403-221.	
Ts'in	秦	249-206.	3.
Han	漢, 前漢, 西漢	206-A. D. 25.	14.
Later Han	後漢, 東漢	A. D. 25-220.	12.
The Three Kingdoms	三國	220-280.	
Wei	魏	220-265.	5.
Shu (Minor) Han	蜀漢	221-263.	2.
Wu	吳	229-280.	4.
Western Tsin	西晉	265-316.	4.
Eastern Tsin	東晉	317-420.	11.
The illegitimate States (Appendix A.)	十六國	304-439.	
Division between North and South		420-589.	
(a) South :	Liu Sung	劉宋	420-479. 9.
	Ts'i	齊	479-502. 7.
	Liang	梁	502-557. 6.
	Ch'en	陳	557-588. 5.
(b) North :	Northern Wei	北魏	386-534. 15.
	Eastern Wei	東魏	534-550. 1.
	Northern Ts'i	北齊	550-577. 7.
	Western Wei	西魏	534-557. 3.
	Northern Chou	北周	557-581. 5.
Sui		隋	589-619. 4.
T'ang		唐	620-907. 22.
The (Later) Five Dynasties		五代	907-960.
Posterior Liang		後梁	907-923. 2.
Posterior T'ang		後唐	923-936. 4.
Posterior Tsin		後晉	936-946. 2.
Posterior Han		後漢	947-950. 2.
Posterior Chou		後周	951-960. 3.
The illegitimate Dynasties (Appendix B.)	十國		907-979.
Sung	宋		960-1127. 9.
Southern Sung	南宋		1127-1279. 9.

Yüan (or Mongol)	元	1280-1367.	9.
Ming	明	1368-1644.	17.
Ts'ing (or Manchu)	清	1644-	9.

Corrections.

B. C. 2286 for Hi read K'i.

„ 1122, line 11, for “Shao's son” read “Chou-siu's son.”

„ „ line 13, the words “(viscount of Wei)” must be omitted.

„ 1113, line 8, for “Shao's brother” read “Chou-siu's elder brother,
viscount of Wei, was.”

„ 299, for Kin read King.

Page 36, note, for Kiangsi read Kiangsu.

Other Publications of Dr. E. Faber.

In Chinese:—

Western Schools, 西國學校 } (Published also in one volume).
On the Principles of Education, 教化議 }

Chinese Theories of Human Nature, 1 vol. 性海淵源.

Commentary on *Mark*, 77 sermons, 5 vols. 馬可講義.

„ „ *Luke*, 1821 skeleton sermons, 6 vols. 路加講義.

Meditations on the *Old Testament*, 3 vols. 玩索聖史.

Civilization, East and West (the fruits of Christianity compared with those of the Chinese religion), 5 vols. 自西徂東.

Of these last four works the new Hankow edition is especially to be recommended.

The Human Heart. Illustrated Tract, 明心圖.

Sheet Tracts, 20 kinds.

An Examination of the Thirteen *Chinese Classics* and the Development of Confucianism 經學不厭精 (6 vols). A supplementary volume is in Press.

In English:—

A Systematical Digest of the Doctrines of Confucius (to be reprinted).

Introduction to the Science of Chinese Religion.

The Mind of Mencius.

The principal thoughts of the ancient Chinese Socialism or the Doctrines of the philosopher Micius.

Prehistoric China, *Journal C. Br. Royal Asiatic S.*, vol. xxiv, 1.

Paul, the Apostle in Europe, a Guide to our Mission Work in Asia.

The Famous Men of China.

„ „ Women of China.

„ Status of Women in China.

China in the Light of History.

Problems of Practical Christianity in China.

Dr. E. Bretschneider's *Botanicon Sinicum*, Part, II: The Botany of the Chinese Classics, edited and augmented through Annotations, Appendix and Index by Rev. E. Faber, Dr. Theol. (Shanghai, Kelly and Walsh, 1892).

A critique of the Chinese notions and practice of Filial Piety (*Chinese Recorder*, 1878-1880).

The Historical Characteristics of Taoism (*China Review*, Vol. XIII, cp. China Mission Handbook, p. 25).

Essay on the business management of Christian Literature in China (Records of Shanghai Missionary Conference, 1890).

Seventeen paragraphs on Ancestral Worship (the same Records, p. 654).

Problems of Christian Education in China (Records of Educational Association Meeting, 1893, p. 12-17).

What shall we do with the Chinese Classics and the Wen-chang in our educational work? (Educational Association, 1896, p. 64-76).

A Missionary View of Confucianism (China Mission Hand-book, p. 1-11).

Chicago-lecture on Confucianism (*Chinese Recorder*, 1902, April).

In German :—

Der Lehrbegriff des Confucius, Hongkong, 1872.

Quellen zu Confucius und dem Confucianismus, Hongkong, 1873.

Eine Staatslehre auf ethischer Grundlage oder der Lehrbegriff des chinesischen Philosophen Mencius (Elberfeld, R. L. Friderichs, 1877).

Der Naturalismus bei den alten Chinesen, oder die Werke des Philosophen Licius. (Elberfeld, Friderichs, 1877).

Die Grundgedanken des alten chinesischen Socialismus oder die Lehre des Philosophen Micus (Elberfeld, Friderichs, 1877).

Sitten und Gebräuche der Christen unter den Heiden (Warneck's Allgemeine Missionszeitschrift, 1884 ; the original of " Problems of Practical Christianity in China ").

China in historischer Beleuchtung (the original of the English translation).

Theorie und Praxis eines protestantischen Missionars in China (Zeitschrift für Missionskunde und Religionswissenschaft, 1899).

Bilder aus China (Zwei Hefte, 1893 and 1897, Verlag des Barmer Missionshauses).

Ueber Litterarische Missionsarbeit (Allgem. Missionszeitschrift, 1882).



DEC 9 1938

